

AMENDMENTS TO NI 21-101 MARKETPLACE OPERATION, COMPANION POLICY 21-101CP, NI 23-101 TRADING RULES AND COMPANION POLICY 23-101CP AND REPEAL OF OSC RULE 21-501

Supplement to the OSC Bulletin

March 23, 2012

Volume 35, Issue 12 (Supp-1)

(2012), 35 OSCB

The Ontario Securities Commission administers the
Securities Act of Ontario (R.S.O. 1990, c. S.5) and the
Commodity Futures Act of Ontario (R.S.O. 1990, c. C.20)

The Ontario Securities Commission

Cadillac Fairview Tower
Suite 1903, Box 55
20 Queen Street West
Toronto, Ontario
M5H 3S8

416-593-8314 or Toll Free 1-877-785-1555

Published under the authority of the Commission by:

Carswell, a Thomson Reuters business

One Corporate Plaza
2075 Kennedy Road
Toronto, Ontario
M1T 3V4

416-609-3800 or 1-800-387-5164

Contact Centre - Inquiries, Complaints:
Market Regulation Branch:
Compliance and Registrant Regulation Branch
 - Compliance:
 - Registrant Regulation:
Corporate Finance Branch
 - Team 1:
 - Team 2:
 - Team 3:
 - Insider Reporting:
 - Mergers and Acquisitions:
Enforcement Branch:
Executive Offices:
General Counsel's Office:
Office of the Secretary:

Fax: 416-593-8122
Fax: 416-595-8940

Fax: 416-593-8240
Fax: 416-593-8283

Fax: 416-593-8244
Fax: 416-593-3683
Fax: 416-593-8252
Fax: 416-593-3666
Fax: 416-593-8177
Fax: 416-593-8321
Fax: 416-593-8241
Fax: 416-593-3681
Fax: 416-593-2318



THOMSON REUTERS

The OSC Bulletin is published weekly by Carswell, a Thomson Reuters business, under the authority of the Ontario Securities Commission.

Subscriptions are available from Carswell at the price of \$649 per year.

Subscription prices include first class postage to Canadian addresses. Outside Canada, these airmail postage charges apply on a current subscription:

U.S.	\$175
Outside North America	\$400

Single issues of the printed Bulletin are available at \$20 per copy as long as supplies are available.

Carswell also offers every issue of the Bulletin, from 1994 onwards, fully searchable on *SecuritiesSource*[™], Canada's pre-eminent web-based securities resource. *SecuritiesSource*[™] also features comprehensive securities legislation, expert analysis, precedents and a weekly Newsletter. For more information on *SecuritiesSource*[™], as well as ordering information, please go to:

<http://www.westlawecarswell.com/SecuritiesSource/News/default.htm>

or call Carswell Customer Relations at 1-800-387-5164 (416-609-3800 Toronto & Outside of Canada).

Claims from *bona fide* subscribers for missing issues will be honoured by Carswell up to one month from publication date.

Space is available in the Ontario Securities Commission Bulletin for advertisements. The publisher will accept advertising aimed at the securities industry or financial community in Canada. Advertisements are limited to tombstone announcements and professional business card announcements by members of, and suppliers to, the financial services industry.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the prior written permission of the publisher.

The publisher is not engaged in rendering legal, accounting or other professional advice. If legal advice or other expert assistance is required, the services of a competent professional should be sought.

© Copyright 2012 Ontario Securities Commission
ISSN 0226-9325
Except Chapter 7 ©CDS INC.



THOMSON REUTERS

One Corporate Plaza
2075 Kennedy Road
Toronto, Ontario
M1T 3V4

Customer Relations
Toronto 1-416-609-3800
Elsewhere in Canada/U.S. 1-800-387-5164
Fax 1-416-298-5082
www.carswell.com
Email www.carswell.com/email

AMENDMENTS TO NI 21-101 MARKETPLACE OPERATION, COMPANION POLICY 21-101CP, NI 23-101 TRADING RULES AND COMPANION POLICY 23-101CP AND REPEAL OF OSC RULE 21-501

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CSA Notice of Amendments	1
Appendix A: Summary of Comments on Proposed Amendments	10
Amendments to NI 21-101 Marketplace Operation	33
Amendments to NI 23-101 Trading Rules	89
NI 21-101 Marketplace Operation, Related Forms and Companion Policy (Blacklined to Version Published for Comment March 18, 2011).....	93
NI 21-101 Marketplace Operation, Related Forms and Companion Policy (clean).....	163
NI 23-101 Trading Rules, Related Forms and Companion Policy (Blacklined to Version Published for Comment March 18, 2011).....	233
NI 23-101 Trading Rules, Related Forms and Companion Policy (clean)	253

AMENDMENTS TO NI 21-101 MARKETPLACE OPERATION, COMPANION POLICY 21-101CP, NI 23-101 TRADING RULES AND COMPANION POLICY 23-101CP AND REPEAL OF OSC RULE 21-501

NOTICE OF AMENDMENTS TO NATIONAL INSTRUMENT 21-101 MARKETPLACE OPERATION AND COMPANION POLICY 21-101 CP AND TO NATIONAL INSTRUMENT 23-101 TRADING RULES AND COMPANION POLICY 23-101CP

I. INTRODUCTION

The Canadian Securities Administrators (the CSA or we) have made amendments (the Amendments) to the following instruments:

- National Instrument 21-101 *Marketplace Operation* (NI 21-101) and Companion Policy 21-101CP (21-101CP);
- National Instrument 23-101 *Trading Rules* (NI 23-101) and Companion Policy 23-101CP (23-101CP);
- Form 21-101F1 *Information Statement Exchange or Quotation and Trade Reporting System* (Form 21-101F1);
- Form 21-101F2 *Initial Operation Report Alternative Trading System* (Form 21-101F2);
- Form 21-101F3 *Quarterly Report of Marketplace Activities* (Form 21-101F3); and
- Form 21-101F5 *Initial Operation Report for Information Processor* (Form 21-101F5).

NI 21-101, 21-101CP, NI 23-101, 23-101CP, and Forms 21-101F1, 21-101F2, 21-101F3, 21-101F4 *Cessation of Operations Report for Alternative Trading System* and 21-101F5 are collectively referred to as the Marketplace Rules in this Notice.

Jurisdictions that are a party to Multilateral Instrument 11-102 *Passport System* (currently, all jurisdictions except Ontario) are also publishing amendments to that instrument to permit certain exemptive relief applications. As Ontario is not a party to Multilateral Instrument 11-102, these amendments will not be published in Ontario.

In Ontario, under subsection 143.3 of the Act, the Amendments were delivered to the Minister of Finance for approval on March 22, 2012. Unless the Minister rejects the Amendments or returns them to the Commission for further consideration, they will come into force on July 1, 2012, with the exception of Form 21-101F3 which comes into force on December 31, 2012.

II. PURPOSE OF THE AMENDMENTS

The CSA published for comment proposed amendments to the Marketplace Rules (Proposed Amendments) on March 18, 2011.¹ The key objectives of the Proposed Amendments were to:

- update and streamline the regulatory and reporting requirements in the Marketplace Rules and to align, where applicable, the requirements applicable to all marketplaces;
- propose amendments to establish the circumstances under which orders are exempt from the pre-trade transparency requirements in NI 21-101;
- increase transparency of marketplace operations;
- propose or update other requirements applicable to marketplaces to address certain issues or situations, such as conflicts of interest, outsourcing arrangements, or business continuity plans;

¹ Published at (2011) 34 OSCB (Supp-1) (March 18, 2011).

- give guidance in a number of areas, including what would be considered a marketplace or when indications of interest would be considered to be firm orders;
- extend the current exemption from transparency requirements applicable to government debt securities until December 31, 2014;
- extend the obligation in NI 23-101 to not intentionally lock or cross markets to marketplaces in certain circumstances; and
- revise and update the requirements applicable to information processors.

III. PUBLICATION FOR COMMENT

We have received 12 comment letters to the Proposed Amendments. We have considered the comments received and thank all of the commenters for their submissions. A list of those who submitted comments, as well as a summary of the comments and our responses to them are attached at **Appendix A** to this Notice.

IV. DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPOSED AMENDMENTS AND SUBSEQUENT REVISIONS

After considering the comments to the Proposed Amendments, we have made some minor changes. These changes are not material and are explained in the remainder of the Notice. The Notice of Proposed Amendments published on March 18, 2011 includes a full description of the proposed changes to the Marketplace Rules and the rationale for these changes.

a. Amendments to facilitate the implementation of the regulatory framework for dark liquidity on equity marketplaces

Part 7 of NI 21-101 sets out the information transparency requirements for marketplaces dealing in exchange-traded securities. One of these requirements is that a marketplace that displays orders of exchange-traded securities must provide information regarding the orders displayed to an information processor.² An exemption from this requirement is available for orders that are displayed only to a marketplace's employees or to those retained by the marketplace to assist in its operation.³ This exemption currently permits marketplaces that are "dark pools" to operate. It also allows orders to be entered with no pre-trade transparency on transparent marketplaces.

In the Proposed Amendments, we proposed to revise the exemption from the pre-trade transparency requirements to include a requirement that orders also meet a size threshold in order to be exempt from the transparency requirements in NI 21-101.⁴ The purpose of this proposed amendment was to facilitate the implementation of the regulatory framework for dark liquidity that the Investment Industry Regulatory Organization of Canada (IIROC) and the CSA proposed at the end of an extensive consultation process that involved market participants. That framework was first discussed in Joint CSA/IIROC Position Paper 23-405 *Dark Liquidity in the Canadian Market* (Position Paper), published on November 19, 2010.⁵ On July 29, 2011, the CSA and IIROC published Joint CSA/IIROC Staff Notice 23-311 *Regulatory Approach to Dark Liquidity in the Canadian Market* (Joint CSA/IIROC Staff Notice 23-311) that introduced the regulatory framework for dark liquidity.⁶ Joint CSA/IIROC Staff Notice 23-311 was published in conjunction with proposed amendments to IIROC's Universal Market Integrity Rules (UMIR) respecting requirements governing dark liquidity on Canadian equity marketplaces (Proposed UMIR Amendments).⁷

Throughout the process, we have received comments relating to the proposed requirement that orders meet a size threshold set by a regulation services provider in order to be exempt from transparency requirements. We have published responses to these comments in Joint CSA/IIROC Staff Notice 23-311. In **Appendix A** of this Notice we have included our responses to the specific comments received to the Proposed Amendments.

We acknowledge the concerns that were raised by the commenters regarding the proposal for a size threshold, and note that we do not propose an actual threshold at this time. However, we continue to be of the view that it is important to establish a regulatory framework that would allow the CSA and IIROC to introduce a threshold when appropriate and on a timely basis. As we indicated in Joint CSA/IIROC Staff Notice 23-311, we and IIROC will examine trading in the market over a period of time to evaluate what the minimum size threshold should be. More details regarding the specific review that will be undertaken will be

² Subsection 7.1(1) of NI 21-101.

³ Subsection 7.1(2) of NI 21-101.

⁴ Proposed amendments to subsection 7.1(2) of NI 21-101.

⁵ Available at (2010) 33 OSCB 10764.

⁶ Published at (2011) 34 OSCB 8219.

⁷ IIROC Notice 11-0225 Provisions Respecting Dark Liquidity, available at http://sdocs.iiroc.ca/English/Documents/2011/609a0965-97ac-43a3-9976-7b2f46c96443_en.pdf.

published in a separate notice along with the UMIR amendments, once approved. Any decision regarding an appropriate size threshold will involve prior consultation with industry participants.

We also highlight a concern raised by one commenter that the proposed amendments to the pre-trade transparency requirements in Part 7 of NI 21-101 would restrict a marketplace that facilitates one-to-one negotiations between its marketplace participants. The commenter requested clarification as to whether an order communicated in a one-to-one negotiation would be considered to be displayed by the marketplace. We note that the Proposed Amendments do not change the status of existing marketplaces that are request-for-quotes systems or facilities that allow negotiation between two parties, other than to establish a size threshold, as discussed above. However, we think it is important to clarify and provide some transparency regarding how these types of marketplaces are treated, and have been treated since the Marketplace Rules were implemented. From a policy perspective, we do not think that the transparency provisions of NI 21-101 should apply to these marketplaces if the request for quotes or indications of interest (IOIs) that they disseminate are not initially “firm” or “actionable” and, once they are, they are only shown to the two counterparties and to the employees of the marketplace (as allowed by the current exemption from the transparency requirements). As a result, we have amended 21-101CP to state that we may consider granting an exemption from the transparency requirements in NI 21-101 for orders that result from a request for quotes or in a facility that allows negotiation between two parties, provided certain conditions are met.⁸ These conditions are as follows:

- the order details may be shown only to the negotiating parties – this is because, if the orders are shown to multiple parties, they would effectively be displayed by the marketplace and become subject to the transparency requirements of NI 21-101;
- no actionable IOIs are displayed by either party involved in the negotiation or by the marketplace as displaying actionable IOIs to outside market participants would be akin to displaying orders outside of the marketplace, which would subject the marketplace to the transparency requirements of NI 21-101; and
- each order entered on the marketplace meets the size threshold set by a regulation services provider as provided in subsection 7.1(2) of NI 21-101 – this would ensure that, when a size threshold is proposed, orders entered on these marketplaces would also have to meet the applicable size threshold in order to be able to be entered without pre-trade transparency.

b. Fair access requirements

In proposed amendments to 21-101CP, we stated that a marketplace that sends information regarding IOIs to a selected smart order router (SOR) should consider the extent to which such information should be sent to other SORs in order to meet the marketplace’s fair access obligations.⁹

Comments received indicated that it is not sufficient that a marketplace only consider whether to send IOI information to other SORs, and that the marketplace should send that information to all SORs in order to avoid disadvantaging investors based on the SOR they use. We agree with these comments. We are of the view that, in order to meet the fair access requirements in section 5.1 of NI 21-101, a marketplace needs to ensure that all market participants¹⁰ have equal access to the information it disseminates. As a result, we have revised 21-101CP to set out the expectation that a marketplace that sends IOIs to a selected SOR or, for that matter, to another system that is not an SOR, such as a trading algorithm, should send the information to other SORs or systems.

Finally, we have amended the guidance regarding fair access requirements included in 21-101CP to clarify that the reference to “services” in section 5.1 of NI 21-101 includes co-location, whether this service is offered by the marketplace or by a third party.¹¹

c. Guidance regarding the definition of a marketplace

In proposed amendments to 21-101CP, we indicated that a dealer using a system that brings together multiple buyers and sellers using established, non-discretionary methods to match or pair orders with contra-side orders outside of a marketplace and then reports the match to a marketplace as a cross would be considered to be operating a marketplace. The rationale was that the use of technology to match orders received by a dealer electronically in a non-discretionary, established fashion, is not materially different from the function of the marketplace.

⁸ Subsection 5.1(4) of 21-101CP.

⁹ Subsection 7.1(4) of proposed amendments to 21-101CP.

¹⁰ It is, and has always been, our view that access to a marketplace’s services should be fair and equal among all market participants in a class that is clearly identifiable.

¹¹ Subsection 7.1(3) of 21-101CP.

While a few commenters agreed with this clarification, most raised a number of concerns. These included the need to ensure that there are no unintended consequences. Concerns were also expressed that all dealers might meet the definition of a marketplace since most order flow is automated. One commenter thought that treating dealers that use systems to match order flow as marketplaces would stifle innovation.

We remain of the view that a dealer that uses such a system may fall within the definition of a marketplace and, as a result, may need to be regulated as a marketplace. However, we acknowledge the possible unintended consequences of applying the definition of a marketplace so broadly to dealers, particularly in today's environment where most dealers' order flow is highly automated. For example, dealers that are ATSs are exempt from best execution responsibilities.¹² At this point, we do not think that we have sufficient information regarding the systems being used by dealers so as to clearly provide guidance as to when we would consider that a dealer using a system to match its own orders is or is not acting as a marketplace.

Staff of the Ontario Securities Commission (OSC) have issued a questionnaire to gather information about dealers' internalization and broker preferencing practices. The results of that work will assist us in determining what definitions, clarifications or requirements are needed, if any, to ensure that it is clear when dealers are operating marketplaces and when they are engaging in traditional dealer activity in an automated manner. In the meantime, we encourage dealers to meet and discuss with the applicable securities regulatory authority when they operate or plan to operate systems that internalize orders to determine whether the dealer's system falls within the definition of "marketplace". We have revised subsection 2.1(8) of 21-101CP accordingly.

d. Requirement for fair and orderly markets

In the Proposed Amendments, we proposed a requirement that a marketplace not engage in any activity that interferes with fair and orderly markets.¹³

Some commenters expressed concern that the proposed requirement is very broad, especially for ATSs, which cannot set rules governing the conduct of their subscribers. We note that the requirement was not intended to add additional oversight responsibilities for ATSs which, by definition, do not have a regulatory role. In 21-101CP, we have clarified that the requirement for fair and orderly markets in NI 21-101 does not impose a responsibility on a marketplace to oversee the conduct of its marketplace participants, unless the marketplace is an exchange or QTRS that has assumed responsibility for monitoring the conduct of its marketplace participants directly, rather than through a regulation services provider.¹⁴ We indicated, however, that marketplaces are expected to monitor activity on their markets for compliance with their own operational policies and procedures and to report any concerns about order entry or trading to IIROC.

We have also revised NI 21-101 to clarify that the requirement to maintain fair and orderly markets is not absolute; a marketplace must take all reasonable steps to ensure that its operations do not interfere with fair and orderly markets.¹⁵ In 21-101CP, we have indicated that, as part of these reasonable steps, the marketplace should ensure that its operations support compliance with regulatory requirements, including UMIR. This does not mean that the marketplace must system-enforce all regulatory requirements, but rather that it should not operate in a manner that, to the best of its knowledge, would cause the marketplace participants to breach regulatory requirements when trading on that marketplace.¹⁶ For example, a marketplace should not accept orders from a marketplace participant if it knows that entry of such orders would violate regulatory requirements.

e. Management and disclosure of conflicts of interest

In the Proposed Amendments, we introduced a requirement that a marketplace establish, maintain and ensure compliance with policies and procedures that identify and manage conflicts of interest arising from the operation of the marketplace or the services it provides.¹⁷ In 21-101CP, we indicated that this may include conflicts, actual or perceived, related to the commercial interest of a marketplace, the interests of its owners or operators, and the responsibilities and sound functioning of the marketplace.¹⁸ Proposed paragraph 10.1(e) of NI 21-101 would require that a marketplace disclose its conflict of interest policies and procedures.

¹² Specifically, section 4.1 of NI 23-101 states that Part 4 Best Execution of NI 23-101 does not apply to a dealer that carries on business as an ATS in compliance with section 6.1 of NI 21-101.

¹³ In section 5.7 of proposed amendments to NI 21-101.

¹⁴ Subsection 7.6(2) of 21-101CP.

¹⁵ See section 5.7 of NI 21-101.

¹⁶ Subsection 7.6(3) of 21-101CP.

¹⁷ Section 5.11 of proposed amendments to NI 21-101.

¹⁸ Section 7.8 of proposed amendments to 21-101CP.

One commenter noted that referral arrangements also create a potential conflict of interest and disclosure should be required. We agree and note that proposed paragraph 10.1(f) of NI 21-101 would require a marketplace to disclose referral arrangements between the marketplace and service providers. We have now revised subsection 7.8(1) of 21-101CP to clarify that a marketplace's policies and procedures related to conflicts of interest should also cover conflicts arising from referral arrangements.

Given that dealers that are owners of a marketplace may have a conflict of interest with respect to their clients, we have also amended 21-101CP to clarify our expectation that a marketplace ensure that its marketplace participants disclose their ownership to their clients at least quarterly.¹⁹ The disclosure could be done by including a requirement for this disclosure in any agreements between the marketplace and marketplace participants. Furthermore, since conflicts of interest could also arise when a marketplace or an affiliated entity of the marketplace trades on its own account on a marketplace, for example when it trades against or in competition with client orders, we are of the view that such potential conflicts of interest should also be disclosed. We have amended subsection 12.1(4) of 21-101CP to indicate this. We note that these disclosure requirements are consistent with existing disclosure obligations of marketplace participants that are registered under National Instrument 31-103 *Registration Requirements, Exemptions and Ongoing Registrant Requirements*.

f. Outsourcing

In the Proposed Amendments, we proposed requirements for marketplaces that outsource any of their key services or systems to a service provider, which may be an affiliate or associate of the marketplace.²⁰ One of these requirements was that marketplaces establish policies and procedures to evaluate and approve outsourcing agreements. We also proposed amendments to 21-101CP to provide guidance regarding the content of these policies and procedures.²¹

For greater clarity, we have further revised 21-101CP to indicate that it is our expectation that a marketplace's policies and procedures also include an assessment of whether the marketplace will be able to continue to comply with securities legislation in the event of the bankruptcy or insolvency of a service provider to which the marketplace has outsourced key services.

g. Transparency of marketplace operations

In the Proposed Amendments, we introduced a requirement that a marketplace publicly disclose on its website certain information. This information includes the listing, trading, data and routing fees charged by a marketplace, an affiliate, or by a third-party entity to which the marketplace outsourced its services.²²

We received a number of comments on this section of the Proposed Amendments. A few commenters requested clarification of the fees that should be disclosed. One commenter suggested that fees charged by a marketplace affiliate or by a third party that provides marketplace services should also be disclosed. We agree with this comment and have amended NI 21-101 to require that all fees be disclosed, including those charged by affiliates or third parties that provide marketplace services.²³

One commenter requested clarification regarding the treatment of co-location fees. We are of the view that, because co-location is a core service of a marketplace that is subject to the fair access provisions of NI 21-101, co-location fees must also be disclosed. We have amended paragraph 10.1(a) of NI 21-101 to state this requirement.

We have also made consequential amendments to Exhibit L – *Fees of Form 21-101F1 and 21-101F2*.

h. Initial filing requirements for marketplaces

NI 21-101 sets out the initial filing requirements applicable to marketplaces. They are as follows:

- An applicant for recognition as an exchange or QTRS must file Form 21-101F1;²⁴ and
- An ATS must file an initial operation report using Form 21-101F2 before commencing its operations.²⁵

In the Proposed Amendments, we proposed revisions to Forms 21-101F1 and 21-101F2 that would update these forms and ensure they are more reflective of the current market structure and of the trading activities of marketplaces. We did this by

¹⁹ Subsection 7.8(2) of 21-101CP.

²⁰ Section 5.12 of NI 21-101.

²¹ Section 7.9 of 21-101CP.

²² Section 10.1 of proposed amendments to NI 21-101.

²³ Paragraph 10.1(a) of NI 21-101.

²⁴ Subsections 3.1(1) and 4.1(1) of NI 21-101 for Exchanges and QTRSs, respectively.

²⁵ Section 6.4 of NI 21-101.

increasing consistency between the information filing requirements in the forms, by enhancing the forms with additional information, including information about the operations of the marketplace, outsourcing activities or governance, and by removing obsolete and unduly onerous requirements.

Based on feedback from commenters, we have made a few non-material changes to the forms. These include clarifying, in Form 21-101F1, that if an exchange files the information required by the form pursuant to section 5.5 of NI 21-101 *Filing of Rules*, it does not need to file the information again as an amendment to the form.

i. Ongoing filing and reporting requirements for marketplaces

NI 21-101 sets out ongoing filing requirements for all marketplaces. These requirements include prior notification of significant changes to marketplace operations, as described in Form 21-101F1 or 21-101F2, as applicable. 21-101CP provides guidance on what constitutes a significant change.

In the Proposed Amendments, we proposed a number of changes to the existing filing requirements applicable to marketplaces and to their timing.²⁶ Specifically, we proposed to:

- require that changes that are not considered significant changes be filed by a marketplace immediately before their implementation;
- shorten the filing period for fee changes from 45 days to seven business days before their implementation; and
- introduce principles-based guidance on what would be considered a significant change in 21-101CP.²⁷

We also proposed that all marketplaces, ATSS and exchanges file Form 21-101F3, which is currently filed only by ATSS. We proposed a number of revisions to Form 21-101F3 that would tailor the reporting requirements to the different types of marketplaces currently operating, to include information that is more reflective of a marketplace's activities, and to remove the requirement to report certain detailed information, such as the requirement to list all the securities traded on a marketplace.

Many commenters supported the changes we proposed. However, some concerns were expressed that the proposed requirement that non-significant changes be filed prior to their implementation would be burdensome and, in some circumstances, not possible. We agree with these comments and have amended NI 21-101 to require that a change that is not significant be reported by the earlier of the close of business on the tenth day after the end of the month in which the change was made and the date on which such change is made public by the marketplace, if applicable.²⁸ We believe that this would allow the CSA to obtain more timely notification of all relevant changes to a marketplace, while giving the marketplace more flexibility.

We have also amended paragraph 6.1(4)(k) of 21-101CP to clarify that only changes in affiliates that provide services to or on behalf of the marketplace are considered significant. We did this in response to concerns raised that the Proposed Amendments would have required prior notification of changes in all affiliates, which could be unduly onerous for an international marketplace with many affiliates that do not provide services for the marketplace.

A few commenters requested clarification regarding the technology changes that would be considered significant. We have amended paragraph 6.1(4)(h) of 21-101CP to clarify that these would include changes to the systems and technology used by a marketplace that support order entry, order routing, execution, trade reporting, trade comparison, data feeds, co-location and, if applicable, market surveillance and trade clearing, including those affecting capacity.²⁹ For clarity, these would be significant changes to the information related to marketplace systems and technology documented in the relevant exhibits of Forms 21-101F1 or 21-101F2, as applicable. Currently, information regarding marketplaces' systems and technology is included in Exhibit G – *Systems and Contingency Planning*, and may also be included in other exhibits, such as Exhibit E – *Operations of the Marketplace*. It is our intention to review, and possibly broaden, the scope of the requirements in Forms 21-101F1 and 21-101F2 to disclose information regarding marketplaces' systems and technology.

²⁶ Section 3.2 of proposed amendments to NI 21-101.

²⁷ Subsection 6.1(4) of proposed amendments to 21-101CP.

²⁸ Subsection 3.2(3) of NI 21-101.

²⁹ Paragraph 6.1(4)(h) of 21-101CP.

j. Audit trail requirements

In the Proposed Amendments, we proposed a requirement that marketplaces and dealers indicate whether orders they receive are directed-action orders (DAO).³⁰ We also proposed a requirement that marketplaces keep records that indicate whether a marketplace or a marketplace participant marked an order as a DAO.³¹ DAO orders are currently required to be marked as such by the Order Protection Rule³², which became effective on February 1, 2011.

One commenter indicated that a marketplace would not know which orders arriving from another marketplace's SOR, a commercial SOR or other execution order platform were marked DAO by a marketplace or by a marketplace participant. We have revised clause 11.2(c)(xviii) of NI 21-101³³ to clarify that the requirement is that a marketplace keep records of orders that it receives as DAO and of orders that the marketplace itself marks as DAO.

In anticipation of the publication for comment of proposed National Instrument 23-103 *Electronic Trading and Direct Electronic Access to Marketplaces* (NI 23-103), which proposed provisions regarding electronic trading, including a proposed requirement to identify clients that have direct electronic access, we proposed a requirement in the Proposed Amendments that records be kept and an audit trail maintained of clients with direct electronic access to a marketplace.³⁴

Some concerns regarding this proposed requirement were received. Specifically, commenters noted that NI 23-103 only requires participants to advise marketplaces about which of the participants' trader IDs represent clients with direct electronic access, but not the identity of the ultimate client. As a result, they noted that the marketplace would not have records of the ultimate clients with direct electronic access. We acknowledge these comments, and confirm that the client identifier may be the marketplace trader ID assigned to a client accessing the marketplace using direct electronic access and that a particular client may have multiple trader IDs.

k. Marketplace systems and business continuity planning

NI 21-101 includes a number of requirements applicable to a marketplace's systems, including a requirement that a marketplace promptly notify the regulators and, if applicable, its regulation services provider, of any material systems failure, malfunction or delay.³⁵ In response to requests for clarification, we have amended subsection 14.1(4) of 21-101CP to clarify that a system failure would be considered material if, in the normal course of operation, the marketplace would escalate the matter to senior management ultimately accountable for technology. We have also clarified our expectation that a marketplace will update the regulators on the status of the failure, the resumption of the services and the results of its internal review of the failure.

The system requirements in NI 21-101 also include a requirement that marketplaces develop and maintain reasonable business continuity and disaster recovery plans and test their business continuity and disaster recovery plans on a reasonably frequent basis and, in any event, at least annually.³⁶ We have made a further revision to 21-101CP to indicate our expectation that marketplaces participate, as part of their business continuity plan testing, in industry-wide tests.³⁷ In the current environment, where market participants are highly inter-connected, it is imperative that a marketplace business continuity plan also be tested in conjunction with those of other market participants to assess the marketplace's ability to communicate and complete transactions in case of significant disruptive events.

l. Locked and crossed markets

In proposed section 6.5 of NI 23-101, we extended the requirement that a marketplace participant not intentionally lock or cross markets to marketplaces that route or reprice orders. In proposed section 6.4 of 23-101CP, we gave additional guidance regarding situations that would be considered to be an unintentional lock or cross. We have further revised section 6.4 of 23-101CP to clarify that triggering an on-stop order would not be considered to intentionally lock or cross a market because it does not involve "repricing" of an order, but rather it makes a previously-entered order eligible to trade.

³⁰ Clause 11.2(1)(c)(xviii) of proposed amendments to NI 21-101 and clause 11.2(1)(u) of proposed amendments to NI 23-101 for the requirements applicable to marketplaces and dealers, respectively.

³¹ Clause 11.2(1)(c)(xix) of proposed amendments to NI 21-101.

³² See Part 6 of NI 23-101.

³³ The provision was contained in clause 11.2(c)(xix) of the Proposed Amendments. For clarity, it has been combined with the preceding clause in the Amendments.

³⁴ Paragraph 11.2(c)(iv) and 11.2(d)(x) of NI 21-101, respectively.

³⁵ Paragraph 12.1(c) of NI 21-101.

³⁶ In section 12.4 of NI 21-101.

³⁷ Section 14.3 of 21-101CP.

m. Other changes to the Marketplace Rules

In addition to the changes discussed above, we have made a number of other non-material changes to the Marketplace Rules. They are described below.

i. Section 1.1 of NI 21-101 Definitions

We amended a number of defined terms to take into account that they are now defined in the *Securities Act* (Ontario).

ii. Exhibit E of Forms 21-101F1 and 21-101F2

In item 7, we have clarified that the description of the manner of operation of a marketplace and its associated functions would include a description of how the orders interact, including the full priority of execution for all order types.

iii. Exhibit K of Forms 21-101F1 and 21-101F2

This Exhibit requires marketplaces to provide a list of marketplace participants, including a description of the types of trading activities primarily engaged in by the marketplace participants, including the traders. In response to a comment received that noted that a marketplace does not collect such detailed information, we revised the Exhibit to require that a marketplace report only the types of trading activities in which its marketplace participants engage.

iv. Form 21-101F3

We have made minor changes to the Proposed Amendments to clarify that marketplaces are required to provide, on a quarterly basis, a brief description of amendments to Forms 21-101F1 or 21-101F2 that were implemented during a particular quarter and of those that were not implemented. This will enable us to track and, if necessary, follow up on changes previously filed by a marketplace but not implemented. We have also made minor changes to the reporting requirements in the Form based on feedback we received from the marketplaces.

V. IMPLEMENTATION OF THE AMENDMENTS

As noted above, the Amendments would introduce revised Forms 21-101F1, 21-101F2, 21-101F3 and 21-101F5. We are not requiring marketplaces and information processors to refile a complete and updated copy of their existing forms by the date of the implementation of the Amendments. We expect, however, that these forms will be filed by December 31, 2012. In the meantime, marketplaces and information processors will be expected to file any amendments to the information in their forms using the revised exhibits to these forms up to and until December 31, 2012. Marketplaces will be expected to file the information required by the new Form 21-101F3 beginning with the quarter ending December 31, 2012.

The Amendments require the marketplaces to file their forms in electronic form.³⁸ The marketplaces are currently complying with this requirement by providing soft copies of their applicable forms. OSC staff are currently developing a filing system that would allow the marketplaces to submit their forms online. When that process is complete, we will notify the marketplaces and work with them to implement the new filing system. We will also consider what, if any, amendments are needed to 21-101CP to document the new filing process.

VI. AUTHORITY FOR THE AMENDMENTS

In those jurisdictions in which the Amendments to the Marketplace Rules are to be adopted, the securities legislation provides the securities regulatory authority with rule-making or regulation-making authority in respect of the subject matter of the amendments.

In Ontario, the amendments to NI 21-101 and the Forms are being made under the following provisions of the *Securities Act* (Ontario) (Act):

- Paragraph 143(1)7 authorizes the Commission to make rules prescribing requirements in respect of the disclosure or furnishing of information to the public or the Commission by registrants.
- Paragraph 143(1)10 authorizes the Commission to make rules prescribing requirements in respect of the books, records and other documents required by subsection 19(1) of the Act to be kept by market participants (as defined in the Act), including the form in which and the period for which the books, records and other documents are to be kept.

³⁸ Section 3.5 of NI 21-101.

- Paragraph 143(1)11 authorizes the Commission to make rules regulating the listing or trading of publicly traded securities including requiring reporting of trades and quotations.
- Paragraph 143(1)12 authorizes the Commission to make rules regulating recognized stock exchanges, recognized self-regulatory organizations, recognized quotation and trade reporting systems, alternative trading systems, recognized clearing agencies and designated trade repositories, including prescribing requirements in respect of the review or approval by the Commission of any by-law, rule, regulation, policy, procedure, interpretation or practice.
- Paragraph 143(1)13 authorizes the Commission to make rules regulating trading or advising in securities to prevent trading or advising that it is fraudulent, manipulative, deceptive or unfairly detrimental to investors.
- Paragraph 143(1)39 authorizes the Commission to make rules requiring or respecting the media, format, preparation, form, content, execution, certification, dissemination, and other use, filing and review of all documents required under or governed by the Act, the regulation or the rules and all documents, determined by the regulations or the rules to be ancillary to the documents.

In Ontario, the amendments to NI 23-101 are being made under the following provisions of the Act:

- Paragraph 143(1)10 authorizes the Commission to make rules prescribing requirements in respect of the books, records and other documents required by subsection 19(1) of the Act to be kept by market participants (as defined in the Act), including the form in which and the period for which the books, records and other documents are to be kept.
- Paragraph 143(1)12 authorizes the Commission to make rules regulating recognized stock exchanges, recognized self-regulatory organizations, recognized quotation and trade reporting systems, alternative trading systems, recognized clearing agencies and designated trade repositories, including prescribing requirements in respect of the review or approval by the Commission of any by-law, rule, regulation, policy, procedure, interpretation or practice.
- Paragraph 143(1)13 authorizes the Commission to make rules regulating trading or advising in securities to prevent trading or advising that it is fraudulent, manipulative, deceptive or unfairly detrimental to investors.

VII. QUESTIONS

Questions may be referred to any of the following:

Timothy Baikie
Ontario Securities Commission
(416) 593-8136

Tracey Stern
Ontario Securities Commission
(416) 593-8167

Élaine Lanouette
Autorité des marchés financiers
(514) 395-0337 ext. 4356

Lorenz Berner
Alberta Securities Commission
(403) 355-3889

Ella-Jane Loomis
New Brunswick Securities Commission
(506) 643-7857

Ruxandra Smith
Ontario Securities Commission
(416) 593-2317

Serge Boisvert
Autorité des marchés financiers
(514) 395-0337 ext. 4358

Doug Brown
Manitoba Securities Commission
(204) 945-0605

Mark Wang
British Columbia Securities Commission
(604) 899-6658

APPENDIX A
SUMMARY OF COMMENTS ON PROPOSED AMENDMENTS TO NI 21-101 AND 23-101

Commenters:

CanDeal.ca
Investment Industry Association of Canada
Liquidnet Canada Inc.
CNSX Markets Inc.
TMX Group Inc.
TriAct Canada Marketplace LP
TD Securities
Chi-X Canada ATS Limited
TD Asset Management Inc.
RBC Dominion Securities Inc.
CIBC World Markets Inc.
Alpha ATS LP

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
3.2 — Change in Information	General	
(1) Subject to subsection (2), a marketplace must not implement a significant change to a matter set out in Form 21-101F1 or in Form 21-101F2 unless the marketplace has filed an amendment to the information provided in Form 21-101F1 or in Form 21-101F2 in the manner set out in the Form at least 45 days before implementing the change.	One commenter agreed with the commentary that a new type of security or a new category of participant is a significant change requiring 45 days advance notice, but thought the language was too broad and could require an amendment to be filed each time a new security is listed or a new participant is added. The commenter suggested changing 21-101CP 6.1(4)(e) and (h) to read “changes to types of securities (marketplace participants) or new types of securities (marketplace participants)...”.	<i>We agree and have made the suggested change.</i>
(2) A marketplace must file an amendment to the information provided in Exhibit L – Fees of Form 21-101F1 or Exhibit L – Fees of Form 21-101F2, as applicable, at least seven business days before implementing a change to the information provided in Exhibit L – Fees.	One commenter indicated that 21-101CP should include a discussion on the appropriate use of discretion in determining whether a change is significant.	<i>21-101CP lists items the regulators will generally consider “significant.” Since the Companion Policy provides guidance only, we do not think additional discussion on the appropriate use of discretion by a marketplace is necessary.</i>
(3) Immediately before implementing a change to a matter set out in Form 21-101 F1 or Form 21-101F2 other than a change referred to in subsection (1) or (2), a marketplace must file an amendment to the information provided in the Form.	A number of commenters thought that the requirement to file non-significant changes in advance of implementation is burdensome and may not be possible in some circumstances. One commenter suggested a requirement that non-significant changes be filed within 10 days from the end of the month in which the change is made.	<i>We agree and have made the proposed change. Subsection 3.2(3) of NI 21-101 was revised to require that marketplaces file amendments related to changes that are not significant by the close of business on the 10th day after the end of the month in which the change was made. If a marketplace chooses to publicly announce a non-significant change or is required to make details public under section 10.1 of NI 21-101, notice must be given no later than the time of the public announcement.</i>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
	<p>One commenter was of the view that significant changes are material changes to market structure, types of participants, market surveillance and enforcement. All other changes should be reported quarterly, with a marketplace sanctioned or forced to withdraw a change if it mischaracterizes it.</p>	<p><i>The items listed as “significant changes” are ones the regulators consider necessary to understand the marketplace’s business and may include changes other than those listed by the commenter. For example, new or changes in fees, access requirements or corporate governance are relevant and necessary to understand the marketplace’s business. The marketplace will not necessarily be required to publish details of a proposed change for comment.</i></p>
	<p>One commenter supported reducing the notification period for non-significant changes, but indicated that the regulators should be able to impose a delay if on review they determine a change to be significant.</p>	<p><i>As indicated in subsection 6.1(7) of 21-101CP, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities may review filings for changes other than significant changes to ascertain the appropriateness of categorization of such filings and notify the marketplace of any disagreement. If the change is deemed to be significant, it would follow the applicable filing and review process.</i></p>
	<p>One commenter thought flexibility was needed to determine what is a significant change on a case-by-case basis, by looking at substance, not form. A marketplace extending its trading hours to match another’s would probably not be a significant change, while a proposal to begin trading before any other market is open probably is.</p>	<p><i>We note that if the subject matter of the change is one that is generally considered “significant,” the Canadian securities regulatory authorities consider it to be significant even if the change is made to conform to the practice of another marketplace.</i></p>
	<p>Two commenters indicated that the proposed requirement to report changes in affiliates could be unworkable for international marketplaces with tens or hundreds of affiliates if changes to affiliates are included. The reporting should be limited to the domestic affiliates of a marketplace.</p>	<p><i>We agree that not all affiliates need to be included, and have made a change to require reporting for affiliates (domestic and foreign) that provide services for the marketplace.</i></p>
	<p>One commenter noted that the wording in 21-101CP should be narrower than the rule to provide guidance, but is broader. The list in subsection 6.1(4) of 21-101CP does not map to Forms 21-101F1 and 21-101F2, and should indicate the applicable exhibit.</p>	<p><i>We do not agree with this comment. NI 21-101 sets out the filing requirements for significant changes, while 21-101CP gives guidance and clarity on what would be considered significant changes by the Canadian securities regulatory authorities. It is not necessary that subsection 6.1(4) of 21-101CP map to the exhibits in Forms 21-101F1 and 21-101F2, nor that these exhibits are identified in 21-101CP. It is the responsibility of a marketplace to identify where the relevant information is contained in the Forms and which particular exhibits should be revised in the event of a significant change.</i></p>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
	Fees	
	Regarding the proposed requirement to shorten the notification period for marketplace fees to at least seven business days before implementing a change to the information provided in Exhibit L – Fees, three commenters supported the shorter notification period. Another commenter thought marketplaces should be able to implement fee decreases immediately, and the regulator should confirm that it is a true fee decrease in the following seven days.	<i>We do not believe that a seven business day notification period is unduly onerous, and it should be considered by the marketplace in the fee changing process, whether the change relates to an increase or decrease of the fee.</i>
	Another commenter noted that marketplace fees are complex, and seven business days is not sufficient time to ascertain the impact and make changes to trading strategies. The proposed notification period should only be applicable to clear fee decreases.	<i>As we indicated in subsection 6.1(8) of 21-101CP, while the Canadian securities regulatory authorities will make best efforts to review amendments, including amendments to Exhibit L – Fees, to Forms 21-101F1 and 21-101F2 within the timelines specified in subsections 3.2(1) and (2) of NI 21-101, the review period may exceed these timeframes in circumstances where the information filed needs to be more extensively reviewed.</i>
	One commenter requested clarification regarding the fees that would be covered. Would they include fees for smart order routers or market data offered by a related party?	<i>The fees covered are the fees related to marketplace services, including data, whether charged directly by the marketplace or by a third party on its behalf. Subsection 12.1(2) of 21-101CP provides guidance regarding the fees that would be included.</i>
	Changes to marketplace technology	
	A number of commenters requested clarification of what constitutes a “significant” change. Two commenters suggested that fixes to address problematic issues or bugs are not significant, and nor are hardware upgrades. One commenter recommended that the focus should be on those changes that would require dealers and participants to adjust their own systems. Another commenter thought that changes to accommodate new order types are not significant, and they are disclosed to participants in any event.	<i>In paragraph 6.1(4)(h) of 21-101CP, we indicated that changes to the systems and technology used by a marketplace that support order entry, order routing, execution, trade reporting, trade comparison, data feeds, co-location and market surveillance, if applicable, including those affecting capacity, would be considered significant. For clarity, these would be changes to the systems or technology related information, as documented in the relevant exhibits of 21-101F1 or 21-101F2, as applicable. Paragraph 6.1(5)(b)(v) indicates that minor system or technology changes that would not significantly impact the system or capacity of the marketplace would not be included.</i>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
	One commenter noted that major system changes introduce risk, and their frequency and complexity is accelerating. Protected marketplaces should be required to batch updates, upgrades, bug fixes and new functionality into regularly scheduled drops. Protected marketplaces should also provide full-scale test environments for performance and functional testing.	<i>We agree that this is a good business practice. The securities regulatory authorities plan to review the requirements related to marketplace systems, technology and contingency planning included in the Marketplace Rules. The purpose of the review will be to assess what, if any, amendments are needed to the Marketplace Rules to reflect issues related to marketplaces' systems.</i>
4.2 — Filing of Annual Audited Financial Statements (1) A recognized exchange and a recognized quotation and trade reporting system must file annual audited financial statements within 90 days after the end of its financial year in accordance with the requirements outlined in subsection 4.1(1). (2) An ATS must file annual audited financial statements.	Two commenters supported the proposed changes. One commenter thought that all marketplaces should be required to publish annual financials so market participants can assess their viability. The same commenter indicated that the capital requirements for ATSs should be higher than IIROC minimums. ATSs should have the same financial viability requirements as exchanges have in their recognition orders.	<i>We acknowledge these comments.</i> <i>We do not agree with this suggestion. The intent of the requirement is to enable the securities regulatory authorities to assess financial viability of marketplaces, as part of their oversight responsibility.</i> <i>We do not agree with this comment. There is much less impact to the market and investors if an ATS ceases operations. If an ATS gains significant market share, the applicable securities regulatory authority can require it to be recognized as an exchange or impose additional terms and conditions on the entity's registration. These may include additional capital requirements. Furthermore, ATSs are subject to the capital requirements established by IIROC. IIROC monitors their viability in a number of ways, including through reviews of the ATSs' monthly and annual financial reports.</i>
5.1 — Access Requirements (1) A marketplace must not unreasonably prohibit, condition or limit access by a person or company to services offered by it.	Two commenters indicated that the Canadian securities regulatory authorities need to address how the requirement applies to marketplaces that restrict access to certain dealers or the buy side. Will existing marketplaces be grandfathered? Indications of Interest (IOI) Regarding the proposed clarification in subsection 7.1(4) of 21-101CP that marketplaces that send IOI information to a selected smart order router (SOR) should consider the extent to which this information should be sent to similarly situated SORs, a number of commenters indicated that IOI information should be provided to all SORs. One commenter noted that a marketplace SOR should be able to	<i>We note that we are not proposing a change from the current rule, which allows a marketplace to give access to certain classes of market participants but requires it to be reasonable when determining access.</i> <i>We agree with the comment that details regarding an IOI should be available to all SORs if made available to a specific SOR. We have amended subsection 7.1(4) of 21-101CP to clarify that this is our expectation.</i>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
	<p>take into account dark liquidity on its own book without triggering pre-trade transparency.</p> <p>One commenter inquired whether the information that would be made available to all SORs is intended to be limited to displayed orders or to dark orders, flash or co-location orders as well.</p>	<p><i>As indicated above, it is our expectation that IOI information sent to an SOR is made available to all other SORs. If an IOI is considered to be an order, it would be subject to the pre-trade transparency requirements of NI 21-101. That is, if the order is displayed by the marketplace to external individuals or entities, including an SOR, it would have to be transparent and available to all SORs.</i></p>
<p>5.7 — Fair and Orderly Markets A marketplace must not engage in or promote any activity that interferes with fair and orderly markets.</p>	<p>One commenter noted that this is a potentially very broad requirement, especially for ATSS. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities should clarify the requirement to indicate this is not imposing an oversight role but is intended to prevent the introduction or promotion by the marketplace of anything contrary to the public interest.</p> <p>Another commenter agreed with the principle, but noted that marketplaces do not have the tools to accomplish this. For example, the regulators took the position that a marketplace cannot cancel trades. The marketplaces should be given the means to achieve the objective.</p>	<p><i>We acknowledge the concerns and have amended 21-101CP to indicate that the requirement for fair and orderly markets does not impose a responsibility on a marketplace to oversee the conduct of its marketplace participants, unless the marketplace is an exchange or QTRS that has assumed responsibility for monitoring the conduct of its marketplace participants directly, rather than through a regulation services provider. We indicated, however, that marketplaces are expected to monitor activity on their markets for compliance with their own operational policies and procedures and to report any concerns about order entry or trading to IIROC.</i></p> <p><i>We have also revised section 5.7 of NI 21-101 to specify that the requirement is that a marketplace take all reasonable steps to ensure that its operations do not interfere with fair and orderly markets. In subsection 7.6(3) of 21-101CP, we indicated that our expectation is that, as part of these reasonable steps, the marketplace should ensure that its operations support compliance with regulatory requirements, including UMIR. While this does not mean that the marketplace must system-enforce all regulatory requirements, it means that it should not operate in a manner that would cause its marketplace participants to breach regulatory requirements when trading on that marketplace.</i></p>
<p>5.9 — Risk Disclosure for Foreign Exchange-Traded Securities</p> <p>(1) When opening an account for a marketplace participant, a marketplace that is trading foreign exchange-traded securities must provide that</p>	<p>One commenter questioned the relevancy of this requirement given that listed issuers are reporting issuers. If the requirement is meant to cover unlisted securities traded on an exchange, it is not clear how the exchange will comply. Must it get acknowledgement from all participants</p>	<p><i>The requirement in NI 21-101 covers foreign issuers that are traded on an “unlisted trading” basis. An exchange or QTRS must get the acknowledgement from its participants, not from the participants’ clients. We have clarified the wording of the provision.</i></p>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
<p>marketplace participant with disclosure in substantially the following words:</p> <p>“The securities traded by or through the marketplace are not listed on an exchange in Canada and may not be securities of a reporting issuer in Canada. As a result, there is no assurance that information concerning the issuer is available or, if the information is available, that it meets Canadian disclosure requirements.”</p> <p>(2) Before the first order for a foreign exchange-traded security is entered onto the marketplace by a marketplace participant, the marketplace must obtain an acknowledgement from the marketplace participant that the marketplace participant has received the disclosure required in subsection (1).</p>	<p>or from participants accessing the market indirectly?</p>	
<p>5.11 Management of Conflicts of Interest</p> <p>A marketplace must establish, maintain and ensure compliance with policies and procedures that identify and manage any conflicts of interest arising from the operation of the marketplace or the services it provides.</p>	<p>Three commenters agreed with the proposal.</p>	<p><i>We acknowledge these comments.</i></p>
	<p>One commenter indicated that a marketplace’s conflicts policy should balance the commercial interests of all parties, including the marketplace.</p>	<p><i>The provision sets out the requirement to have policies to identify and manage conflicts of interest as a principle. It does not prescribe the contents of each marketplace’s policy. However, section 7.8 of 21-101CP gives guidance regarding the conflicts of interest that a marketplace may face, and these include conflicts, actual or perceived, related to the commercial interest of the marketplace, the interests of its owners or operators, and the responsibilities and sound functioning of the marketplace.</i></p>
	<p>Referral arrangements create a possibility of conflict and should be disclosed.</p>	<p><i>We agree and note that paragraph 10.1(f) of NI 21-101 requires the disclosure of referral arrangements between the marketplace and service providers. We have amended subsection 7.8(1) of 21-101CP to clarify that conflicts of interest may include those arising as a result of a marketplace’s referral arrangements.</i></p> <p><i>We have further amended 21-101CP by adding subsection 7.8(2) to clarify our expectation that, given that dealers who are owners of marketplaces may have a</i></p>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
		<p><i>conflict of interest with respect to their clients, a marketplace's policies should also take into account conflicts related to owners that are marketplace participants. Also, it is our expectation that the marketplace would include in its marketplace participant agreements a requirement that marketplace participants disclose their ownership to their clients in compliance with the dealers' obligations under National Instrument 31-103 Registration Requirements, Exemptions and Ongoing Registrant Obligations. We have indicated this in subsection 12.1(4) of 21-101CP.</i></p>
<p>5.12 Outsourcing If a marketplace outsources any of its key services or systems to a service provider, which includes affiliates or associates of the marketplace, the marketplace must:</p> <p>(a) establish and maintain policies and procedures for the selection of service providers to which key services and systems may be outsourced and for the evaluation and approval of such outsourcing arrangements,</p> <p>(b) identify any conflicts of interest between the marketplace and the service provider to which key services and systems are outsourced, and establish and maintain policies and procedures to mitigate and manage such conflicts of interest,</p> <p>(c) enter into a contract with the service provider to which key services and systems are outsourced that is appropriate for the materiality and nature of the outsourced activities and that provides for adequate termination procedures,</p> <p>(d) maintain access to the books and records of the service providers relating to the outsourced activities,</p> <p>(e) ensure that the securities regulatory authorities have access to all data, information</p>	<p>Commenters agreed with the proposal. One commenter indicated that the rule should be principles-based.</p>	<p><i>The proposed requirement is consistent with principles outlined in the report of the Technical Committee of the International Organization of Securities Commission (IOSCO) on outsourcing. We have also clarified that the marketplace's policies and procedures should include an assessment of the marketplace's ability to continue to comply with securities legislation in the event of bankruptcy or insolvency of its service provider.</i></p>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
<p>and systems maintained by the service provider on behalf of the marketplace, for the purposes of determining the marketplace's compliance with securities legislation,</p> <p>(f) take appropriate measures to determine that service providers to which key services or systems are outsourced establish, maintain and periodically test an appropriate business continuity plan, including a disaster recovery plan,</p> <p>(g) take appropriate measures to ensure that the service providers protect the marketplace participants' proprietary, order, trade or any other confidential information, and</p> <p>(h) establish processes and procedures to regularly review the performance of the service provider under any such outsourcing arrangement.</p>		
<p>6.7 — Notification of Threshold</p> <p>(1) An ATS must notify the securities regulatory authority in writing if,</p> <p>(a) during at least two of the preceding three months of operation, the total dollar value of the trading volume on the ATS for a month in any type of security is equal to or greater than 10 percent of the total dollar value of the trading volume for the month in that type of security on all marketplaces in Canada;</p> <p>(b) during at least two of the preceding three months of operation, the total trading volume on the ATS for</p>	<p>A number of commenters agreed with the proposal.</p> <p>One commenter thought there was no policy rationale for forcing an ATS to be recognized as an exchange given the harmonization of the requirements, unless the ATS wants to list securities or perform a regulatory function itself. Another noted that no rationale was given for a change that would impose a burden on ATSs without any clear benefit.</p> <p>Two commenters thought this requirement was unnecessary as the information is already reported by ATSs to IIROC, which provides the data to the CSA and to the marketplaces.</p>	<p><i>We acknowledge these comments.</i></p> <p><i>We disagree that the provision imposes a burden as it does not require the ATS to become an exchange automatically when certain thresholds are met, but rather, it requires the ATS to notify the securities regulatory authority if it has achieved a certain threshold. As we indicated in subsection 3.4(7) of the Companion Policy, the securities regulatory authority will review the ATS to consider if it should be an exchange or if additional terms and conditions on its registration are needed. As an ATS's market share grows, it has greater market impact and may need greater oversight.</i></p> <p><i>While we agree that ATSs send volume and value information to IIROC and IIROC produces market share reports to facilitate the marketplaces' compliance with this section of NI 21-101, the ATSs are ultimately responsible for monitoring the size and dollar value of their trading volume.</i></p>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
<p>a month in any type of security is equal to or greater than 10 percent of the total trading volume for the month in that type of security on all marketplaces in Canada; or</p> <p>(c) during at least two of the preceding three months of operation, the number of trades on the ATS for a month in any type of security is equal to or greater than 10 percent of the number of trades for the month in that type of security on all marketplaces in Canada.</p> <p>(2) An ATS must provide the notice referred to in subsection (1) within 30 days after the threshold referred to in subsection (1) is met or exceeded.</p>	<p>One commenter noted that fixed income marketplaces would not be able to comply as there are no monthly industry statistics for the securities they trade.</p>	<p><i>We note that the requirement to monitor the size of an ATS's trading volume and value of trading volume is an existing requirement in NI 21-101. However, we acknowledge the challenges that fixed income marketplaces have in complying with these requirements and encourage them to discuss with the securities regulatory authority about how to meet these requirements.</i></p>
<p>7.1 Pre-Trade Information Transparency – Exchange-Traded Securities</p> <p>(1) A marketplace that displays orders of exchange-traded securities to a person or company shall provide accurate and timely information regarding orders for the exchange-traded securities displayed by the marketplace to an information processor as required by the information processor or, if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider.</p> <p>(2) Subsection (1) does not apply if the marketplace only displays orders to its employees or to persons or companies retained by the marketplace to assist in the</p>	<p>General</p> <p>One commenter supported the clarification that the requirements apply to all orders and IOIs that are displayed, including information disseminated to SORs.</p> <p>Many commenters were of the view that there should not be a minimum size on dark orders for a number of reasons, described below</p>	<p><i>We acknowledge this comment.</i></p> <p><i>We acknowledge these comments and note that the Proposed Amendments do not propose a minimum size at this time. The Proposed UMIR Amendments referred to in the body of this Notice also do not propose an actual size threshold. Rather, the purpose of the Amendments and the Proposed UMIR Amendments is to facilitate the implementation of the regulatory framework for dark liquidity.</i></p>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
<p>operation of the marketplace and if the orders posted on the marketplace meet the size threshold set by a regulation services provider.</p>	.	
	<p>One commenter noted that any size that would be imposed would likely become obsolete as market structure evolves. However, other commenters noted that, if a minimum size is to be established, it should be 50 board lots.</p>	<p><i>We agree, and note that subsection 7.1(1) of NI 21-101 does not establish an actual threshold, but rather, it refers to the size threshold set by a regulation services provider, in this case, IIROC. To retain flexibility and allow IIROC to revise any threshold that may be imposed in the future, if required, no size amount was specified in the Proposed UMIR amendments.</i></p>
	<p>One commenter indicated that there should be industry consultation before setting a minimum size for dark orders.</p>	<p><i>We agree. As we indicated in the Notice that accompanied the Proposed Amendments, market participants would be consulted in the process of setting a minimum size for dark orders. The Notice of the Proposed UMIR Amendments describes this process, which would include publication of a notice requesting public comment for a period of at least 30 days from the date of issuance of the notice.</i></p>
	<p>One commenter indicated that minimum size restrictions may require market makers and liquidity providers to take greater risk in the dark markets, reducing risk appetite in lit ones, and reduce opportunities for retail order flow to interact with dark orders.</p>	<p><i>The purpose of the proposed regulatory framework for dark liquidity, which includes requiring that orders meet a minimum size to be entered without pre-trade transparency, is to protect the integrity of the price discovery process while maintaining the use of dark liquidity. That said, we acknowledge that the elements of this framework may lead to changes in the trading behaviour of market participants. While no size threshold was proposed at this time, we plan to monitor market developments.</i></p>
	<p>One commenter believed that there should be no minimum size if a marketplace offers significant price improvement, as this would benefit investors.</p>	<p><i>The rationale for proposing a minimum size for dark orders is to protect the price discovery process and the quality of the visible markets. We are of the view that this should be required regardless of the level of price improvement offered by a marketplace.</i></p>
	<p>One commenter was of the view that dark orders should be restricted if it is clear that they inhibit the functioning of the markets in a material and quantifiable manner. Others, however, supported the concept of a minimum size for marketplaces. One noted that issues related to dark liquidity should be dealt with on a policy basis rather than a “wait-and-see” basis.</p>	<p><i>Our regulatory approach for dark liquidity is proactive and was not intended to address a problem. As we indicated in the notices describing the proposed framework for dark liquidity previously published, we acknowledge that there has been no evidence that dark liquidity has had a negative impact on the Canadian capital market. However, we have established a framework that would allow the CSA and IIROC sufficient flexibility to intervene as needed in order to encourage transparency and address</i></p>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
		<i>risks to the quality of the price discovery process.</i>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
	One commenter noted that focusing solely on a minimum size will not improve market structure.	<i>The proposed regulatory framework for dark liquidity does not focus only on a minimum size for dark orders. As described in Joint CSA/IIROC Notice 23-311 and in the Proposed UMIR Amendments, there are other elements, specifically: that orders must receive price improvement in order to execute against dark orders, unless they exceed a certain size; that price improvement must be meaningful; and that visible orders must have priority over dark orders. We note that CSA and IIROC staff are currently reviewing other issues that impact market structure, such as broker preferencing, internalization of order flow, and marketplaces' fees models, in order to assess what, if any, regulatory response is needed.</i>
	One commenter noted that setting a minimum size could lead to information leakage, negatively impacting best execution and overall liquidity.	<i>We recognize the potential for information leakage associated with setting of a minimum size. This issue, and how to mitigate the risk of being gamed, will be considered as part of the process in determining a minimum size.</i>
	One commenter noted that there is risk of dark liquidity migrating to other jurisdictions if the rules are too restrictive.	<i>We acknowledge the potential for reduced dark liquidity in Canada, however, we believe that the framework we proposed for dark liquidity would ensure that the visible market and the price discovery process are not harmed. At the same time, we note that dealers' best execution obligations govern where and how to execute their trades, and dealers would have to justify any decisions on how they directed order flow in the context of best execution requirements.</i>
	One commenter noted that the wording of the exemption in subsection 7.1(2) may not apply to marketplaces that facilitate one-to-one negotiations, and those marketplaces should be exempted from the pre-trade transparency requirements.	<i>We have amended 21-101CP to indicate that the securities regulatory authority may consider granting an exemption from the pre-trade transparency requirements in sections 7.1, 7.3, 8.1 and/or 8.2 of NI 21-101 to a marketplace for orders that result from a request for quotes or facility that allows negotiation between two parties in certain circumstances. These would include that order details are shown only to the negotiating parties; that no actionable IOIs are displayed by either party or by the marketplace; and that each order entered on the marketplace meets the size threshold that would be set by a regulation services provider, as provided in subsection 7.1(2) of NI 21-101.</i>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
	One commenter noted that the residual amount of a partially-filled dark order should be eligible to continue as a dark order even if it is below any minimum size that would be established.	<i>We refer the commenters to the Proposed UMIR Amendments, which would allow partially filled dark orders to continue to remain dark.</i>
	One commenter noted that Calculated Price Orders as defined in 1.1.4 of 23-101CP and “derived mid-peg orders” should also be exempt under 7.1(2) as the price is not known at the time.	<i>We refer the commenters to the Proposed UMIR Amendments that would introduce a definition for Dark Orders. As defined, Dark Orders would exclude certain specialty orders, including Opening Orders.</i>
8.6 Exemption for Government Debt Securities – Section 8.1 [requiring transparency of orders for government debt securities] does not apply until January 1, 2015.	One commenter supported not requiring pre-trade transparency for unlisted debt.	<i>We acknowledge this comment. We note that the CSA has implemented this provision through blanket orders and, in Ontario, through OSC Rule 21-501 – Deferral of Information Transparency Requirements for Government Debt Securities in National Instrument 21-101 – Marketplace Operation, which came in force on December 31, 2011.</i>
10.1 Disclosure by Marketplaces – A marketplace must publicly disclose on its website information reasonably necessary to enable a person or company to understand the marketplace’s operations or services it provides, including but not limited to information related to:	One commenter noted that marketplaces are not currently required to disclose individual fee agreements with dealers and other participants that can result in a substantial variance in the actual fees paid. They should be required to clarify if fees are negotiable and the CSA should determine whether and how these agreements should be disclosed.	<i>We are of the view that all the fee schedules charged by a marketplace to any and all users of services should be disclosed, and have clarified this in subsection 12.1(2) of 21-101CP.</i>
(a) all fees, including any listing fees, trading fees, data fees, and routing fees charged by the marketplace, an affiliate or by a third party to which services have been outsourced;	One commenter requested clarification regarding the fees that would be covered by this provision. The commenter asked if the fees would include fees for smart order routers or market data offered by a related party. Another commenter requested clarification regarding the treatment of co-location fees. The same commenter believed co-location is not a key or core marketplace service. If the provision does apply, it should cover arrangements where third parties host marketplace servers and user servers.	<i>The provision would cover all fees for marketplace services, whether offered directly by the marketplace or through a third party. It does not cover non-marketplace services that unregulated third parties can provide.</i> <i>We disagree with this comment. Co-location is a core service and subject to the fair access requirements of NI 21-101. A marketplace should have a policy for determining which entities may co-locate and the cost. We have amended NI 21-101 accordingly, and paragraph 10.1(a) indicates that co-location fees are included in the fees that are required to be disclosed.</i>
(b) how orders are entered, interact and execute; (c) all order types; (d) access requirements; (e) the policies and procedures that identify and manage	A number of commenters supported the proposal, and one noted that the information that would be disclosed would help educate a marketplace’s clients.	<i>We acknowledge these comments.</i>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
<p>any conflicts of interest arising from the operation of the marketplace or the services it provides;</p> <p>(f) any referral arrangements between the marketplace and service providers;</p> <p>(g) where routing is offered, how routing decisions are made; and</p> <p>(h) when indications of interest are disseminated, the information disseminated and the types of recipients of such indications of interest.</p>	<p>One commenter thought there should be a provision allowing marketplaces to designate certain information as confidential to protect intellectual property rights.</p>	<p><i>We do not believe that NI 21-101 requires disclosure at a level of detail where confidentiality would be a concern.</i></p>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
	<p>One commenter noted that much of the information is generally available today. The CSA should clarify the amount of detail that should be disclosed on a marketplace's website as the information (especially for fees) varies widely. Another commenter noted that current public disclosure by ATSS is inconsistent and inadequate. The CSA should include a public comment requirement for both exchanges and ATSSs. The commenter noted that all trading requirements of ATSSs, whether in policies, subscriber agreements, or otherwise, should be publicly available.</p>	<p><i>As we indicated in section 10.1 of NI 21-101, a marketplace, ATS or exchange, should publicly disclose on its website information that is reasonably necessary to enable a person or company to understand the marketplace's operations or services it provides. While we included a description of the information that should be disclosed, we believe that a marketplace should have the flexibility to determine what other information it needs to disclose. To this extent, in subsection 12.1(1) of 21-101CP, we indicated that these are the minimum disclosure requirements, and a marketplace may make other information publicly available if it considers this to be appropriate.</i></p>
	<p>One commenter noted that outsourced marketplace services should be disclosed, whether by an affiliate or third party.</p>	<p><i>We agree with the comment and have changed paragraph 10.1(a) of NI 21-101 to indicate that fees charged by an affiliate or third party to which services have been outsourced or which provides those services should also be disclosed.</i></p>
	<p>One commenter noted that all marketplaces should annually publish corporate governance practices, including disclosure of whether directors are independent.</p>	<p><i>We do not agree with this comment. While exchanges, which have a public interest mandate and carry out certain regulatory functions, are held to higher governance and disclosure standards than ATSSs, disclosure of corporate governance practices, including whether directors are independent, has not been mandated. We acknowledge that an exchange may follow the governance and disclosure practices for public issuers, if applicable, but these are not applicable to all marketplaces. That said, a marketplace may publish its governance practices if it wishes.</i></p>
	<p>One commenter supported the disclosure of a general description of how marketplace routing decisions are made, but not the technical specifications. The commenter noted that the disclosure should apply to third party routers used by a marketplace.</p>	<p><i>We agree with the comment and note that paragraph 10.1(g) of NI 21-101 requires disclosure of how routing decisions are made. This would include third-party routers used by a marketplace. We did not require that the technical specifications be disclosed.</i></p>
<p>11.2 — Other Records (1) As part of the records required to be maintained under section 11.1, a marketplace shall include the following information in electronic form: . . . (c) a record of each order which must include . . .</p>	<p>One commenter noted that proposed clause 11.2(c)(xii) of NI 21-101, which is currently in clause 11.2(c)(xi) of NI 21-101, would require orders to be marked with information (retail, wholesale, employee) that is not currently provided to a marketplace by its participants. The order should identify whether the account is a client, inventory or non-client account.</p>	<p><i>As the commenter noted, this is not a change from current requirements. The order information to be kept by marketplaces is consistent with the information that must be recorded by dealers in accordance with the requirements of NI 23-101. The account number will normally indicate whether the account is for inventory, or a retail or institutional customer.</i></p>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
<p>(xii) whether the account is a retail, wholesale, employee, proprietary or any other type of account ...</p> <p>(xix) whether the marketplace or a marketplace participant has marked the order as a directed-action order, and ...</p> <p>(d) in addition to the record maintained in accordance with paragraph (c), all execution report details of orders, including ...</p> <p>(x) each client identifier assigned to a client accessing the marketplace using direct electronic access.</p>	<p>Two commenters agreed with the requirement to mark directed-action orders (DAO), but did not believe it would provide useful information as marketplaces mark all orders from certain users as DAO based on the users' preference. One commenter suggested changing the marker to reflect the concept of initiator or decision maker rather than where the marking occurs.</p>	<p><i>NI 23-101 currently requires DAOs to be marked (see paragraph 11.2(1)(u) of NI 23-101). The requirement in NI 21-101 is to retain the marker in the record of the order, whether the marker was applied by the originating dealer or by the marketplace.</i></p>
	<p>One commenter thought the requirement to maintain records of DAO orders is duplicative, as both dealers and marketplaces would have to retain the records.</p>	<p><i>Both the marketplace participants and the marketplace must retain the record to show compliance with their respective obligations.</i></p>
	<p>The requirement that the marketplace keep records of whether the marketplace or a marketplace participant has marked the order as a DAO could be determined on an order record sampling basis if required by the regulator. A receiving marketplace cannot know and cannot keep records regarding which orders arrive from a marketplace's SOR versus a commercial SOR versus another order execution or routing platform.</p>	<p><i>Revised clause 11.2(c)(xviii) clarifies that the requirement is that the marketplace keep records of orders it received as DAO and those it sent out as DAO.</i></p>
	<p>One commenter noted that clause 11.2(1)(d)(x) requires that execution report details of orders must include each unique client identifier assigned to a client accessing the marketplace using direct electronic access (DEA). National Instrument 23-103 <i>Electronic Trading and Direct Electronic Access to Marketplaces</i> (NI 23-103) requires participants to advise marketplaces about which of the participant's trader IDs represent DEA clients, but the identity of the DEA client itself does not need to be provided to the marketplaces but rather to IIROC, where the marketplace uses IIROC as a regulation services provider.</p>	<p><i>We confirm that the client identifier can be the marketplace trader ID that is specifically associated with a client accessing the marketplace using direct electronic access. We note that the trading of a direct electronic access client may be associated with more than one client identifier.</i></p>
	<p>The same commenter indicated that the requirement to mark each applicable order as DEA would require systems changes across all marketplaces, vendors and dealer systems to introduce a new tag. The commenter did not believe that NI 23-103 required this level of technological change.</p>	<p><i>We note that the requirement would not result in the introduction of a new tag on orders. It allows the existing practices of some marketplaces to maintain records of client identifiers accessing the marketplace using DEA to continue.</i></p>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
<p>11.3 — Record Preservation Requirements</p> <p>(1) For a period of not less than seven years from the creation of a record referred to in this section, and for the first two years in a readily accessible location, a marketplace shall keep</p> <p>(a) all records required to be made under sections 11.1 and 11.2...</p>	<p>One commenter indicated that the requirement should be reconsidered as the cost of storing data is becoming significant. It is rare to get requests from IIROC for data that isn't recent and RCMP requests usually arrive within four years. Litigants typically are only interested in basic information such as order, trade and dealer information. The same commenter indicated that the requirement to retain details for seven years on whether an order is routed to another marketplace for execution, as well as the date, time and name of the marketplace to which the order is routed, is very onerous. The relevant data will be retained by the marketplace that ultimately receives the order. If the intention is to track compliance with order protection requirements, a much shorter period should suffice.</p>	<p><i>We have reviewed the record retention requirements and do not believe a shortening of the period is advisable at this time.</i></p>
<p>12.1 System Requirements – For each of its systems that support order entry, order routing, execution, trade reporting, trade comparison, data feeds, market surveillance and trade clearing, a marketplace shall...</p> <p>(c) promptly notify the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority and, if applicable, its regulation services provider, of any material systems failure, malfunction or delay.</p>	<p>One commenter indicated that "material system failure" should be defined. The commenter suggested that it would be a system-wide stoppage caused by trading engine failure, not a network error in which a subset of dealers or clients lose connectivity.</p>	<p><i>We do not believe that the definition should be as narrow as suggested. We have clarified the definition in 21-101CP and that, as part of the notification of a material system failure, we expect that the marketplace will provide updates on the status of the failure, its rectification, and the results of the marketplace's own post-mortem.</i></p>
<p>12.2 System Reviews</p> <p>(1) For each of its systems that support order entry, order routing, execution, trade reporting, trade comparison, data feeds, market surveillance and trade clearing, a marketplace shall annually engage a qualified party to conduct an independent systems review and prepare a report in accordance with established audit standards to ensure that it is in compliance with paragraph 12.1 (a) and section 12.4.</p>	<p>Commenters agreed with the proposed amendments. One commenter indicated that the regulators should either not grant exemptions, or should treat exempted marketplaces as non-protected.</p>	<p><i>We believe the regulator needs the ability to grant limited exemptions in appropriate circumstances, such as when a marketplace intends to decommission or make significant changes to a trading system in the near term. If a marketplace suffers a system failure, other marketplaces have a "self-help" remedy from the requirements of the Order Protection Rule.</i></p>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
	<p>One commenter indicated that consideration should be given to how the requirements in NI 21-101 interact with the requirements in exchanges' recognition orders and those under automated review programs.</p>	<p><i>We do not believe that the requirements in NI 21-101 conflict with or are inconsistent with the system requirements applicable to exchanges included in their recognition orders or the automated review programs. The purpose of the proposed amendments is to add guidance regarding the firms or individuals that are qualified to conduct system reviews of marketplaces, and when an exemption from the requirements of subsection 12.2(1) of NI 21-101 may be granted.</i></p>
<p>12.4 — Business Continuity Planning</p> <p>(1) A marketplace must develop and maintain reasonable business continuity plans, including disaster recovery plans.</p> <p>(2) A marketplace must test its business continuity plans, including disaster recovery plans, on a reasonably frequent basis and, in any event, at least annually.</p>	<p>Commenters agreed with the proposed amendments. One commenter indicated that consideration should be given to how the proposed requirements interact with the requirements for business continuity plans in the exchanges' recognition orders and requirements under automated review programs.</p>	<p><i>We note that the proposed requirements related to the maintenance of BCPs are broad, do not conflict with, and are not inconsistent with, the requirements for business continuity plans in the exchanges' recognition orders and under automated review programs. The BCP related requirements in NI 21-101 ensure these requirements apply to all marketplaces. In light of these factors, we do not believe that further changes are needed to either the requirements in NI 21-101 or in the exchanges' recognition orders.</i></p>
<p>14.4 Requirements Applicable to an Information Processor</p> <p>(7) An information processor must file its financial budget within 30 days after the start of a financial year.</p>	<p>Two commenters agreed with the proposal. One commenter, however, indicated that the requirement to file a budget is new and unnecessary given the undertakings of an information processor to maintain financial viability.</p>	<p><i>The applicable securities regulatory authority has a responsibility to assess the financial viability of market participants, including information processors, and their ability to comply with regulatory requirements. The budget is an important input in the oversight process. The regulators cannot simply rely on the information processor complying with the undertakings.</i></p>
21-101CP		
<p>2.1 Marketplace</p> <p>(8) A dealer using a system that brings together multiple buyers and sellers using established, non-discretionary methods to match or pair orders with contra-side orders outside of a marketplace and generates trade execution through the routing of both sides of a match to a marketplace as a cross, would be considered by the Canadian securities</p>	<p>While two commenters agreed with the proposed clarification of the definition of a marketplace, most expressed concerns. They included:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> the need to ensure that there are no unintended consequences; for example, treating dealers like marketplaces would have the unintended consequence of exempting them from best execution requirements, as ATSS are exempt under NI 23-101; the fact that dealers should be able 	<p><i>We acknowledge the concerns raised by market participants and are mindful of the potential unintended consequences of this interpretation of the definition of "marketplace". It was not our intention to exempt dealers from the best execution requirements by considering them marketplaces in certain circumstances.</i></p> <p><i>However, we remain of the view that a dealer using technology to match orders in a non-discretionary fashion may, in fact, be operating a marketplace. For this reason, we have revised 21-101CP</i></p>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
<p>regulatory authorities to be operating a marketplace under paragraph (c) of the definition of “marketplace”.</p>	<p>to create efficiencies in processing orders, but dealers trying to do indirectly what they cannot do directly should be caught by the definition of a marketplace;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> the fact that, with the proposed clarification, virtually all dealers would meet the definition of a marketplace as almost no order flow, retail or institutional, is handled manually; The fact that the focus should not be on requiring dealers to file as marketplaces, but on discouraging internalization; one commenter suggested that the best way to achieve this is by eliminating payment for order flow; The fact that the proposed clarification will stifle a dealer’s ability to innovate, develop and enhance routing and trading products and services for clients; The fact that the use of technology does not change the fundamental role of a dealer from intermediary to marketplace; and That more substantive cost/benefit analysis needs to be done. 	<p><i>to clarify that we expect dealers who intend to operate such a system to notify the regulator to discuss the operation of the system and the appropriate regulatory regime.</i></p>
<p>6.1 — Forms Filed by a Marketplace</p> <p>(3) While initial Forms 21-101F1 and 21-101F2 and amendments thereto are kept confidential, certain Canadian securities regulatory authorities may publish a summary of the information included in the forms filed by a marketplace, or information related to significant changes to the forms of a marketplace, where the Canadian securities regulatory authorities are of the view that a certain degree of transparency for certain aspects of a marketplace would allow investors and industry participants to be better informed as to how securities trade on a marketplace.</p>	<p>One commenter noted that the securities regulatory authorities need to consult with marketplaces and have a clear process before publishing any summary information from confidential filings.</p>	<p><i>We agree that the marketplaces should be consulted before publishing summary information from confidential filings. In Ontario, the information published and the process for publication is currently outlined in OSC Staff Notice 21-703 Transparency of Operations of Stock Exchanges and Alternative Trading System. OSC staff are currently updating the processes for review of information in Forms 21-101F1 and 21-101F2, including the process for publication of this information.</i></p>
<p>7.1 — Access Requirements</p> <p>(4) Marketplaces that send indications of interest to a selected smart order router should consider the extent to which such information should be sent</p>	<p>One commenter indicated that the proposed guidance that stated that a marketplace should “consider” whether to send IOI information to other SORs is not sufficient and does not promote market integrity through fair access.</p>	<p><i>We agree with the comment and have amended subsection 7.1(4) of 21-101CP to clarify that marketplaces that send indications of interest to a selected smart order router or system should send the information to other smart order routers</i></p>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
to other smart order routers to meet the fair access requirements of the Instrument.	The commenter was of the view that, if a marketplace sends any information to an SOR, it should be available to all SORs so that no investors are subject to discrimination based on the marketplace on which they are trading.	<i>or systems to meet the fair access requirements in NI 21-101.</i>
	Another commenter noted that it should be clarified that marketplaces need to consider fair access rule when considering whether to give an SOR access to an IOI.	<i>The amendment to 21-101CP referred to above addresses this comment.</i>
NI 23-101 Trading Rules		
6.5 — Locked or Crossed Orders – A marketplace participant or a marketplace that routes or reprices orders shall not intentionally (a) enter on a marketplace a protected order to buy a security at a price that is the same as or higher than the best protected offer; or (b) enter on a marketplace a protected order to sell a security at a price that is the same as or lower than the best protected bid.	Two commenters agreed with extending the prohibition to marketplaces that route or reprice orders.	<i>We acknowledge these comments.</i>
	One commenter thought the prohibition should apply to all SORs, not just those operated by marketplaces.	<i>We note that all marketplace participants, including those using SORs that are not operated by marketplaces, are subject to the prohibition on intentionally locking or crossing markets. As a result, if the SOR does not have the necessary functionality to enable it to avoid crossing or locking a market, the marketplace participant would not be able to comply with this provision without checking whether each order entered or repriced would lock or cross the market.</i>
23-101CP		
6.4 – Locked and Crossed Markets (2) Section 6.5 of the Instrument prohibits a marketplace participant or a marketplace that routes or reprices orders from intentionally locking or crossing a market. This would occur, for example, when a marketplace participant enters a locking or crossing order on a particular marketplace or marketplaces to avoid fees charged by a marketplace or to take advantage of rebates offered by a particular marketplace. This could also occur where a marketplace system is programmed to reprice orders without checking to see if the new price would lock the market or where the marketplace routes orders to another marketplace that results in a locked market.	One commenter believed that the guidance in 23-101CP is too broad and would include unintentionally locking or crossing a market. The commenter was of the view that a marketplace or dealer should only be responsible at the time of routing the order and should not be responsible if pegged orders caused the situation because the reference price had changed. The commenter noted that the purpose of imposing a restriction against locked or crossed markets was mainly to prevent those who rely on rebate strategies to ignore other markets in order to post resting orders, but the interpretation in 23-101CP goes beyond this policy purpose.	<i>The purpose of this provision is to require marketplaces repricing orders to consider consolidated market information in arriving at a repricing decision, not simply orders and trades on that marketplace. A lock or cross would be considered intentional if the marketplace disregards orders on another marketplace when making a repricing decision. However, triggered on-stop orders would not be considered to intentionally lock or cross markets, because any lock or cross they may cause would be inadvertent and not caused by a marketplace repricing. We have amended 23-101CP to clarify this.</i>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
Forms 21-101 F1 and 2		
Exhibit B — Ownership	One commenter indicated that all marketplaces should be required to disclose the identity of those with material ownership positions. The commenter noted that this might be covered by the requirement to disclose material conflicts of interest.	<i>As the commenter notes, paragraph 10.1(e) of NI 21-101 requires a marketplace to disclose the policies and procedures to identify and manage any conflicts of interest arising from the operation of the marketplace or the services it provides. In subsection 12.1(4), we clarified our expectation that for conflicts arising from ownership of a marketplace by marketplace participant, the marketplace should include in its marketplace participant agreements a requirement that marketplace participants disclose that ownership to their clients, at least quarterly.</i>
Exhibit C — Organization	One commenter noted that the requirement to list the length of time a position has been held is unnecessary since the start date is given.	<i>We agree and have made the proposed change.</i>
	One commenter noted that the examples given for the type of business in which each partner, officer, governor and member of the board and standing committees is primarily engaged (sales, trading, market making, etc.) assumes dealer-related activities and should be broadened.	<i>We agree and have made the proposed change.</i>
Exhibit D — Affiliates	One commenter agreed that marketplaces should only have to report for affiliates that provide key services or systems.	<i>We acknowledge the comment and have made the proposed change.</i>
Exhibit E — Operation of the Marketplace	One commenter noted that the information to be filed would duplicate the filing requirements for an exchange's rule changes. The commenter thought consideration should be given to harmonizing with the process for rule reviews and requiring rules to be on the marketplace's website.	<i>If a matter is filed as a rule change, a revised Form need not be filed as well. For greater clarity, we revised the filing instructions under the heading EXHIBITS to clarify that if a filer has otherwise filed the information required pursuant to section 5.5 of NI 21-101, the filer need not file the information again as an amendment to an Exhibit.</i>
Exhibit G — Systems and Contingency Planning	One commenter believed that some of the information to be filed under this Exhibit is duplicative of independent system reviews and automated review programs.	<i>The information required in the Form will not be required to be refiled under the automated review program.</i>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
	One commenter requested clarification that the requirement is to disclose processes and procedures regarding current and future capacity estimates. As the actual estimates can change in real time, it would be unreasonable to require reporting of changes to estimates.	<i>We have changed the filing requirement for non-significant changes, and the related information would generally have to be filed by the 10th business day after the end of the month in which the change was made.</i>
Exhibit I — Securities	One commenter inquired about the differences between the information to be filed in this Exhibit and that required on Form 21-101 F3.	<i>Exhibit I is a list of the types of securities listed on or eligible to trade on the marketplace. Form 21-101 F3 asks for information about trading and would not necessarily capture all eligible securities.</i>
Exhibit J — Access to Services	One commenter noted that some of the information requested (e.g. criteria for participation) is already in an exchange's rulebook.	<i>As indicated in the response to the comment on Exhibit E, where information is already included in an exchange's rulebook, it would not have to be refiled as an amendment to an Exhibit.</i>
Exhibit K — Marketplace Participants	Section 3 of Exhibit K [which requires filing of a description of the trading activities primarily engaged in by a marketplace participant] asks for information that an exchange does not collect. This information should be obtained from IIROC, and consideration should be given to requiring ATs to disclose this information for subscribers that are not IIROC members.	<i>We agree that the marketplace may not necessarily know the activities of each individual trader, but it is our expectation that marketplaces should be aware of the trading activities engaged by firms that are marketplace participants. We have amended item K3 accordingly.</i>
Exhibit L — Fees	One commenter agreed that fees charged by third parties performing exchange services should be included.	<i>We acknowledge this comment.</i>
Form 21-101 F3		
A — General Marketplace Information	Items A(6) and (7) require filing of information that was previously filed. It would be costly to comply and would provide no benefit.	<i>We have asked for this information to be able to track and, if necessary, follow up on changes previously filed but not implemented. We only require a brief description of the information previously filed and do not believe that this is an onerous requirement.</i>
B — Marketplace Activity Information	A number of commenters indicated that obtaining the data on a consolidated basis from IIROC rather than from each marketplace would be more efficient and would ensure consistency and flexibility, with custom reporting from STEP.	<i>We believe that it is appropriately a marketplace's responsibility to maintain information and be able to produce these reports. Marketplaces can contract with IIROC to provide the information on their behalf, should IIROC agree to provide this service.</i>
	Different marketplaces may interpret the requirements differently, meaning the data won't be comparable.	<i>Our reviews of the forms filed by the marketplaces would help detect inconsistencies and different interpretations of the filing requirements by the marketplaces. We will work with the marketplaces and give necessary</i>

Text of Proposed Amendments	Summary of Comments	CSA response and additional CSA commentary
		<i>guidance to ensure the reporting requirements are understood and the materials filed are comparable across marketplaces.</i>
	This information is highly sensitive and must be kept confidential by the CSA.	<i>As indicated in subsection 16.2(3) of 21-101CP, all information on any of the forms is confidential.</i>
	Items B1(7) and B4(6) ask for information that the marketplace does not necessarily have. Vendors, as well as participants, contract for co-location, and the market does not know the vendor's client base.	<i>We are of the view that co-location is a core marketplace service, and it is our expectation that a marketplace knows the entities that have been offered co-location, whether this was done by the marketplace or by a vendor.</i>
D — Derivatives Marketplaces in Quebec	One commenter noted that the filing requirements should apply to any marketplace trading equity options, otherwise the Bourse de Montreal is at a disadvantage. The same commenter noted that referring to "derivative markets in Quebec" is confusing.	<i>The definition of "security" in Quebec for the purposes of this rule includes standardized derivatives as defined in the Derivatives Act (Quebec) and is broader than in the other jurisdictions. Other sections of the form require all marketplaces to provide information about trading in certain derivatives (e.g. options).</i>
	One commenter indicated that it would be simpler and clearer to report volume, number of trades and open interest by product rather than under general rubrics such as Interest Rate — Short Term.	<i>We agree and have made the suggested changes.</i>
	The same commenter made a number of suggestions for revisions to the forms.	<p><i>We acknowledge the comments and have made further revisions to the form. As noted in Form 21-101F3, the required information might not be applicable to some marketplaces at this time.</i></p> <p><i>We have made a change to Chart 17 to require marketplaces to report information regarding the most actively-traded contracts that, in aggregate, constitute at least 75% of the total volume for each product. This information would provide the regulators with an overview of the overall trading activity. We do not agree with the suggestion that only information regarding the three contracts with the closest expiry dates should be provided.</i></p> <p><i>We have also amended Chart 18 and will now require that, for products other than options on Exchange-Traded Funds and equity options, marketplaces should report the trading activity of the marketplace participants for at least 75% of the activity.</i></p>

AMENDMENTS TO NATIONAL INSTRUMENT 21-101 MARKETPLACE OPERATION

1. ***National Instrument 21-101 Marketplace Operation is amended by this Instrument.***

2. ***Part 1 is amended by***

(a) ***adding the following definitions in section 1.1:***

“accounting principles” means accounting principles as defined in National Instrument 52-107 *Acceptable Accounting Principles and Auditing Standards*;

“private enterprise” means a private enterprise as defined in Part 3 of National Instrument 52-107 *Acceptable Accounting Principles and Auditing Standards*;

“publicly accountable enterprise” means a publicly accountable enterprise as defined in Part 3 of National Instrument 52-107 *Acceptable Accounting Principles and Auditing Standards*;;

(b) ***replacing the definition of “alternative trading system” in section 1.1 with the following:***

“alternative trading system”,

(a) in every jurisdiction other than Ontario, means a marketplace that

(i) is not a recognized quotation and trade reporting system or a recognized exchange, and

(ii) does not

(A) require an issuer to enter into an agreement to have its securities traded on the marketplace,

(B) provide, directly, or through one or more subscribers, a guarantee of a two-sided market for a security on a continuous or reasonably continuous basis,

(C) set requirements governing the conduct of subscribers, other than conduct in respect of the trading by those subscribers on the marketplace, and

(D) discipline subscribers other than by exclusion from participation in the marketplace, and

(b) in Ontario has the meaning set out in subsection 1(1) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario);;

(c) ***adding “or municipal body” after “municipal corporation” in paragraph (b) of the definition of “government debt security” in section 1.1;***

(d) ***replacing paragraph (c) of the definition of “government debt security” in section 1.1 with the following:***

(c) a debt security issued or guaranteed by a crown corporation or public body,;

(e) ***replacing the definition of “marketplace” in section 1.1 with the following:***

“marketplace”,

(a) in every jurisdiction other than Ontario, means

(i) an exchange,

(ii) a quotation and trade reporting system,

- (iii) a person or company not included in clause (i) or (ii) that
 - (A) constitutes, maintains or provides a market or facility for bringing together buyers and sellers of securities,
 - (B) brings together the orders for securities of multiple buyers and sellers, and
 - (C) uses established, non-discretionary methods under which the orders interact with each other, and the buyers and sellers entering the orders agree to the terms of a trade, or
 - (iv) a dealer that executes a trade of an exchange-traded security outside of a marketplace, but does not include an inter-dealer bond broker; and
- (b) in Ontario has the meaning set out in subsection 1(1) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario);;
- (f) **replacing paragraph (a) of the definition of “recognized exchange” in section 1.1 with the following:**
 - (a) in Ontario, a recognized exchange as defined in subsection 1(1) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario);;
- (g) **replacing the definition of “recognized quotation and trade reporting system” in section 1.1 with the following:**

“recognized quotation and trade reporting system” means

 - (a) in every jurisdiction other than British Columbia, Ontario and Québec, a quotation and trade reporting system recognized by the securities regulatory authority under securities legislation to carry on business as a quotation and trade reporting system,
 - (b) in British Columbia, a quotation and trade reporting system recognized by the securities regulatory authority under securities legislation as a quotation and trade reporting system or as an exchange,
 - (b.1) in Ontario, a recognized quotation and trade reporting system as defined in subsection 1(1) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), and
 - (c) in Québec, a quotation and trade reporting system recognized by the securities regulatory authority under securities or derivatives legislation as an exchange or a self-regulatory organization;; **and**
- (h) **adding the following:**

1.5 Interpretation – NI 23-101 – Terms defined or interpreted in NI 23-101 and used in this Instrument have the respective meanings ascribed to them in NI 23-101..

3. Part 3 is replaced with the following:

PART 3 MARKETPLACE INFORMATION

3.1 Initial Filing of Information

- (1) A person or company must file as part of its application for recognition as an exchange or a quotation and trade reporting system Form 21-101F1.
- (2) A person or company must not carry on business as an ATS unless it has filed Form 21-101F2 at least 45 days before the ATS begins to carry on business as an ATS.

3.2 Change in Information

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), a marketplace must not implement a significant change to a matter set out in Form 21-101F1 or in Form 21-101F2 unless the marketplace has filed an amendment to the information provided in

Form 21-101F1 or in Form 21-101F2 in the manner set out in the Form at least 45 days before implementing the change.

- (2) A marketplace must file an amendment to the information provided in Exhibit L – Fees of Form 21-101F1 or Exhibit L – Fees of Form 21-101F2, as applicable, at least seven business days before implementing a change to the information provided in Exhibit L – Fees.
- (3) For any change involving a matter set out in Form 21-101 F1 or Form 21-101F2 other than a change referred to in subsection (1) or (2), a marketplace must file an amendment to the information provided in the Form by the earlier of
 - (a) the close of business on the 10th day after the end of the month in which the change was made, and
 - (b) if applicable, the time the marketplace discloses the change publicly.

3.3 Reporting Requirements

A marketplace must file Form 21-101F3 within 30 days after the end of each calendar quarter during any part of which the marketplace has carried on business.

3.4 Ceasing to Carry on Business as an ATS

- (1) An ATS that intends to cease carrying on business as an ATS must file a report on Form 21-101F4 at least 30 days before ceasing to carry on that business.
- (2) An ATS that involuntarily ceases to carry on business as an ATS must file a report on Form 21-101F4 as soon as practicable after it ceases to carry on that business.

3.5 Forms Filed in Electronic Form

A person or company that is required to file a form or exhibit under this Instrument must file that form or exhibit in electronic form..

4. *Part 4 is replaced with the following:*

PART 4 MARKETPLACE FILING OF AUDITED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

4.1 Filing of Initial Audited Financial Statements

- (1) A person or company must file as part of its application for recognition as an exchange or a quotation and trade reporting system, together with Form 21-101F1, audited financial statements for its latest financial year that
 - (a) are prepared in accordance with Canadian GAAP applicable to publicly accountable enterprises or IFRS,
 - (b) include notes to the financial statements that identify the accounting principles used to prepare the financial statements, and
 - (c) are audited in accordance with Canadian GAAS or International Standards on Auditing and are accompanied by an auditor's report.
- (2) A person or company must not carry on business as an ATS unless it has filed, together with Form 21-101F2, audited financial statements for its latest financial year.

4.2 Filing of Annual Audited Financial Statements

- (1) A recognized exchange and a recognized quotation and trade reporting system must file annual audited financial statements within 90 days after the end of its financial year in accordance with the requirements outlined in subsection 4.1(1).
- (2) An ATS must file annual audited financial statements..

5. Part 5 is amended by

- (a) **replacing the portion before section 5.2 with the following:**

PART 5 MARKETPLACE REQUIREMENTS**5.1 Access Requirements**

- (1) A marketplace must not unreasonably prohibit, condition or limit access by a person or company to services offered by it.
- (2) A marketplace must
- (a) establish written standards for granting access to each of its services; and
 - (b) keep records of
 - (i) each grant of access including the reasons for granting access to an applicant, and
 - (ii) each denial or limitation of access, including the reasons for denying or limiting access to an applicant.
- (3) A marketplace must not
- (a) permit unreasonable discrimination among clients, issuers and marketplace participants; or
 - (b) impose any burden on competition that is not reasonably necessary and appropriate.;
- (b) **replacing** “recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system” **in section 5.2 with** “marketplace”;
- (c) **replacing** “member or user” **in section 5.2 with** “marketplace participant”;
- (d) **repealing subsection 5.3(2);**
- (e) **repealing section 5.6; and**
- (f) **adding the following:**

5.7 Fair and Orderly Markets

A marketplace must take all reasonable steps to ensure that its operations do not interfere with fair and orderly markets.

5.8 Discriminatory Terms

A marketplace must not impose terms that have the effect of discriminating between orders that are routed to the marketplace and orders that are entered on that marketplace for execution.

5.9 Risk Disclosure for Trades in Foreign Exchange-Traded Securities

- (1) A marketplace that is trading foreign exchange-traded securities must provide each marketplace participant with disclosure in substantially the following words:
- “The securities traded by or through the marketplace are not listed on an exchange in Canada and may not be securities of a reporting issuer in Canada. As a result, there is no assurance that information concerning the issuer is available or, if the information is available, that it meets Canadian disclosure requirements.”
- (2) Before the first order for a foreign exchange-traded security is entered onto the marketplace by a marketplace participant, the marketplace must obtain an acknowledgement from the marketplace participant that the marketplace participant has received the disclosure required in subsection (1).

5.10 Confidential Treatment of Trading Information

- (1) A marketplace must not release a marketplace participant's order or trade information to a person or company other than the marketplace participant, a securities regulatory authority or a regulation services provider unless
 - (a) the marketplace participant has consented in writing to the release of the information;
 - (b) the release of the information is required by this Instrument or under applicable law; or
 - (c) the information has been publicly disclosed by another person or company, and the disclosure was lawful.
- (2) A marketplace must not carry on business unless it has implemented reasonable safeguards and procedures to protect a marketplace participant's order or trade information, including
 - (a) limiting access to order or trade information of marketplace participants to
 - (i) employees of the marketplace, or
 - (ii) persons or companies retained by the marketplace to operate the system or to be responsible for compliance by the marketplace with securities legislation; and
 - (b) implementing standards controlling trading by employees of the marketplace for their own accounts.
- (3) A marketplace must not carry on business as a marketplace unless it has implemented adequate oversight procedures to ensure that the safeguards and procedures established under subsection (2) are followed.

5.11 Management of Conflicts of Interest

A marketplace must establish, maintain and ensure compliance with policies and procedures that identify and manage any conflicts of interest arising from the operation of the marketplace or the services it provides.

5.12 Outsourcing

If a marketplace outsources any of its key services or systems to a service provider, which includes affiliates or associates of the marketplace, the marketplace must:

- (a) establish and maintain policies and procedures for the selection of service providers to which key services and systems may be outsourced and for the evaluation and approval of such outsourcing arrangements,
- (b) identify any conflicts of interest between the marketplace and the service provider to which key services and systems are outsourced, and establish and maintain policies and procedures to mitigate and manage such conflicts of interest,
- (c) enter into a contract with the service provider to which key services and systems are outsourced that is appropriate for the materiality and nature of the outsourced activities and that provides for adequate termination procedures,
- (d) maintain access to the books and records of the service providers relating to the outsourced activities,
- (e) ensure that the securities regulatory authorities have access to all data, information and systems maintained by the service provider on behalf of the marketplace, for the purposes of determining the marketplace's compliance with securities legislation,
- (f) take appropriate measures to determine that service providers to which key services or systems are outsourced establish, maintain and periodically test an appropriate business continuity plan, including a disaster recovery plan,

- (g) take appropriate measures to ensure that the service providers protect the marketplace participants' proprietary, order, trade or any other confidential information, and
- (h) establish processes and procedures to regularly review the performance of the service provider under any such outsourcing arrangement..

7. Part 6 is amended by

(a) **repealing sections 6.4 to 6.6;**

(b) **replacing section 6.7 with the following:**

6.7 Notification of Threshold

- (1) An ATS must notify the securities regulatory authority in writing if,
 - (a) during at least two of the preceding three months of operation, the total dollar value of the trading volume on the ATS for a month in any type of security is equal to or greater than 10 percent of the total dollar value of the trading volume for the month in that type of security on all marketplaces in Canada;
 - (b) during at least two of the preceding three months of operation, the total trading volume on the ATS for a month in any type of security is equal to or greater than 10 percent of the total trading volume for the month in that type of security on all marketplaces in Canada; or
 - (c) during at least two of the preceding three months of operation, the number of trades on the ATS for a month in any type of security is equal to or greater than 10 percent of the number of trades for the month in that type of security on all marketplaces in Canada.
- (2) An ATS must provide the notice referred to in subsection (1) within 30 days after the threshold referred to in subsection (1) is met or exceeded.; **and**

(c) **repealing sections 6.8, 6.10, 6.12 and 6.13.**

8. Part 7 is amended by

- (a) **replacing “displayed on” with “displayed by” in subsection 7.1(1);**
- (b) **replacing “of the marketplace” with “of the marketplace and if the orders posted on the marketplace meet the size threshold set by a regulation services provider” in subsection 7.1(2);**
- (c) **replacing “displayed on” with “displayed by” in subsection 7.3(1);**
- (d) **replacing “of the marketplace” with “of the marketplace and if the orders posted on the marketplace meet the size threshold set by a regulation services provider” in subsection 7.3(2); and**
- (e) **replacing “A marketplace” with “A marketplace that is subject to this Part” in section 7.6.**

9. Part 8 is amended by

- (a) **replacing “displayed on” with “displayed by” in subsection 8.1(1);**
- (b) **replacing “displayed on” with “displayed by” in subsection 8.2(1);**
- (c) **repealing section 8.5; and**
- (d) **replacing “2012” with “2015” in section 8.6.**

10. Part 10 is amended by

- (a) **replacing the portion before section 10.3 with the following:**

PART 10 TRANSPARENCY OF MARKETPLACE OPERATIONS

10.1 Disclosure by Marketplaces

A marketplace must publicly disclose on its website information reasonably necessary to enable a person or company to understand the marketplace's operations or services it provides, including but not limited to information related to:

- (a) all fees, including any listing, trading, data, co-location and routing fees charged by the marketplace, an affiliate or by a party to which services have directly or indirectly been outsourced or which directly or indirectly provides those services;
- (b) how orders are entered, interact and execute;
- (c) all order types;
- (d) access requirements;
- (e) the policies and procedures that identify and manage any conflicts of interest arising from the operation of the marketplace or the services it provides;
- (f) any referral arrangements between the marketplace and service providers;
- (g) where routing is offered, how routing decisions are made; and
- (h) when indications of interest are disseminated, the information disseminated and the types of recipients of such indications of interest.; **and**

(b) *repealing section 10.3.*

11. **Part 11 is amended by**

(a) *replacing paragraph 11.2(1)(c) with the following:*

- (c) a record of each order which must include
 - (i) the order identifier assigned to the order by the marketplace,
 - (ii) the marketplace participant identifier assigned to the marketplace participant transmitting the order,
 - (iii) the identifier assigned to the marketplace where the order is received or originated,
 - (iv) each unique client identifier assigned to a client accessing the marketplace using direct electronic access,
 - (v) the type, issuer, class, series and symbol of the security,
 - (vi) the number of securities to which the order applies,
 - (vii) the strike date and strike price, if applicable,
 - (viii) whether the order is a buy or sell order,
 - (ix) whether the order is a short sale order, if applicable,
 - (x) whether the order is a market order, limit order or other type of order, and if the order is not a market order, the price at which the order is to trade,
 - (xi) the date and time the order is first originated or received by the marketplace,
 - (xii) whether the account is a retail, wholesale, employee, proprietary or any other type of account,

- (xiii) the date and time the order expires,
 - (xiv) whether the order is an intentional cross,
 - (xv) whether the order is a jitney and if so, the identifier of the underlying broker,
 - (xvi) the currency of the order,
 - (xvii) whether the order is routed to another marketplace for execution, and the date, time and name of the marketplace to which the order was routed, and
 - (xviii) whether the order is a directed-action order, and whether the marketplace marked the order as a directed-action order or received the order marked as a directed-action order, and;
- (b) replacing subparagraph 11.2(1)(d)(ix) with the following:**
- (ix) the marketplace trading fee for each trade, and
 - (x) each unique client identifier assigned to a client accessing the marketplace using direct electronic access.
- (c) deleting “or 6.13” in subparagraph 11.3(1)(b);**
- (d) replacing “section 12.1” with “sections 12.1 and 12.4” in subparagraph 11.3(1)(c);**
- (e) replacing “6.10(2)” with “5.9(2)” in subparagraph 11.3(1)(e);**
- (f) replacing subparagraphs 11.3(2)(b) to (d) with the following:**
- (b) copies of all forms filed under Part 3; and
 - (c) in the case of an ATS, copies of all notices given under section 6.7.;
- (g) repealing section 11.4; and**
- (h) deleting “with the clock used by a regulation services provider monitoring the activities of marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers or dealers trading those securities” in subsection 11.5(2).**

12. Part 12 is amended by

- (a) replacing the title with “PART 12 MARKETPLACE SYSTEMS AND BUSINESS CONTINUITY PLANNING”;**
- (b) replacing paragraph 12.1(a) with the following:**
- (a) develop and maintain
 - (i) an adequate system of internal control over those systems; and
 - (ii) adequate information technology general controls, including without limitation, controls relating to information systems operations, information security, change management, problem management, network support and system software support;;
- (c) replacing paragraph 12.1(b) with the following:**
- (b) in accordance with prudent business practice, on a reasonably frequent basis and, in any event, at least annually,
 - (i) make reasonable current and future capacity estimates;
 - (ii) conduct capacity stress tests to determine the ability of those systems to process transactions in an accurate, timely and efficient manner; and;
- (d) replacing “paragraph 12.1(a)” with “paragraph 12.1(a) and section 12.4” in subsection 12.2(1);**

(e) **replacing “Subsections” with “Paragraphs” in subsection 12.3(4); and**

(f) **adding the following:**

12.4 Business Continuity Planning

- (1) A marketplace must develop and maintain reasonable business continuity plans, including disaster recovery plans.
- (2) A marketplace must test its business continuity plans, including disaster recovery plans, on a reasonably frequent basis and, in any event, at least annually..

13. Part 13 is amended by

- (a) **replacing the title with “PART 13 CLEARING AND SETTLEMENT”;**
- (b) **replacing “through an ATS” with “on a marketplace” in subsection 13.1(1); and**
- (c) **replacing “reported” with “reported to” in subsection 13.1(1).**

14. Part 14 is amended by

- (a) **repealing subsection 14.1(2);**
- (b) **adding the following after subsection 14.4(5):**
 - (6) An information processor must file annual audited financial statements within 90 days after the end of its financial year that
 - (a) are prepared in accordance with Canadian GAAP applicable to publicly accountable enterprises, Canadian GAAP applicable to private enterprises or IFRS,
 - (b) include notes to the financial statements that identify the accounting principles used to prepare the financial statements, and
 - (c) are audited in accordance with Canadian GAAS or International Standards on Auditing and are accompanied by an auditor's report.
 - (7) An information processor must file its financial budget within 30 days after the start of a financial year.
 - (8) An information processor must file, within 30 days after the end of each calendar quarter, the process and criteria for the selection of government debt securities, as applicable, and designated corporate debt securities and the list of government debt securities, as applicable, and designated corporate debt securities.
 - (9) An information processor must file, within 30 days after the end of each calendar year, the process to communicate the designated securities to the marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers and dealers providing the information required by the Instrument, including where the list of designated securities can be found.;
- (c) **replacing paragraph 14.5(a) with the following:**
 - (a) develop and maintain
 - (i) an adequate system of internal controls over its critical systems; and
 - (ii) adequate information technology general controls, including, without limitation, controls relating to information systems operations, information security, change management, problem management, network support, and system software support;;
- (d) **adding “and” at the end of subparagraph 14.5(b)(i);**

- (e) *deleting “and” at the end of subparagraph 14.5(b)(ii);*
- (f) *repealing subparagraph 14.5.(b)(iii);*
- (g) *adding “and section 14.6” after “paragraph (a)” in paragraph 14.5(c); and*
- (h) *adding the following:*

14.6 Business Continuity Planning

- (1) An information processor must develop and maintain reasonable business continuity plans, including disaster recovery plans.
- (2) An information processor must test its business continuity plans, including disaster recovery plans, on a reasonably frequent basis and, in any event, at least annually.

14.7 Confidential Treatment of Trading Information

An information processor must not release order and trade information to a person or company other than the marketplace, inter-dealer bond broker or dealer that provided this information in accordance with this Instrument, or other than a securities regulatory authority, unless:

- (a) the release of that information is required by this Instrument or under applicable law; or
- (b) the information processor received prior approval from the securities regulatory authority.

14.8 Transparency of Operations of an Information Processor

An information processor must publicly disclose on its website information reasonably necessary to enable a person or company to understand the information processor's operations or services it provides including, but not limited to:

- (a) all fees charged by the information processor for the consolidated data;
- (b) a description of the process and criteria for the selection of government debt securities, as applicable, and designated corporate debt securities and the list of government debt securities, as applicable, and designated corporate debt securities;
- (c) access requirements; and
- (d) the policies and procedures to manage conflicts of interest that may arise in the operation of the information processor..

15. ***Form 21-101F1 – Information Statement Exchange or Quotation and Trade Reporting system is replaced with the following:***

FORM 21-101F1 INFORMATION STATEMENT EXCHANGE OR QUOTATION AND TRADE REPORTING SYSTEM

Filer: ☐ EXCHANGE ☐ QUOTATION AND TRADE REPORTING SYSTEM

Type of Filing: ☐ INITIAL ☐ AMENDMENT

1. Full name of exchange or quotation and trade reporting system:
2. Name(s) under which business is conducted, or name of market or facility, if different from item 1:
3. If this filing makes a name change on behalf of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system in respect of the name set out in item 1 or item 2, enter the previous name and the new name:

Previous name:

- New name:
4. Head office
- Address:
- Telephone:
- Facsimile:
5. Mailing address (if different):
6. Other offices
- Address:
- Telephone:
- Facsimile:
7. Website address:
8. Contact employee
- Name and title:
- Telephone number:
- Facsimile:
- E-mail address:
9. Counsel
- Firm name:
- Contact name:
- Telephone number:
- Facsimile:
- E-mail address:
10. Market Regulation is being conducted by:
- ☐ the exchange
- ☐ the quotation and trade reporting system
- ☐ regulation services provider other than the filer (see Exhibit M)

EXHIBITS

File all Exhibits with the Filing. For each Exhibit, include the name of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system, the date of filing of the Exhibit and the date as of which the information is accurate (if different from the date of the filing). If any Exhibit required is inapplicable, a statement to that effect shall be furnished instead of such Exhibit.

Except as provided below, if the filer, recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system files an amendment to the information provided in its Filing and the information relates to an Exhibit filed with the Filing or a subsequent amendment, the filer, recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system, must, in order to comply with subsections 3.2(1), 3.2(2) or 3.2(3) of National Instrument 21-101, provide a description of the

change, the expected date of the implementation of the change, and file a complete and updated Exhibit. The filer must provide a clean and a blacklined version showing changes from the previous filing.

If the filer, recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system has otherwise filed the information required by the previous paragraph pursuant to section 5.5 of National Instrument 21-101, it is not required to file the information again as an amendment to an Exhibit. However, if supplementary material relating to a filed rule is contained in an Exhibit, an amendment to the Exhibit must also be filed.

Exhibit A – Corporate Governance

1. Legal status:
 - ☐ Corporation
 - ☐ Partnership
 - ☐ Sole Proprietorship
 - ☐ Other (specify):
2. Except where the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system is a sole proprietorship, indicate the following:
 1. Date (DD/MM/YYYY) of formation.
 2. Place of formation.
 3. Statute under which exchange or quotation and trade reporting system was organized.
3. Provide a copy of the constating documents (including corporate by-laws), shareholder agreements, partnership agreements and other similar documents, and all subsequent amendments.
4. Provide the policies and procedures to address potential conflicts of interest arising from the operation of the marketplace or the services it provides, including those related to the commercial interest of the marketplace, the interests of its owners and its operators, the responsibilities and sound functioning of the marketplace, and those between the operations of the marketplace and its regulatory responsibilities.

Exhibit B – Ownership

A list of the registered or beneficial holders of securities of, partnership interests in, or other ownership interests in, the exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system. For each of the persons listed in the Exhibit, please provide the following:

1. Name.
2. Principal business or occupation and title.
3. Ownership interest.
4. Nature of the ownership interest, including a description of the type of security, partnership interest or other ownership interest.
5. Whether the person has control (as interpreted in subsection 1.3(2) of National Instrument 21-101 *Marketplace Operation*).

In the case of an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system that is publicly traded, if the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system is a corporation, please only provide a list of each shareholder that directly owns five percent or more of a class of a voting security of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system.

Exhibit C – Organization

1. A list of partners, officers, governors, and members of the board of directors and any standing committees of the board, or persons performing similar functions, who presently hold or have held their offices or positions during the previous year, indicating the following for each:
 1. Name.
 2. Principal business or occupation and title.
 3. Dates of commencement and expiry of present term of office or position.
 4. Type of business in which each is primarily engaged and current employer.
 5. Type of business in which each was primarily engaged in the preceding five years, if different from that set out in item 4.
 6. Whether the person is considered to be an independent director.
2. A list of the committees of the board, including their mandates.

Exhibit D – Affiliates

1. For each affiliated entity of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system provide the name, head office address and describe the principal business of the affiliate.
2. For each affiliated entity of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system
 - (i) to which the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system has outsourced any of its key services or systems affecting the market or facility described in Exhibit E – Operations of the Marketplace, including order entry, trading, execution, routing and data, or
 - (ii) with which the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system has any other material business relationship, including loans, cross-guarantees, etc.,

provide the following information:

1. Name and address of the affiliate.
2. The name and title of the directors and officers, or persons performing similar functions, of the affiliate.
3. A description of the nature and extent of the contractual and other agreements with the exchange and quotation and trade reporting system, and the roles and responsibilities of the affiliate under the arrangement.
4. A copy of each material contract relating to any outsourced functions or other material relationship.
5. Copies of constating documents (including corporate by-laws), shareholder agreements, partnership agreements and other similar documents.
6. For the latest financial year of the affiliated entity, financial statements, which may be unaudited, prepared in accordance with:
 - a. Canadian GAAP applicable to publicly accountable enterprises; or
 - b. Canadian GAAP applicable to private enterprises; or
 - c. IFRS.

Where the affiliated entity is incorporated or organized under the laws of a foreign jurisdiction, such financial statements may also be prepared in accordance with:

- a. U.S. GAAP; or
- b. accounting principles of a designated foreign jurisdiction as defined under National Instrument 52-107 *Acceptable Accounting Principles and Auditing Standards*.

Exhibit E – Operations of the Marketplace

Describe in detail the manner of operation of the market or facility and its associated functions. This should include, but not be limited to, a description of the following:

1. The structure of the market (e.g., call market, auction market, dealer market).
2. Means of access to the market or facility and services, including a description of any co-location arrangements.
3. The hours of operation.
4. A description of the services offered by the marketplace including, but not limited to, order entry, co-location, trading, execution, routing and data.
5. A list of the types of orders offered, including, but not limited to, a description of the features and characteristics of orders.
6. Procedures regarding the entry, display and execution of orders. If indications of interest are used, please describe the information they include and list the types of recipients.
7. Description of how orders interact, including, but not limited to, the priority of execution for all order types.
8. Description of order routing procedures.
9. Description of order and trade reporting procedures.
10. Description of procedures for clearance and settlement of transactions.
11. The safeguards and procedures of the marketplace to protect trading information of marketplace participants.
12. Training provided to participants and a copy of any materials provided both with respect to systems of the marketplace, the requirements of the marketplace, and the rules of the regulation services providers, if applicable.
13. Steps taken to ensure that marketplace participants have knowledge of and comply with the requirements of the marketplace.

The filer must provide all policies, procedures and trading manuals related to the operation of the marketplace and, if applicable, the order router.

Exhibit F – Outsourcing

Where the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system has outsourced the operation of key services or systems affecting the market or facility described in Exhibit E – Operations of the Marketplace to an arms-length third party, including any function associated with the routing, trading, execution, data, clearing and settlement and, if applicable, surveillance, provide the following information:

1. Name and address of person or company to which the function has been outsourced.
2. A description of the nature and extent of the contractual or other agreement with the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system and the roles and responsibilities of the arms-length party under the arrangement.
3. A copy of each material contract relating to any outsourced function.

Exhibit G – Systems and Contingency Planning

For each of the systems that support order entry, order routing, execution, trade reporting, trade comparison, data feed, market surveillance, and trade clearing, describe:

1. Current and future capacity estimates.
2. Procedures for reviewing system capacity.
3. Procedures for reviewing system security.
4. Procedures to conduct stress tests.
5. A description of the filer's business continuity and disaster recovery plans, including any relevant documentation.
6. Procedures to test business continuity and disaster recovery plans.

Exhibit H – Custody of Assets

1. If the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system proposes to hold funds or securities of a marketplace participant on a regular basis, a description of the controls that will be implemented to ensure the safety of the funds or securities.
2. If any other person or company, other than the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system, will hold or safeguard funds or securities of a marketplace participant on a regular basis, provide the name of the person or company and a description of the controls that will be implemented to ensure the safety of the funds or securities.

Exhibit I – Securities

1. List the types of securities listed on the exchange or quoted on the quotation and trade reporting system. If this is an initial filing, list the types of securities the Filer expects to list or quote.
2. List the types of any other securities that are traded on the marketplace or quoted on the quotation and trade reporting system, indicating the exchange(s) on which such securities are listed. If this is an initial filing, list the types of securities the Filer expects to trade.

Exhibit J – Access to Services

1. A complete set of all forms, agreements or other materials pertaining to access to the services of the marketplace described in Exhibit E.4, including trading on the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system.
2. Describe the classes of marketplace participants.
3. Describe the exchange or quotation and trade reporting service's criteria for access to the services of the marketplace.
4. Describe any differences in access to the services offered by the marketplace to different groups or classes of marketplace participants.
5. Describe conditions under which marketplace participants may be subject to suspension or termination with regard to access to the services of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system.
6. Describe any procedures that will be involved in the suspension or termination of a marketplace participant.
7. Describe the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system's arrangements for permitting clients of marketplace participants to have access to the marketplace. Provide a copy of any agreements or documentation relating to these arrangements.

Exhibit K – Marketplace Participants

Provide an alphabetical list of all marketplace participants, including the following information:

1. Name.
2. Date of becoming a marketplace participant.
3. Describe the type of trading activities engaged in by the marketplace participant (e.g., agency trading, proprietary trading, registered trading, market making).
4. The class of participation or other access.
5. Provide a list of all persons or entities that were denied or limited access to the marketplace, indicating for each:
 - (i) whether they were denied or limited access;
 - (ii) the date the marketplace took such action;
 - (iii) the effective date of such action; and
 - (iv) the nature and reason for any denial or limitation of access.

Exhibit L – Fees

A description of the fee model and all fees charged by the marketplace, or by a party to which services have been directly or indirectly outsourced, including, but not limited to, fees relating to connecting to the market or facility, access, data, regulation (if applicable), trading, routing, and co-location, how such fees are set, and any fee rebates or discounts and how the rebates and discounts are set.

Exhibit M – Regulation

Market Regulation is being conducted by:

☐ the exchange or QTRS

1. Provide a description of the regulation performed by the exchange or QTRS, including the structure of the department performing regulation, how the department is funded, policies and procedures in place to ensure confidentiality and the management of conflicts of interest, and policies and procedures relating to conducting an investigation.
2. If more than one entity is performing regulation services for a type of security and the filer is conducting market regulation for itself and its members, provide the contract between the filer and the regulation services provider providing for co-ordinated monitoring and enforcement under section 7.5 of National Instrument 23-101 Trading Rules.

☐ a regulation services provider other than the filer (provide a copy of the contract between the filer and the regulation services provider.)

Exhibit N – Acknowledgement

The form of acknowledgement required by subsection 5.9(2) of National Instrument 21-101.

CERTIFICATE OF EXCHANGE OR QUOTATION AND TRADE REPORTING SYSTEM

The undersigned certifies that the information given in this report is true and correct.

DATED at _____ this _____ day of _____ 20____

(Name of exchange or quotation and trade reporting system)

(Name of director, officer or partner – please type or print)

(Signature of director, officer or partner)

(Official capacity – please type or print)

16. Form 21-101F2 – Initial Operation Report Alternative Trading System is replaced with the following:

**FORM 21-101F2
INITIAL OPERATION REPORT
ALTERNATIVE TRADING SYSTEM**

TYPE OF FILING:

☐ **INITIAL OPERATION REPORT** ☐ **AMENDMENT**

Identification:

1. Full name of alternative trading system:

2. Name(s) under which business is conducted, if different from item 1:

3. If this filing makes a name change on behalf of the alternative trading system in respect of the name set out in Item 1 or Item 2, enter the previous name and the new name.

Previous name:

New name:
4. Head office

Address:

Telephone:

Facsimile:
5. Mailing address (if different):
6. Other offices

Address:

Telephone:

Facsimile:
7. Website address:
8. Contact employee

Name and title:

Telephone number:

Facsimile:

E-mail address:

9. Counsel

Firm name:

Contact name:

Telephone number:

Facsimile:

E-mail address:

10. The ATS is

☐ a member of _____ (name of the recognized self-regulatory entity)

☐ a registered dealer

11. If this is an initial operation report, the date the alternative trading system expects to commence operation:

12. The ATS has contracted with [regulation services provider] to perform market regulation for the ATS and its subscribers.

EXHIBITS

File all Exhibits with the Initial Operation Report. For each Exhibit, include the name of the ATS, the date of filing of the Exhibit and the date as of which the information is accurate (if different from the date of the filing). If any Exhibit required is inapplicable, a statement to that effect shall be furnished instead of such Exhibit.

If the ATS files an amendment to the information provided in its Initial Operation Report and the information relates to an Exhibit filed with the Initial Operation Report or a subsequent amendment, the ATS must, in order to comply with subsection 3.2(1), 3.2(2) or 3.2(3) of National Instrument 21-101, provide a description of the change, the expected date of the implementation of the change, and file a complete and updated Exhibit. The ATS must provide a clean and blacklined version showing changes from the previous filing.

Exhibit A – Corporate Governance

1. Legal status:

☐ Corporation

☐ Partnership

☐ Sole Proprietorship

☐ Other (specify):

2. Except where the ATS is a sole proprietorship, indicate the following:

1. Date (DD/MM/YYYY) of formation.

2. Place of formation.

3. Statute under which the ATS was organized.

3. Provide a copy of the constating documents (including corporate by-laws), shareholder agreements, partnership agreements and other similar documents, and all subsequent amendments.

4. Provide the policies and procedures to address conflicts of interest arising from the operation of the marketplace or the services it provides, including those related to the commercial interest of the marketplace, the interests of its owners and its operators, and the responsibilities and sound functioning of the marketplace.

Exhibit B – Ownership

A list of the registered or beneficial holders of securities of, partnership interests in, or other ownership interests in, the ATS. For each of the persons listed in the Exhibit, please provide the following:

1. Name.
2. Principal business or occupation and title.
3. Ownership interest.
4. Nature of the ownership interest, including a description of the type of security, partnership interest or other ownership interest.
5. Whether the person has control (as interpreted in subsection 1.3(2) of National Instrument 21-101 *Marketplace Operation*).

In the case of an ATS that is publicly traded, if the ATS is a corporation, please only provide a list of each shareholder that directly owns five percent or more of a class of a voting security of the ATS.

Exhibit C – Organization

1. A list of partners, officers, governors, and members of the board of directors and any standing committees of the board, or persons performing similar functions, who presently hold or have held their offices or positions during the previous year, indicating the following for each:
 1. Name.
 2. Principal business or occupation and title.
 3. Dates of commencement and expiry of present term of office or position.
 4. Type of business in which each is primarily engaged and current employer.
 5. Type of business in which each was primarily engaged in the preceding five years, if different from that set out in item 4.
 6. Whether the person is considered to be an independent director.
2. A list of the committees of the board, including their mandates.

Exhibit D – Affiliates

1. For each affiliated entity of the ATS provide the name, head office address and describe the principal business of the affiliate.
2. For each affiliated entity of the ATS
 - (i) to which the ATS has outsourced any of its key services or systems affecting the market or facility described in Exhibit E – Operations of the Marketplace, including order entry, trading, execution, routing and data, or
 - (ii) with which the ATS has any other material business relationship, including loans, cross-guarantees, etc.

provide the following information:

1. Name and address of the affiliate.

2. The name and title of the directors and officers, or persons performing similar functions, of the affiliate.
3. A description of the nature and extent of the contractual and other agreements with the ATS and the roles and responsibilities of the affiliate under the arrangement.
4. A copy of each material contract relating to any outsourced functions or other material relationship.
5. Copies of constating documents (including corporate by-laws), shareholder agreements, partnership agreements and other similar documents.

Exhibit E – Operations of the Marketplace

Describe in detail the manner of operation of the market and its associated functions. This should include, but not be limited to, a description of the following:

1. The structure of the market (e.g., call market, auction market, dealer market).
2. Means of access to the market or facility and services, including a description of any co-location arrangements.
3. The hours of operation.
4. A description of the services offered by the marketplace including, but not limited to, order entry, co-location, trading, execution, routing and data.
5. A list of the types of orders offered, including, but not limited to, a description of the features and characteristics of orders.
6. Procedures regarding the entry, display and execution of orders. If indications of interest are used, please describe the information they include and list the types of recipients.
7. Description of how orders interact, including, but not limited to, the priority of execution for all order types.
8. Description of order routing procedures.
9. Description of order and trade reporting procedures.
10. Description of procedures for clearance and settlement of transactions.
11. The safeguards and procedures of the marketplace to protect trading information of marketplace participants.
12. Training provided to participants and a copy of any materials provided both with respect to systems of the marketplace, the requirements of the marketplace, and the rules of the regulation services providers, if applicable.
13. Steps taken to ensure that marketplace participants have knowledge of and comply with the requirements of the marketplace.

The filer must provide all policies, procedures and trading manuals related to the operation of the marketplace and, if applicable, the order router.

Exhibit F – Outsourcing

Where the ATS has outsourced the operation of key services or systems affecting the market or facility described in Exhibit E – Operations of the Marketplace to an arms-length third party, including any function associated with the routing, trading, execution, clearing and settlement, and co-location, provide the following information:

1. Name and address of person or company to which the function has been outsourced.

2. A description of the nature and extent of the contractual or other agreement with the ATS and the roles and responsibilities of the arms-length party under the arrangement.
3. A copy of each material contract relating to any outsourced function.

Exhibit G – Systems and Contingency Planning

For each of the systems that support order entry, order routing, execution, trade reporting, trade comparison, data feed, market surveillance, and trade clearing, describe:

1. Current and future capacity estimates.
2. Procedures for reviewing system capacity.
3. Procedures for reviewing system security.
4. Procedures to conduct stress tests.
5. A description of the filer's business continuity and disaster recovery plans, including any relevant documentation.
6. Procedures to test business continuity and disaster recovery plans.

Exhibit H – Custody of Assets

1. If the ATS proposes to hold funds or securities of a marketplace participant on a regular basis, a description of the controls that will be implemented to ensure the safety of the funds or securities.
2. If any other person or company, other than the ATS, will hold or safeguard funds or securities of a marketplace participant on a regular basis, provide the name of the person or company and a description of the controls that will be implemented to ensure the safety of the funds or securities.

Exhibit I – Securities

List the types of securities that are traded on the ATS, indicating the exchange(s) on which such securities are listed. If this is an initial filing, the types of securities the ATS expects to trade.

Exhibit J – Access to Services

1. A complete set of all forms, agreements or other materials pertaining to access to the services of the marketplace described in Exhibit E.4, including trading on the ATS.
2. Describe the classes of marketplace participants (i.e. dealer, institution, or retail).
3. Describe the ATS's criteria for access to the services of the marketplace.
4. Describe any differences in access to the services offered by the marketplace to different groups or classes of marketplace participants.
5. Describe conditions under which marketplace participants may be subject to suspension or termination with regard to access to the services of the ATS.
6. Describe any procedures that will be involved in the suspension or termination of a marketplace participant.
7. Describe the ATS's arrangements for permitting clients of marketplace participants to have access to the marketplace. Provide a copy of any agreements or documentation relating to these arrangements.

Exhibit K – Marketplace Participants

Provide an alphabetical list of all marketplace participants, including the following information:

1. Name.

2. Date of becoming a marketplace participant.
3. Describe the type of trading activities primarily engaged in by the marketplace participant (e.g., agency trading, proprietary trading, registered trading, market making).
4. The class of participation or other access.
5. Provide a list of all persons or entities that were denied or limited access to the marketplace, indicating for each:
 - (i) whether they were denied or limited access;
 - (ii) the date the marketplace took such action;
 - (iii) the effective date of such action; and
 - (iv) the nature and reason for any denial or limitation of access.

Exhibit L – Fees

A description of the fee model and all fees charged by the marketplace, or by a party to which services have been directly or indirectly outsourced, including, but not limited to, fees relating to connecting to the market or facility, access, data, regulation (if applicable), trading, routing, and co-location, how such fees are set and any fee rebates or discounts and how the rebates and discounts are set.

Exhibit M – Regulation

The ATS has contracted with regulation services provider _____ to perform market regulation for ATS and its subscribers. Provide a copy of the contract between the filer and the regulation services provider.

Exhibit N – Acknowledgement

The form of acknowledgement required by subsections 5.9(2) and 6.11(2) of National Instrument 21-101.

CERTIFICATE OF ALTERNATIVE TRADING SYSTEM

The undersigned certifies that the information given in this report is true and correct.

DATED at _____ this _____ day of _____ 20____

(Name of alternative trading system)

(Name of director, officer or partner – please type or print)

(Signature of director, officer or partner)

(Official capacity – please type or print).

17. **Form 21-101F3 Quarterly Report of Alternative Trading System Activities is replaced with the following:**

**FORM 21-101F3
QUARTERLY REPORT OF MARKETPLACE ACTIVITIES**

A. General Marketplace Information

1. Marketplace Name:

2. Period covered by this report:
3. Identification
 - A. Full name of marketplace (if sole proprietor, last, first and middle name):
 - B. Name(s) under which business is conducted, if different from item A:
 - C. Marketplace main street address:
4. Attach as **Exhibit A** a current list of all marketplace participants at the end of the period covered by this report, identifying those marketplace participants that are using the marketplace's co-location services, if any. For each marketplace participant, indicate the number of trader IDs that may access the marketplace.
5. Attach as **Exhibit B** a list of all marketplace participants granted, denied or limited access to the marketplace during the period covered by this report, indicating for each marketplace participant: (a) whether they were granted, denied or limited access; (b) the date the marketplace took such action; (c) the effective date of such action; and (d) the nature of any denial or limitation of access.
6. A list of all amendments in the information in Form 21-101F1 or 21-101F2 that were filed with the Canadian securities regulatory authorities and implemented during the period covered by the report. The list must include a brief description of each amendment, the date filed and the date implemented.
7. A list of all amendments in the information in Form 21-101F1 or 21-101F2 that have been filed with the Canadian securities regulatory authorities but not implemented as of the end of the period covered by the report. The list must include a brief description of each amendment, the date filed and the reason why it was not implemented.
8. Systems – If any outages occurred at any time during the period for any system relating to trading activity, including trading, routing or data, provide the date, duration and reason for the outage.

B. Marketplace Activity Information

Section 1 – Marketplaces Trading Exchange-Listed Securities

1. **General trading activity** – For each type of security traded on the marketplace, provide the details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 1**. The information should be provided for transactions executed at the opening of the market, during regular trading hours, and after hours during the quarter. Enter "None", "N/A", or "0" where appropriate.

Chart 1 – General trading activity for marketplaces trading exchange-listed securities

Category of Securities	Volume		Value		Number of Trades	
	Transparent	Non-transparent	Transparent	Non-transparent	Transparent	Non-transparent
Exchange-Traded Securities						
1. Equity (includes preferred shares)						
2. Exchange-traded funds (ETFs)						
3. Debt securities						
4. Options						

Category of Securities	Volume		Value		Number of Trades	
	Transparent	Non-transparent	Transparent	Non-transparent	Transparent	Non-transparent
Foreign Exchange-Traded Securities						
1. Equity (includes preferred shares)						
2. ETFs						
3. Debt securities						
4. Options						

2. **Crosses** – Provide the details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 2** below for each type of cross executed on the marketplace for trades executed at the opening of the market, during regular trading and after hours during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 2 – Crosses

Types of Crosses	% Volume	% Value	% Number of Trades
% of exchange-traded securities that are			
1. Intentional Crosses ¹			
2. Internal crosses			
3. Other crosses			

3. **Order information** – Provide the details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 3** below for each type of order in exchange traded securities executed on the marketplace for orders entered at the opening of the market, during regular trading and after hours during the quarter. Enter “none”, “N/A” or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 3 – Order information

Types of Orders	Number of Orders	% Orders Executed	% Orders Cancelled ²
1. Anonymous ³			
2. Fully transparent			
3. Pegged Orders			
4. Fully hidden			
5. Separate dark facility of a transparent market			
6. Partially hidden (reserve)			

¹ See definition of an Internal and Intentional Cross in Section 1.1 of the Universal Market Integrity Rules.

² By cancellations, we mean “pure” cancellations, i.e. cancellations that do not result in a new and amended order.

³ Orders executed under ID 001.

7. Total number of orders entered during the quarter			
--	--	--	--

4. **Trading by security** – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 4** below for the 10 most traded securities on the marketplace (based on the volume of securities traded) for trades executed at the opening of the market, during regular trading and after hours during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 4 – Most traded securities

Category of Securities	Volume	Value	Number of Trades
Exchange-Traded Securities			
1. Equity (includes preferred shares) [Name of Securities] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			
2. ETFs [Name of Securities] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			
3. Debt [Enter issuer, maturity and coupon] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			

Category of Securities	Volume	Value	Number of Trades
Foreign Exchange-Traded Securities			
1. Equity (includes preferred shares) [Name of Securities] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			
2. ETFs [Name of Securities] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			
3. Debt [Name of Securities] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			

5. **Trading by marketplace participant** – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 5** below for the top 10 marketplace participants (based on the volume of securities traded). The information should be provided for the total trading volume, including for trades executed at the opening of the market, during regular trading and after hours during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate. Where a marketplace’s marketplace participants are dealers and non-dealers, the marketplace should complete a separate chart for each.

Chart 5 – Concentration of trading by marketplace participant

Marketplace Participant Name	Total Active Volume	Total Passive Volume
1. 2. 3.		

Marketplace Participant Name	Total Active Volume	Total Passive Volume
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		

6. **Routing activities** – Indicate the percentage of marketplace participants that used marketplace-owned or third-party or affiliated routing services during the reporting period. In addition, provide the information in **Chart 6** below.

Chart 6 – Routing of marketplace orders

Number of orders executed on the reporting marketplace	
Number of orders routed to away marketplaces (list all marketplaces where orders were routed)	
Number of orders that are marked and treated as Directed Action Orders (DAO)	

7. **Co-location** – Indicate the percentage of marketplace participants that are using the marketplace's co-location services, if any.

Section 2 – Fixed Income Marketplaces

1. **General trading activity** – Provide the details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 7** below for each type of fixed income security traded on the marketplace for transactions executed during regular trading hours. Enter "None", "N/A", or "0" where appropriate.

Chart 7 – Fixed income activity

Category of Securities	Value Traded	Number of Trades
Domestic Unlisted Debt Securities – Government		
1. Federal		
2. Federal Agency		
3. Provincial and Municipal		
Domestic Unlisted Debt Securities – Corporate		
Domestic Unlisted Debt Securities – Other		
Foreign Unlisted Debt Securities – Government		
Foreign Unlisted Debt Securities – Corporate		
Foreign Unlisted Debt Securities – Other		

2. **Trading by security** – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 8** below for the 10 most traded fixed income securities on the marketplace (based on the value of the volume traded) for trades executed during regular trading hours during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 8 – Most traded fixed income securities

Category of Securities	Value Traded	Number of Trades
Domestic Unlisted Debt Securities – Government 1. Federal [Enter issuer, maturity, coupon] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
2. Federal Agency [Enter issuer, maturity, coupon] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
3. Provincial and Municipal [Enter issuer, maturity, coupon] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
Domestic Unlisted Debt Securities – Corporate [Enter issuer, maturity, coupon] 1. 2.		

Category of Securities	Value Traded	Number of Trades
3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
Domestic Unlisted Debt Securities – Other [Enter issuer, maturity, coupon] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
Foreign Unlisted Debt Securities – Government [Enter issuer, maturity, coupon] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
Foreign Unlisted Debt Securities – Corporate [Enter issuer, maturity, coupon] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
Foreign Unlisted Debt Securities – Other [Enter issuer, maturity, coupon]		

Category of Securities	Value Traded	Number of Trades
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		

3. **Trading by marketplace participant** – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 9** below for the top 10 marketplace participants for trades executed during regular trading hours during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate. If marketplace participants are dealers and non-dealer institutions, the marketplace should complete a separate chart for each.

Chart 9 – Concentration of trading by marketplace participant

Marketplace Participant Name	Value Traded
1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	
7.	
8.	
9.	
10.	

Section 3 – Securities Lending Marketplaces

1. **General lending activity** – Please provide details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 10** below for each type of securities loaned on the marketplace. Enter “None”, “N/A” or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 10 – Lending activity

Category of Securities	Quantity of Securities Lent During the Quarter	Aggregate Value of Securities Lent During the Quarter
Domestic		
1. Corporate Equity Securities		
1.1. Common Shares		
1.2. Preferred Shares		
2. Non-Corporate Equity Securities (e.g. trust units, partnership units, etc.) (please specify)		
3. Government Debt Securities		
4. Corporate Debt Securities		
5. Other Fixed Income Securities (please specify)		
Foreign		

Category of Securities	Quantity of Securities Lent During the Quarter	Aggregate Value of Securities Lent During the Quarter
1. Corporate Equity Securities		
1.1. Common Shares		
1.2. Preferred Shares		
2. Non-Corporate Equity Securities (e.g. trust units, partnership units, etc.)(please specify)		
3. Government Debt Securities		
4. Corporate Debt Securities		
5. Other Fixed Income Securities (please specify)		

2. **Trading by marketplace participant** – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 11** and **Chart 12** below for the top 10 borrowers and lenders based on their aggregate value of securities borrowed or loaned, respectively, during the quarter.

Chart 11 – Concentration of activity by borrower

Borrower Name	Aggregate Value of Securities Borrowed During the Quarter
1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	
7.	
8.	
9.	
10.	

Chart 12 – Concentration of activity by lender

Lender Name	Aggregate Value of Securities Loaned During the Quarter
1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	
7.	
8.	
9.	
10.	

3. **Lending activity by security** – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 13** below for the 10 most loaned securities on the marketplace (based on the quantity of securities loaned during the quarter). Enter “None”, “N/A” or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 13 – Most loaned securities

Category of Securities	Quantity of Securities Lent During the Quarter	Aggregate Value of Securities Lent During the Quarter
Domestic		
1. Common Shares [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
2. Preferred Shares [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
3. Non-Corporate Equity Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
4. Government Debt Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8.		

Category of Securities	Quantity of Securities Lent During the Quarter	Aggregate Value of Securities Lent During the Quarter
9. 10.		
5. Corporate Debt Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
6. Other Fixed Income Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
Foreign		
1. Common Shares [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
2. Preferred Shares [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7.		

Category of Securities	Quantity of Securities Lent During the Quarter	Aggregate Value of Securities Lent During the Quarter
8. 9. 10.		
3. Non-Corporate Equity Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
4. Government Debt Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
5. Corporate Debt Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
6. Other Fixed Income Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8.		

Category of Securities	Quantity of Securities Lent During the Quarter	Aggregate Value of Securities Lent During the Quarter
9.		
10.		

Section 4 – Derivatives Marketplaces in Quebec

- General trading activity** – For each category of product traded on the marketplace, provide the details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 14** below. For products other than options on ETFs and equity options, provide the details on a product-by-product basis in the appropriate category. Details for options on ETFs and equity options should be provided on an aggregate basis (one total for options on ETFs and one for options on equities). The information should be provided for transactions executed in the early session, during the regular session, and in the extended session during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 14 – General trading activity

Category of Product	Volume	Number of Trades	Open Interest (Number/End of Quarter)
Futures Products			
1(a) Interest rate – short term			
1(b) Interest rate – long term			
2. Index			
3. ETF			
4. Equity			
5. Currency			
6. Energy			
7. Others, please specify			
Options Products			
1(a) Interest rate -short term			
1(b) Interest rate – long term			
2. Index			
3. ETF			
4. Equity			
5. Currency			
6. Energy			
7. Others, please specify			

- Trades resulting from pre-negotiation discussions** – Provide the details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 15** below by product and for each type of trade resulting from pre-negotiation discussions. For products other than options on ETFs and equity options, provide the details on a product-by-product basis in the appropriate category. Details for options on ETFs and equity options should be provided on an aggregate basis (one total for options on ETFs and one for options on equities). The information should

be provided for trades executed in the early session, during the regular session and in the extended session during the quarter. Enter "None", "N/A", or "0" where appropriate.

Chart 15 – Trades resulting from pre-negotiation discussions

Type of Trade	% of Volume	% Number of Trades
Futures Products		
A. Cross		
B. Pre-arranged		
C. Block		
D. Exchange for physical		
E. Exchange for risk		
F. Riskless basis cross		
G. Others, please specify		
Options Products		
A. Cross		
B. Pre-arranged		
C. Block		
D. Others, please specify		

3. **Order information** – Provide the details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 16** below by product and for each type of order in exchange traded contracts executed on the marketplace. For products other than options on ETFs and equity options, provide the details on a product-by-product basis in the appropriate category. Details for options on ETFs and equity options should be provided on an aggregate basis (one total for options on ETFs and one for options on equities). The information should be provided for orders entered in the early session, during the regular session and in the extended session during the quarter. Enter "none", "N/A" or "0" where appropriate.

Chart 16 – Order information

Type of Orders	% Volume	% Number of Trades
1. Anonymous		
2. Fully transparent		
3. Pegged orders		
4. Fully hidden		
5. Separate dark facility of a transparent market		
6. Partially hidden (reserve, for example, iceberg orders)		

4. **Trading by product** – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 17** below. For each product other than options on ETFs and equity options, list the most actively-traded contracts (by volume) on the marketplace that in the aggregate constitute at least 75% of the total volume for each product during the

quarter. The list must include at least 3 contracts. For options on ETFs and equity options, list the 10 most actively traded classes by volume. Details for options on ETFs and equity options should be provided on an aggregate basis (one total for options on ETFs and one for options on equities). The information should be provided for trades executed in the early session, during the regular session and in the extended session during the quarter. Enter "None", "N/A", or "0" where appropriate.

Chart 17 – Most traded contracts

Category of Product	Volume	Number of Trades	Open Interest (Number/End of Quarter)
Futures Products			
1. Name of products – 3 most-traded contracts (or more as applicable) 1. 2. 3.			
Options Products			
2. ETF [Classes] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			
3. Equity [Classes] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			
4. Other listed options (specify for each) – 3 most traded contracts (or more as applicable) 1. 2. 3.			

5. **Concentration of trading by marketplace participant** – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 18** below. For each product other than options on ETFs and equity options, list the top marketplace participants whose aggregate trading (by volume) constituted at least 75% of the total volume traded. The list

must include at least 3 marketplace participants. For options on ETFs and equity options, provide the top 10 most active marketplace participants (by volume). The information should be provided on an aggregate basis (one total for options on ETFs and one for options on equities). The information should be provided for trades executed in the early session, during the regular session and in the extended session during the quarter. Enter "None", "N/A", or "0" where appropriate.

Chart 18 – Concentration of trading by marketplace participant

Product Name	Marketplace Participant Name	Volume
Futures		
Product Name (specify for each)	1. 2. 3. (more if necessary)	
Options		
ETF	1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.	
Equity	1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.	
Other options (specify for each)	1. 2. 3. (more if necessary)	

6. Co-location

Indicate the percentage of marketplace participants that are using the marketplace's co-location services, if any.

C. Certificate of Marketplace

The undersigned certifies that the information given in this report relating to the marketplace is true and correct.

DATED at _____ this _____ day of _____ 20__

(Name of Marketplace)

(Name of director, officer or partner – please type or print)

(Signature of director, officer or partner)

(Official capacity – please type or print)”

18. **Form 21-101F5 Initial Operation Report for Information Processor is replaced with the following:**

**FORM 21-101F5
INITIAL OPERATION REPORT FOR INFORMATION PROCESSOR**

TYPE OF FILING:

☐ **INITIAL FORM**

☐ **AMENDMENT**

GENERAL INFORMATION

1. Full name of information processor:
2. Name(s) under which business is conducted, if different from item 1:
3. If this filing makes a name change on behalf of the information processor in respect of the name set out in item 1 or item 2, enter the previous name and the new name:

Previous name:

New name:
4. Head office

Address:

Telephone:

Facsimile:
5. Mailing address (if different):
6. Other offices

Address:

Telephone:

Facsimile:
7. Website address:
8. Contact employee

Name and title:

Telephone number:

Facsimile:

E-mail address:
9. Counsel

Firm name:

Contact name:

Telephone number:

Facsimile:

E-mail address:

10. List of all marketplaces, dealers or other parties for which the information processor is acting or for which it proposes to act as an information processor. For each marketplace, dealer or other party, provide a description of the function(s) which the information processor performs or proposes to perform.
11. List all types of securities for which information will be collected, processed, distributed or published by the information processor. For each such marketplace, dealer or other party, provide a list of all securities for which information with respect to quotations for, or transactions in, is or is proposed to be collected, processed, distributed or published.

Exhibits

File all Exhibits with the Initial Form. For each Exhibit, include the name of the information processor, the date of filing of the Exhibit and the date as of which the information is accurate (if different from the date of the filing). If any Exhibit required is inapplicable, a statement to that effect shall be furnished instead of such Exhibit.

If the information processor files an amendment to the information provided in its Initial Form, and the information relates to an Exhibit filed with the Initial Form or a subsequent amendment, the information processor must, in order to comply with sections 14.1 and 14.2 of National Instrument 21-101 provide a description of the change, the expected date of the implementation of the change, and file a complete and updated Exhibit. The information processor must provide a clean and a blacklined version showing changes from the previous filing.

Exhibit A – Corporate Governance

1. Legal status:
 - ☐ Corporation
 - ☐ Sole Proprietorship
 - ☐ Partnership
 - ☐ Other (specify):
2. Except where the information processor is a sole proprietorship, indicate the date and place where the information processor obtained its legal status (e.g., place of incorporation, place where partnership agreement was filed or where information processor was formed):
 1. Date (DD/MM/YYYY) of formation.
 2. Place of formation.
 3. Statute under which the information processor was organized.
3. Provide a copy of the constating documents (including corporate by-laws), shareholder agreements, partnership agreements and other similar documents, and all subsequent documents.
4. Provide the policies and procedures which promote independence of the information processor from the marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers and dealers that provide data.
5. Provide the policies and procedures which address the potential conflicts of interest between the interests of the information processor and its owners, partners, directors and officers.

Exhibit B – Ownership

List any person or company who owns 10 percent or more of the information processor's outstanding shares or who, either directly or indirectly, through agreement or otherwise, in any other manner, may control or direct the management or policies of the information processor. Provide the full name and address of each such person and attach a copy of the agreement or, if there is none written, describe the agreement or basis through which such person exercises or may exercise such control or direction.

Exhibit C – Organization

1. A list of the partners, directors, governors, and members of the board of directors and any standing committees of the board or persons performing similar functions who presently hold or have held their offices or positions during the previous year identifying those individuals with overall responsibility for the integrity and timeliness of data reported to and displayed by the system (the "System") of the information processor, indicating the following for each:
 1. Name.
 2. Principal business or occupation and title.
 3. Dates of commencement and expiry of present term of office or position.
 4. Type of business in which each is primarily engaged and current employer.
 5. Type of business in which each was primarily engaged in the preceding five years, if different from that set out in item 4.
 6. Whether the person is considered to be an independent director.
 7. A list of the committees of the board, including their mandates.
 8. A narrative or graphic description of the organizational structure of the information processor.

Exhibit D – Staffing

A description of the personnel qualifications for each category of professional, non-professional and supervisory employee employed by the information processor. Detail whether the personnel are employed by the information processor or a third party, identifying the employees responsible for monitoring the timeliness and integrity of data reported to and displayed by the System.

Exhibit E – Affiliates

For each affiliated entity of the information processor, and for any person or company with whom the information processor has a contractual or other agreement relating to the operations of the information processor, including loans or cross-guarantees, provide the following information:

1. Name and address of person or company.
2. Form of organization (e.g., association, corporation, partnership, etc.).
3. Name of location and statute citation under which organized.
4. Date of incorporation in present form.
5. Description of nature and extent of affiliation and/or contractual or other agreement with the information processor.
6. Description of business or functions of the affiliates.
7. If a person or company has ceased to be an affiliated entity of the information processor during the previous year or ceased to have a contractual or other agreement relating to the operation of the information processor during the previous year, provide a brief statement of the reasons for termination of the relationship.

Exhibit F – Services

A description in narrative form of each service or function performed by the information processor. Include a description of all procedures utilized for the collection, processing, distribution, validation and publication of information with respect to orders and trades in securities.

Exhibit G – System and Operations

1. Describe the manner of operation of the System of the information processor that collects, processes, distributes and publishes information in accordance with National Instruments 21-101 and 23-101. This description should include the following:
 1. The means of access to the System.
 2. Procedures governing entry and display of quotations and orders in the System including data validation processes.
 3. A description of any measures used to verify the timeliness and accuracy of information received and disseminated by the system, including the processes to resolve data integrity issues identified.
 4. The hours of operation of the System.
 5. Description of the training provided to users of the System and any materials provided to the users.
2. Include a list of all computer hardware utilized by the information processor to perform the services or functions listed in Exhibit F, indicating:
 1. Manufacturer, and manufacturer's equipment and identification number.
 2. Whether purchased or leased (if leased, duration of lease and any provisions for purchase or renewal).
 3. Where such equipment (exclusive of terminals and other access devices) is physically located.
3. Provide a description of the measures or procedures implemented by the information processor to provide for the security of any system employed to perform the functions of an information processor. This should include a general description of any physical and operational safeguards designed to prevent unauthorized access to the system.
4. Provide a description of all backup systems which are designed to prevent interruptions in the performance of any information providing functions as a result of technical malfunctions or otherwise in the system itself, in any permitted input or output system connection or as a result of any independent source.
5. Describe the business continuity and disaster recovery plans of the information processor, and provide any relevant documentation.
6. List each type of interruption which has lasted for more than two minutes and has occurred within the six (6) months preceding the date of the filing, including the date of each interruption, the cause and duration. Provide the total number of interruptions which have lasted two minutes or less.
7. Describe the procedures for reviewing system capacity, and indicate current and future capacity estimates.
8. Quantify in appropriate units of measure the limits on the information processor's capacity to receive, collect, process, store or display the data elements included within each function.
9. Identify the factors (mechanical, electronic or other) which account for the current limitations on the capacity to receive, collect, process, store or display the data elements included within each function described in section 8 above.
10. Describe the procedures for conducting stress tests.

Exhibit H – Outsourcing

Where the information processor has outsourced the operation of any aspect of the services listed in Exhibit F to an arms-length third party, including any function related to the collection, consolidation, and dissemination of data, provide the following information:

1. Name and address of person or company to whom the function has been outsourced.
2. A description of the nature and extent of the contractual or other agreement with the information processor, and the roles and responsibilities of the arms-length third party under the arrangement.
3. A copy of each material contract relating to any outsourced function.

Exhibit I – Financial Viability

1. Provide a business plan with pro forma financial statements and estimates of revenue.
2. Discuss the financial viability of the information processor in the context of having sufficient financial resources to properly perform its functions.

Exhibit J – Fees and Revenue Sharing

1. Provide a complete list of all fees and other charges imposed, or to be imposed, by or on behalf of the information processor for its information services. This would include all fees to provide data and fees to receive the data from the information processor.
2. Where arrangements exist to share revenue from the sale of data disseminated by the information processor with marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers and dealers that provide data to the information processor in accordance with National Instrument 21-101, a complete description of the arrangements and the basis for these arrangements.

Exhibit K – Reporting to the Information Processor

1. List all persons and entities that provide data to the information processor in accordance with the requirements of National Instrument 21-101.
2. Provide a complete set of all forms, agreements and other materials pertaining to the provision of data to the information processor.
3. A description of any specifications or criteria required of marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers or dealers who provide securities information to the information processor for collection, processing for distribution or publication. Identify those specifications or criteria which limit, are interpreted to limit or have the effect of limiting access to or use of any services provided by the information processor and state the reasons for imposing such specifications or criteria.
4. For each instance during the past year in which any person or entity has been prohibited or limited to provide data by the information processor, indicate the name of each such person or entity and the reason for the prohibition or limitation.

Exhibit L – Access to the Services of the Information Processor

1. A list of all persons and entities who presently subscribe or who have notified the information processor of their intention to subscribe to the services of the information processor.
2. The form of contract governing the terms by which persons may subscribe to the services of an information processor.
3. A description of any specifications or criteria which limit, are interpreted to limit or have the effect of limiting access to or use of any services provided by the information processor and state the reasons for imposing such specifications or criteria. This applies to limits relating to providing information to the information processor and the limits relating to accessing the consolidated feed distributed by the information processor.

4. For each instance during the past year in which any person has been prohibited or limited in respect of access to services offered by the information processor, indicate the name of each such person and the reason for the prohibition or limitation.

Exhibit M – Selection of Securities for which Information Must Be Reported to the Information Processor

Where the information processor is responsible for making a determination of the data which must be reported, including the securities for which information must be reported in accordance with National Instrument 21-101, describe the manner of selection and communication of these securities. This description should include the following:

1. The criteria used to determine the securities for which information must be reported and the data which must be reported to the information processor.
2. The process for selection of the securities, including a description of the parties consulted in the process and the frequency of the selection process.
3. The process to communicate the securities selected and data to be reported to the marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers and dealers providing the information as required by National Instrument 21-101. The description should include where this information is located.

CERTIFICATE OF INFORMATION PROCESSOR

The undersigned certifies that the information given in this report is true and correct.

DATED at _____ this ____ day of _____ 20 ____

(Name of information processor)

(Name of director, officer or partner – please type or print)

(Signature of director, officer or partner)

(Official capacity – please type or print)".

19. (1) Subject to subsection (2), this Instrument comes into force on July 1, 2012.
- (2) Section 17 of this Instrument comes into force on December 31, 2012.

REPEAL OF OSC RULE 21-501***Deferral of Information Transparency Requirements for Government Debt Securities in National Instrument 21-101 Marketplace Operation***

- 1. Ontario Securities Commission Rule 21-501 Deferral of Information Transparency Requirements for Government Debt Securities in National Instrument 21-101 Marketplace Operation is repealed by this Instrument.***
- 2. This Instrument comes into force on July 1, 2012.***

SCHEDULE

1. ***The changes to Companion Policy 21-101CP to National Instrument 21-101 Marketplace Operation are set out in this Schedule.***

2. ***Part 1 is amended by***

- (a) ***replacing section 1.1 with the following:***

1.1 Introduction – Exchanges, quotation and trade reporting systems and ATSs are marketplaces that provide a market facility or venue on which securities can be traded. The areas of interest from a regulatory perspective are in many ways similar for each of these marketplaces since they may have similar trading activities. The regulatory regime for exchanges and quotation and trade reporting systems arises from the securities legislation of the various jurisdictions. Exchanges and quotation and trade reporting systems are recognized under orders from the Canadian securities regulatory authorities, with various terms and conditions of recognition. ATSs, which are not recognized as exchanges or quotation and trade reporting systems, are regulated under National Instrument 21-101 Marketplace Operation (the Instrument) and National Instrument 23-101 Trading Rules (NI 23-101). The Instruments, which were adopted at a time when new types of markets were emerging, provide the regulatory framework that allows and regulates the operation of multiple marketplaces.

The purpose of this Companion Policy is to state the views of the Canadian securities regulatory authorities on various matters related to the Instrument, including:

- (a) a discussion of the general approach taken by the Canadian securities regulatory authorities in, and the general regulatory purpose for, the Instrument; and
- (b) the interpretation of various terms and provisions in the Instrument.;

- (b) ***replacing section 1.2 with the following:***

1.2 Definition of Exchange-Traded Security – Section 1.1 of the Instrument defines an "exchange-traded security" as a security that is listed on a recognized exchange or is quoted on a recognized quotation and trade reporting system or is listed on an exchange or quoted on a quotation and trade reporting system that is recognized for the purposes of the Instrument and NI 23-101.

If a security trades on a recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system on a "when issued" basis, as defined in IIROC's Universal Market Integrity Rules, the security would be considered to be listed on that recognized exchange or quoted on that recognized quotation and trade reporting system and would therefore be an exchange-traded security.

If no "when issued" market has been posted by a recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system for a security, an ATS may not allow this security to be traded on a "when issued" basis on its marketplace.

A security that is inter-listed would be considered to be an exchange-traded security. A security that is listed on a foreign exchange or quoted on a foreign quotation and trade reporting system, but is not listed or quoted on a domestic exchange or quotation and trade reporting system, falls within the definition of "foreign exchange-traded security".

3. ***Part 2 is amended by***

- (a) ***in subsection 2.1(5) replacing "1." with "(a)", "2." with "(b)" and "3." with "(c)";***
 - (b) ***deleting "trading for the purposes of securities legislation and is" from subsection 2.1(6);***
 - (c) ***replacing "Inter-dealer bond brokers" with "Inter-dealer bond brokers that conduct traditional inter-dealer bond broker activity" in subsection 2.1(7); and***
 - (d) ***adding the following:***

(8) Section 1.2 of the Instrument contains an interpretation of the definition of "marketplace". The Canadian securities regulatory authorities do not consider a system that only routes unmatched orders to a

marketplace for execution to be a marketplace. If a dealer uses a system to match buy and sell orders or pair orders with contra-side orders outside of a marketplace and route the matched or paired orders to a marketplace as a cross, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities may consider the dealer to be operating a marketplace under paragraph (c) of the definition of “marketplace”. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities encourage dealers that operate or plan to operate such a system to meet with the applicable securities regulatory authority to discuss the operation of the system and whether the dealer’s system falls within the definition of “marketplace”..

4. Part 3 is amended by

- (a) **replacing “Canadian securities legislation” with “Securities legislation” in subsection 3.1(1);**
- (b) **replacing the first instance of “Canadian securities legislation” with “Securities legislation” and the second instance of “Canadian securities legislation” with “securities legislation” in subsection 3.2(1);**
- (c) **replacing “subsection” with “paragraph” in subsection 3.4(3);**
- (d) **replacing “Canadian securities legislation” with “securities legislation” in subsection 3.4(3);**
- (e) **replacing “subsection 6.1(a) of the Instrument” with “paragraph 6.1(a) and all other requirements in the Instrument and in NI 23-101” in subsection 3.4(4);**
- (f) **replacing “Subsection” with “Paragraph” in subsection 3.4(5);**
- (g) **replacing subsection 3.4(7) with the following:**

(7) Subsection 6.7(1) of the Instrument requires an ATS to notify the securities regulatory authority if one of three thresholds is met or exceeded. Upon being informed that one of the thresholds is met or exceeded, the securities regulatory authority intends to review the ATS and its structure and operations in order to consider whether the person or company operating the ATS should be considered to be an exchange for purposes of securities legislation or if additional terms and conditions should be placed on the registration of the ATS. The securities regulatory authority intends to conduct this review because each of these thresholds may be indicative of an ATS having significant market presence in a type of security, such that it would be more appropriate that the ATS be regulated as an exchange. If more than one Canadian securities regulatory authority is conducting this review, the reviewing jurisdictions intend to coordinate their review. The volume thresholds referred to in subsection 6.7(1) of the Instrument are based on the type of security. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities consider a type of security to refer to a distinctive category of security such as equity securities, debt securities or options.; **and**

- (h) **repealing subsection 3.4(9).**

5. Part 4 is amended by

- (a) **replacing “In exercising this discretion” in subsection 4.1(2) with “In determining whether it is in the public interest to recognize an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system”;**
- (b) **deleting “and” at the end of paragraph 4.1(2)(c);**
- (c) **replacing “.” with “,” at the end of paragraph 4.1(2)(d);**
- (d) **adding the following after paragraph 4.1(d):**
 - (e) whether the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system has policies and procedures to effectively identify and manage conflicts of interest arising from its operation or the services it provides;
 - (f) whether the requirements of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system relating to access to its services are fair and reasonable; and
 - (g) whether the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system’s process for setting fees is fair, transparent and appropriate, and whether the fees are equitably allocated among the participants, issuers and other users of services, do not have the effect of creating barriers to access and at the

same time ensure that the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system has sufficient financial resources for the proper performance of its functions.; **and**

- (e) **adding the following:**

4.2 Process

Although the basic requirements or criteria for recognition of an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system may be similar in various jurisdictions, the precise requirements and the process for seeking a recognition or an exemption from recognition in each jurisdiction is determined by that jurisdiction..

6. **Part 5 is amended by**

- (a) **adding** “However, if those prices or quantities are implied and determinable, for example, by knowing the features of the marketplace, the indications of interest may be considered an order.” **at the end of subsection 5.1(1);**

- (b) **replacing subsection 5.1(2) with the following:**

(2) The terminology used is not determinative of whether an indication of interest constitutes an order. Instead, whether or not an indication is “firm” will depend on what actually takes place between the buyer and seller. At a minimum, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities will consider an indication to be firm if it can be executed without further discussion between the person or company entering the indication and the counterparty (i.e. the indication is “actionable”). The Canadian securities regulatory authorities would consider an indication of interest to be actionable if it includes sufficient information to enable it to be executed without communicating with the marketplace participant that entered the order. Such information may include the symbol of the security, side (buy or sell), size, and price. The information may be explicitly stated, or it may be implicit and determinable based on the features of the marketplace. Even if the person or company must give its subsequent agreement to an execution, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities will still consider the indication to be firm if this subsequent agreement is always, or almost always, granted so that the agreement is largely a formality. For instance, an indication where there is a clear or prevailing presumption that a trade will take place at the indicated or an implied price, based on understandings or past dealings, will be viewed as an order.;

- (c) **renumbering subsection 5.1(4) as subsection 5.1(5); and**

- (d) **adding the following after subsection 5.1(3):**

(4) The securities regulatory authority may consider granting an exemption from the pre-trade transparency requirements in sections 7.1, 7.3, 8.1 and/or 8.2 of the Instrument to a marketplace for orders that result from a request for quotes or facility that allows negotiation between two parties provided that

- (a) order details are shown only to the negotiating parties,
- (b) other than as provided by paragraph (a), no actionable indication of interest or order is displayed by either party or the marketplace, and
- (c) each order entered on the marketplace meets the size threshold set by a regulation services provider as provided in subsection 7.1(2) of the Instrument..

7. **Part 6 is replaced with the following:**

PART 6 MARKETPLACE INFORMATION AND FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

6.1 Forms Filed by Marketplaces

(1) The definition of marketplace includes exchanges, quotation and trade reporting systems and ATSs. The legal entity that is recognized as an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system, or registered as a dealer in the case of an ATS, owns and operates the market or trading facility. In some cases, the entity may own and operate more than one trading facility. In such cases the marketplace may file separate forms in respect of each trading facility, or it may choose to file one form covering all of the different trading facilities. If the latter alternative is chosen, the marketplace must clearly identify the facility to which the information or changes apply.

(2) The forms filed by a marketplace under the Instrument will be kept confidential. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities are of the view that the forms contain proprietary financial, commercial and technical information and that the interests of the filers in non-disclosure outweigh the desirability of adhering to the principle that the forms be available for public inspection.

(3) While initial Forms 21-101F1 and 21-101F2 and amendments thereto are kept confidential, certain Canadian securities regulatory authorities may publish a summary of the information included in the forms filed by a marketplace, or information related to significant changes to the forms of a marketplace, where the Canadian securities regulatory authorities are of the view that a certain degree of transparency for certain aspects of a marketplace would allow investors and industry participants to be better informed as to how securities trade on the marketplace.

(4) Under subsection 3.2(1) of the Instrument, a marketplace is required to file an amendment to the information provided in Form 21-101F1 or Form 21-101F2, as applicable, at least 45 days prior to implementing a significant change. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities consider a significant change to be a change that could significantly impact a marketplace, marketplace participants, investors, or the Canadian capital markets. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities would consider significant changes to include:

- (a) changes in the structure of the marketplace, including procedures governing how orders are entered, displayed (if applicable), executed, how they interact, are cleared and settled;
- (b) new or changes to the services provided by the marketplace, including the hours of operation;
- (c) new or changes to the means of access to the market or facility and its services;
- (d) new or changes to order types;
- (e) new or changes to types of securities traded on the marketplace;
- (f) new or changes to types of securities listed on exchanges or quoted on quotation and trade reporting systems;
- (g) new or changes to types of marketplace participants;
- (h) changes to the systems and technology used by the marketplace that support order entry, order routing, execution, trade reporting, trade comparison, data feeds, co-location and, if applicable, market surveillance and trade clearing, including those affecting capacity;
- (i) changes to the governance of the marketplace, including the structure of its board of directors and changes in the board committees and their mandates;
- (j) changes in control over marketplaces;
- (k) changes in affiliates that provide services to or on behalf of the marketplace;
- (l) new or changes in and outsourcing arrangements for key marketplace services or systems;
- (m) new or changes in custody arrangements; and
- (n) changes in fees and the fee model of the marketplace.

(5) Significant changes would not include changes to information in Form 21-101F1 or Form 21-101F2 that

- (a) would not have an impact on the marketplace's market structure or marketplace participants on investors, issuers or the capital markets; or
- (b) are housekeeping or administrative changes such as
 - (i) changes in the routine processes, policies, practices or administration of the marketplace,
 - (ii) changes due to standardization of terminology,
 - (iii) corrections of spelling or typographical errors,

- (iv) necessary changes to conform to applicable regulatory or legal requirements, and
- (v) minor system or technology changes that would not significantly impact the system or its capacity.

Such changes would be filed in accordance with the requirements outlined in subsection 3.2(3) of the Instrument.

(6) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities generally consider a change in a marketplace's fees or fee structure to be a significant change. However, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities recognize that in the current, competitive multiple marketplace environment, which may at times require that frequent changes be made to the fees or fee structure of marketplaces, marketplaces may need to implement fee changes within tight timeframes. To facilitate this process, subsection 3.2(2) of the Instrument provides that marketplaces may provide information describing the change in fees or fee structure in a shorter timeframe, at least seven business days before the expected implementation date of the change in fees or fee structure.

(7) For the changes referred to in subsection 3.2(3) of the Instrument, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities may review these filings to ascertain the appropriateness of the categorization of such filings. The marketplace will be notified in writing if there is disagreement with respect to the categorization of the filing.

(8) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities will make best efforts to review amendments to Forms 21-101F1 and 21-101F2 within the timelines specified in subsections 3.2(1) and (2) of the Instrument. However, where the changes are complex, raise regulatory concerns, or when additional information is required, the period for review may exceed these timeframes. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities will review changes to the information in Forms 21-101F1 and 21-101F2 in accordance with staff practices in each jurisdiction.

(9) Section 3.3 of the Instrument requires a marketplace to file Form 21-101F3 by the following dates: April 30 (for the quarter ending March 31), July 30 (for the quarter ending June 30), October 30 (for the quarter ending September 30) and January 30 (for the quarter ending December 31).

6.2 Filing of Financial Statements

Part 4 of the Instrument sets out the financial reporting requirements applicable to marketplaces. Subsections 4.1(2) and 4.2(2) respectively require an ATS to file audited financial statements initially, together with Form 21-101F2, and on an annual basis thereafter. These financial statements may be in the same form as those filed with IIROC. The annual audited financial statements may be filed with the Canadian securities regulatory authorities at the same time as they are filed with IIROC..

8. *Part 7 is replaced with the following:*

PART 7 MARKETPLACE REQUIREMENTS

7.1 Access Requirements

(1) Section 5.1 of the Instrument sets out access requirements that apply to a marketplace. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities note that the requirements regarding access for marketplace participants do not restrict the marketplace from maintaining reasonable standards for access. The purpose of these access requirements is to ensure that rules, policies, procedures, and fees, as applicable, of the marketplace do not unreasonably create barriers to access to the services provided by the marketplace.

(2) For the purposes of complying with the order protection requirements in Part 6 of NI 23-101, a marketplace should permit fair and efficient access to

- (a) a marketplace participant that directly accesses the marketplace,
- (b) a person or company that is indirectly accessing the marketplace through a marketplace participant, or
- (c) another marketplace routing an order to the marketplace.

The reference to "a person or company" in paragraph (b) includes a system or facility that is operated by a person or company.

- (3) The reference to “services” in section 5.1 of the Instrument means all services that may be offered to a person or company and includes all services relating to order entry, trading, execution, routing, data and includes co-location.
- (4) Marketplaces that send indications of interest to a selected smart order router or other system should send the information to other smart order routers or system to meet the fair access requirements of the Instrument.
- (5) Marketplaces are responsible for ensuring that the fees they set are in compliance with section 5.1 of the Instrument. In assessing whether its fees unreasonably condition or limit access to its services, a marketplace should consider a number of factors, including
- (a) the value of the security traded,
 - (b) the amount of the fee relative to the value of the security traded,
 - (c) the amount of fees charged by other marketplaces to execute trades in the market,
 - (d) with respect to market data fees, the amount of market data fees charged relative to the market share of the marketplace, and,
 - (e) with respect to order execution terms, including fees, whether the outcome of their application is consistent with the policy goals of order protection.

The Canadian securities regulatory authorities will consider these factors, among others, in determining whether the fees charged by a marketplace unreasonably condition or limit access to its services. With respect to trading fees, it is the view of the Canadian securities regulatory authorities that a trading fee equal to or greater than the minimum trading increment as defined in IIROC’s Universal Market Integrity Rules, as amended, would unreasonably condition or limit access to a marketplace’s services as it would be inconsistent with the policy goals of order protection. Trading fees below the minimum trading increment may also unreasonably condition or limit access to a marketplace’s services when taking into account factors including those listed above.

7.2 Public Interest Rules – Section 5.3 of the Instrument sets out the requirements applicable to the rules, policies and similar instruments adopted by recognized exchanges and recognized quotation and trade reporting systems. These requirements acknowledge that recognized exchanges and quotation and trade reporting systems perform regulatory functions. The Instrument does not require the application of these requirements to an ATS’s trading requirements. This is because, unlike exchanges, ATSs are not permitted to perform regulatory functions, other than setting requirements regarding conduct in respect of the trading by subscribers on the marketplace, i.e. requirements related to the method of trading or algorithms used by their subscribers to execute trades in the system. However, it is the expectation of the Canadian securities regulatory authority that the requirement in section 5.7 of the Instrument that marketplaces take reasonable steps to ensure they operate in a manner that does not interfere with the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, applies to an ATS’s requirements. Such requirements may include those that deal with subscriber qualification, access to the marketplace, how orders are entered, interact, execute, clear and settle.

7.3 Compliance Rules – Section 5.4 of the Instrument requires a recognized exchange and recognized quotation and trade reporting system to have appropriate procedures to deal with violations of rules, policies or other similar instruments of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system. This section does not preclude enforcement action by any other person or company, including the Canadian securities regulatory authorities or the regulation services provider.

7.4 Filing of Rules – Section 5.5 of the Instrument requires a recognized exchange and recognized quotation and trade reporting system to file all rules, policies and other similar instruments and amendments as required by the securities regulatory authority. Initially, all rules, policies and other similar instruments will be reviewed before implementation by the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system. Subsequent to recognition, the securities regulatory authority may develop and implement a protocol that will set out the procedures to be followed with respect to the review and approval of rules, policies and other similar instruments and amendments.

7.5 Review of Rules – The Canadian securities regulatory authorities review the rules, policies and similar instruments of a recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system in accordance with the recognition order and rule protocol issued by the jurisdiction in which the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system is recognized. The rules of recognized exchanges and quotation and trade reporting systems are included in their rulebooks, and the principles and requirements applicable to these rules are set out in section 5.3 of the Instrument. For an ATS, whose trading requirements, including any trading rules, policies or practices, are incorporated in Form 21-101F2, any changes would be filed in accordance with the filing requirements applicable to changes to

information in Form 21-101F2 set out in subsections 3.2(1) and 3.2(3) of the Instrument and reviewed by the Canadian securities regulatory authorities in accordance with staff practices in each jurisdiction.

7.6 Fair and Orderly Markets – (1) Section 5.7 of the Instrument establishes the requirement that a marketplace take reasonable steps to ensure it operates in a way that does not interfere with the maintenance of fair and orderly markets. This applies both to the operation of the marketplace itself and to the impact of the marketplace's operations on the Canadian market as a whole.

(2) This section does not impose a responsibility on the marketplace to oversee the conduct of its marketplace participants, unless the marketplace is an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system that has assumed responsibility for monitoring the conduct of its marketplace participants directly rather than through a regulation services provider. However, marketplaces are expected in the normal course to monitor order entry and trading activity for compliance with the marketplace's own operational policies and procedures. They should also alert the regulation services provider if they become aware that disorderly or disruptive order entry or trading may be occurring, or of possible violations of applicable regulatory requirements.

(3) Part of taking reasonable steps to ensure that a marketplace's operations do not interfere with fair and orderly markets necessitates ensuring that its operations support compliance with regulatory requirements including applicable rules of a regulation services provider. This does not mean that a marketplace must system-enforce all regulatory requirements. However, it should not operate in a manner that to the best of its knowledge would cause marketplace participants to breach regulatory requirements when trading on the marketplace.

7.7 Confidential Treatment of Trading Information – (1) Subsection 5.10 (2) of the Instrument provides that a marketplace shall not carry on business as a marketplace unless it has implemented reasonable safeguards and procedures to protect a marketplace participant's trading information. These include

- (a) limiting access to the trading information of marketplace participants, such as the identity of marketplace participants and their orders, to those employees of, or persons or companies retained by, the marketplace to operate the system or to be responsible for its compliance with securities legislation; and
- (b) having in place procedures to ensure that employees of the marketplace cannot use such information for trading in their own accounts.

(2) The procedures referred to in subsection (1) should be clear and unambiguous and presented to all employees and agents of the marketplace, whether or not they have direct responsibility for the operation of the marketplace.

(3) Nothing in section 5.10 of the Instrument prohibits a marketplace from complying with National Instrument 54-101 *Communication with Beneficial Owners of Securities of a Reporting Issuer*. This statement is necessary because an investment dealer that operates a marketplace may be an intermediary for the purposes of National Instrument 54-101, and may be required to disclose information under that Instrument.

7.8 Management of Conflicts of Interest – (1) Marketplaces are required under section 5.11 of the Instrument to maintain and ensure compliance with policies and procedures that identify and manage conflicts of interest arising from the operation of the marketplace or the services it provides. These may include conflicts, actual or perceived, related to the commercial interest of the marketplace, the interests of its owners or its operators, referral arrangements and the responsibilities and sound functioning of the marketplace. For an exchange and quotation and trade reporting system, they may also include potential conflicts between the operation of the marketplace and its regulatory responsibilities.

(2) The marketplace's policies should also take into account conflicts for owners that are marketplace participants. These may include inducements to send order flow to the marketplace to obtain a larger ownership position or to use the marketplace to trade against the clients' order flow. These policies should be disclosed as provided in paragraph 10.1(e) of the Instrument.

7.9 Outsourcing – Section 5.12 of the Instrument sets out the requirements that marketplaces that outsource any of their key services or systems to a service provider, which may include affiliates or associates of the marketplace, must meet. Generally, marketplaces are required to establish policies and procedures to evaluate and approve these outsourcing agreements. Such policies and procedures would include assessing the suitability of potential service providers and the ability of the marketplace to continue to comply with securities legislation in the event of the service provider's bankruptcy, insolvency or termination of business. Marketplaces are also required to monitor the ongoing performance of the service provider to which they outsourced key services, systems or facilities. The requirements

under section 5.12 of the Instrument apply regardless of whether the outsourcing arrangements are with third-party service providers, or with affiliates of the marketplaces..

9. *Part 8 is replaced with the following:*

PART 8 RISK DISCLOSURE TO MARKETPLACE PARTICIPANTS

8.1 Risk disclosure to marketplace participants – Subsections 5.9(2) and 6.11(2) of the Instrument require a marketplace to obtain an acknowledgement from its marketplace participants. The acknowledgement may be obtained in a number of ways, including requesting the signature of the marketplace participant or requesting that the marketplace participant initial an initial box or check a check-off box. This may be done electronically. The acknowledgement must be specific to the information required to be disclosed under the relevant subsection and must confirm that the marketplace participant has received the required disclosure. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities are of the view that it is the responsibility of the marketplace to ensure that an acknowledgement is obtained from the marketplace participant in a timely manner..

10. *Part 9 is amended by replacing subsection 9.1(1) with the following:*

(1) Subsection 7.1(1) of the Instrument requires a marketplace that displays orders of exchange-traded securities to any person or company to provide accurate and timely information regarding those orders to an information processor as required by the information processor or, if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities consider that a marketplace that sends information about orders of exchange-traded securities, including indications of interest that meet the definition of an order, to a smart order router is “displaying” that information. The marketplace would be subject to the transparency requirements of subsection 7.1(1) of the Instrument. The transparency requirements of subsection 7.1(1) of the Instrument do not apply to a marketplace that displays orders of exchange-traded securities to its employees or to persons or companies retained by the marketplace to assist in the operation of the marketplace, as long as these orders meet a minimum size threshold set by the regulation services provider. In other words, the only orders that are exempt from the transparency requirements are those meeting the minimum size threshold. Section 7.2 requires a marketplace to provide accurate and timely information regarding trades of exchange-traded securities that it executes to an information processor as required by the information processor or, if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider. Some marketplaces, such as exchanges, may be regulation services providers and will establish standards for the information vendors they use to display order and trade information to ensure that the information displayed by the information vendors is timely, accurate and promotes market integrity. If the marketplace has entered into a contract with a regulation services provider under NI 23-101, the marketplace must provide information to the regulation services provider and an information vendor that meets the standards set by that regulation services provider..

11. *Part 10 is amended by replacing “2012” with “2015” in subsection 10.1(1).*

12. *Part 12 is replaced with the following:*

PART 12 TRANSPARENCY OF MARKETPLACE OPERATIONS

12.1 Transparency of Marketplace Operations

(1) Section 10.1 of the Instrument requires that marketplaces make publicly available certain information pertaining to their operations and services. While section 10.1 sets out the minimum disclosure requirements, marketplaces may wish to make publicly available other information, as appropriate. Where this information is included in a marketplace’s rules, regulations, policies and procedures or practices that are publicly available, the marketplace need not duplicate this disclosure.

(2) Paragraph 10.1(a) requires marketplaces to disclose publicly all fees, including listing, trading, co-location, data and routing fees charged by the marketplace, an affiliate or by a third party to which services have been directly or indirectly outsourced or which directly or indirectly provides those services. This means that a marketplace is expected to publish and make readily available the schedule(s) of fees charged to any and all users of these services, including the basis for charging each fee (e.g., a per share basis for trading fees, a per subscriber basis for data fees, etc.) and would also include any fee rebate or discount and the basis for earning the rebate or discount. With respect to trading fees, it is not the intention of the Canadian securities regulatory authorities that a commission fee charged by a dealer for dealer services be disclosed in this context.

(3) Paragraph 10.1(b) requires marketplaces to disclose information on how orders are entered, interact and execute. This would include a description of the priority of execution for all order types and the types of crosses that

may be executed on the marketplace. A marketplace should also disclose whether it sends information regarding indications of interest or order information to a smart order router.

(4) Paragraph 10.1(e) requires a marketplace to disclose its conflict of interest policies and procedures. For conflicts arising from the ownership of a marketplace by marketplace participants, the marketplace should include in its marketplace participant agreements a requirement that marketplace participants disclose that ownership to their clients at least quarterly. This is consistent with the marketplace participant's existing obligations to disclose conflicts of interest under National Instrument 31-103 *Registration Requirements, Exemptions and Ongoing Registrant Requirements*. A marketplace should disclose if a marketplace or affiliated entity of a marketplace intends to trade for its own account on the marketplace against or in competition with client orders.

(5) Paragraph 10.1(f) requires marketplaces to disclose a description of any arrangements where the marketplace refers its participants to the services of a third-party provider where the marketplace receives some benefit (fee rebate, payment, etc.) if the marketplace participant uses the services of the third-party service provider, and has a potential conflict of interest.

(6) Paragraph 10.1(g) requires marketplaces that offer routing services to disclose a description of how routing decisions are made. The subsection applies whether routing is done by a marketplace-owned smart order router, by an affiliate of a marketplace, or by a third-party to which routing was outsourced.

(7) Paragraph 10.1(h) applies to marketplaces that disseminate indications of interest or any information in order to attract order flow. The Instrument requires that these marketplaces make publicly available information regarding their practices regarding the dissemination of information. This would include a description of the type of information included in the indication of interest displayed, and the types of recipients of such information. For example, a marketplace would describe whether the recipients of an indication of interest are the general public, all of its subscribers, particular categories of subscribers or smart order routers operated by their subscribers or by third party vendors..

13. Part 13 is amended by replacing “Canadian securities legislation” with “securities legislation” and “Canadian securities regulatory authorities” with “securities regulatory authorities” in section 13.1.

14. Part 14 is amended by

(a) **replacing the title with “PART 14 MARKETPLACE SYSTEMS AND BUSINESS CONTINUITY PLANNING”;**

(b) **deleting “, business continuity” in subsection 14.1(2);**

(c) **replacing subsection 14.1(3) with the following:**

Subsection 12.2(1) of the Instrument requires a marketplace to engage a qualified party to conduct an annual independent assessment of the internal controls referred to in paragraph 12.1(a) of the Instrument. A qualified party is a person or company or a group of persons or companies with relevant experience in both information technology and in the evaluation of related internal controls in a complex information technology environment, such as external auditors or third party information system consultants. Before engaging a qualified party, a marketplace should discuss its choice with the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority. ;

(d) **replacing subsection 14.1(4) with the following:**

(4) Paragraph 12.1(c) of the Instrument requires the marketplace to notify the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority of any material systems failure. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities consider a failure, malfunction or delay to be “material” if the marketplace would in the normal course of operations escalate the matter to or inform its senior management ultimately accountable for technology. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities also expect that, as part of this notification, the marketplace will provide updates on the status of the failure, the resumption of service and the results of its internal review of the failure.

(5) Under section 15.1 of the Instrument, a regulator or the securities regulatory authority may consider granting a marketplace an exemption from the requirements to engage a qualified party to conduct an annual independent systems review and prepare a report under subsection 12.2(1) of the Instrument provided that the marketplace prepare a control self-assessment and file this self-assessment with the regulator or in Québec, the securities regulatory authority. The scope of the self-assessment would be similar to the scope that would have applied if the marketplace underwent an independent systems review. Reporting of the self-

assessment results and the timeframe for reporting would be consistent with that established for an independent systems review.

In determining if the exemption is in the public interest and the length of the exemption, the regulator or securities regulatory authority may consider a number of factors including: the market share of the marketplace, the timing of the last independent systems review, changes to systems or staff of the marketplace and whether the marketplace has experienced material systems failures, malfunction or delays; **and**

- (e) **adding the following:**

14.3 Business Continuity Planning

Section 12.4 of the Instrument requires that marketplaces develop and maintain reasonable business continuity plans, including disaster recovery plans. Business continuity planning should encompass all policies and procedures to ensure uninterrupted provision of key services regardless of the cause of potential disruption. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities expect that, in order for a marketplace to have a reasonable business continuity plan, including a disaster recovery plan, it test it on a periodic basis, and at least annually and it should participate in industry-wide tests..

15. **Part 15 is amended by replacing “all trades executed through an ATS” with “all trades executed through a marketplace” in section 15.1.**

16. **Part 16 is amended by**

- (a) **replacing “subsection 14.5(b)” with “paragraph 14.5(c)” in paragraph 16.2(1)(f);**

- (b) **replacing section 16.3 with the following:**

16.3 Change to Information – Under subsection 14.2(1) of the Instrument, an information processor is required to file an amendment to the information provided in Form 21-101F5 at least 45 days before implementing a significant change involving a matter set out in Form 21-101F5, in the manner set out in Form 21-101F5. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities would consider significant changes to include:

- (a) changes to the governance of the information processor, including the structure of its board of directors and changes in the board committees and their mandates;
- (b) changes in control over the information processor;
- (c) changes affecting the independence of the information processor, including independence from the marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers and dealers that provide their data to meet the requirements of the Instrument;
- (d) changes to the services or functions performed by the information processor;
- (e) changes to the data products offered by the information processor;
- (f) changes to the fees and fee structure related to the services provided by the information processor;
- (g) changes to the revenue sharing model for revenues from fees related to services provided by the information processor;
- (h) changes to the systems and technology used by the information processor, including those affecting its capacity;
- (i) new arrangements or changes to arrangements to outsource the operation of any aspect of the services of the information processor;
- (j) changes to the means of access to the services of the information processor; and
- (k) where the information processor is responsible for making a determination of the data which must be reported, including the securities for which information must be reported in

accordance with the Instrument, changes in the criteria and process for selection and communication of these securities.

These would not include housekeeping or administrative changes to the information included in Form 21-101F5, such as changes in the routine processes, practice or administration of the information processor, changes due to standardization of terminology, or minor system or technology changes that do not significantly impact the system of the information processor or its capacity. Such changes would be filed in accordance with the requirements outlined in subsection 14.2(2) of the Instrument.; **and**

(c) replacing section 16.4 with the following:

16.4 System Requirements – The guidance in section 14.1 of this Companion Policy applies to the systems requirements for an information processor..

17. These changes become effective on July 1, 2012.

AMENDMENTS TO NATIONAL INSTRUMENT 23-101 TRADING RULES

1. **National Instrument 23-101 Trading Rules is amended by this Instrument.**
2. **Part 6 is amended by:**
 - (a) **replacing** “The following are the trade-throughs referred to in paragraph 6.1(1)(a)” **with** “For the purposes of paragraph 6.1(1)(a) the permitted trade-throughs are” **in section 6.2;**
 - (b) **replacing** “marketplace participant” **with** “marketplace participant or a marketplace that routes or reprices orders” **in section 6.5.**
3. **Part 11 is amended by:**
 - (a) **replacing** “this Part” **with** “the requirements in section 11.2” **in subsection 11.1(2);**
 - (b) **replacing** “record” **with** “record in electronic form” **in subsection 11.2(1);**
 - (c) **replacing** “, and” **with** “,” **in paragraph 11.2(1)(r);**
 - (d) **replacing** “.” **with** “,” **in paragraph 11.2(1)(s);**
 - (e) **adding the following after paragraph 11.2(1)(s):**
 - (t) each unique client identifier assigned to a client accessing the marketplace using direct electronic access; and
 - (u) whether the order is a directed-action order.;
 - (f) **replacing** “records” **with** “records in electronic form” **in subsection 11.2(7).**
4. This Instrument comes into force on July 1, 2012.

SCHEDULE

1. ***The changes to Companion Policy 23-101CP to National Instrument 23-101 Trading Rules are set out in this Schedule.***
2. ***Part 4 is amended by replacing “an ATS” with “a marketplace” in subsection 4.1(6).***
3. ***Part 5 is amended by***
 - (a) ***adding “or a” after “recognized exchange” in section 5.1;***
 - (b) ***deleting “or an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system that has been recognized for the purposes of the Instrument and NI 21-101” in section 5.1; and***
 - (c) ***replacing “quotation and trading system” with “quotation and trade reporting system” throughout section 5.1.***
4. ***Part 6 is amended by replacing section 6.4 with the following***

6.4 Locked and Crossed Markets

(1) Section 6.5 of the Instrument provides that a marketplace participant or a marketplace that routes or reprices orders shall not intentionally lock or cross a market by entering a protected order to buy a security at a price that is the same as or higher than the best protected offer or entering a protected order to sell a security at a price that is the same as or lower than the best protected bid. This provision is not intended to prohibit the use of marketable limit orders. Paragraphs 6.2(f) and 6.4(a)(v) of the Instrument allow for the resolution of crossed markets that occur unintentionally.

The Canadian securities regulatory authorities consider an order that is routed or repriced to be “entered” on a marketplace. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities do not consider the triggering of a previously-entered on-stop order to be an “entry” or “repricing” of that order.

(2) Section 6.5 of the Instrument prohibits a marketplace participant or a marketplace that routes or reprices orders from intentionally locking or crossing a market. This would occur, for example, when a marketplace participant enters a locking or crossing order on a particular marketplace or marketplaces to avoid fees charged by a marketplace or to take advantage of rebates offered by a particular marketplace. This could also occur where a marketplace system is programmed to reprice orders without checking to see if the new price would lock the market or where the marketplace routes orders to another marketplace that results in a locked market.

There are situations where a locked or crossed market may occur unintentionally. For example:

- (a) when a marketplace participant routes multiple directed-action orders that are marked immediate-or-cancel to a variety of marketplaces and because of latency issues, a locked or crossed market results,
- (b) the locking or crossing order was displayed at a time when the marketplace displaying the locked or crossed order was experiencing a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems, equipment or ability to disseminate marketplace data,
- (c) the locking or crossing order was displayed at a time when a protected bid was higher than a protected offer,
- (d) the locking or crossing order was posted after all displayed liquidity was executed and a reserve order generated a new visible bid above the displayed offer or offer below the displayed bid,
- (e) the locking or crossing order was entered on a particular marketplace in order to comply with securities legislation requirements such as Rule 904 of Regulation S of the Securities Act of 1933 that requires securities subject to resale restrictions in the United States to be sold in Canada on a “designated offshore securities market”,
- (f) the locking or crossing order was displayed due to “race conditions” when competing orders are entered on marketplaces at essentially the same time with neither party having knowledge of the other order at the time of entry,

- (g) the locking or crossing order was a result of the differences in processing times and latencies between the systems of the marketplace participant, marketplaces, information processor and information vendors,
- (h) the locking or crossing order was a result of marketplaces having different mechanisms to “restart” trading following a halt in trading for either regulatory or business purposes, and
- (i) the locking or crossing order was a result of the execution of an order during the opening or closing allocation process of one market, while trading is simultaneously occurring on a continuous basis on another market,

If a marketplace participant using a directed-action order chooses to book the order or the remainder of the order, then it is responsible for ensuring that the booked portion of the directed-action order does not lock or cross the market. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities would consider a directed-action order or remainder of a directed-action order that is booked and that locks or crosses the market to be an intentional locking or crossing of the market and a violation of section 6.5 of the Instrument.

5. These changes become effective on July 1, 2012.

This page intentionally left blank

National Instrument 21-101 Marketplace Operation (Blacklined to Version Published for Comment March 18, 2011)

PART 1 DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATION

1.1 Definitions – In this Instrument

"accounting principles" means accounting principles as defined in National Instrument 52-107 *Acceptable Accounting Principles and Auditing Standards*;

"alternative trading system",

(a) in every jurisdiction other than Ontario, means a marketplace that

(ai) is not a recognized quotation and trade reporting system or a recognized exchange, and

(bij) does not

(iA) require an issuer to enter into an agreement to have its securities traded on the marketplace,

(iiB) provide, directly, or through one or more subscribers, a guarantee of a two-sided market for a security on a continuous or reasonably continuous basis,

(iiiC) set requirements governing the conduct of subscribers, other than conduct in respect of the trading by those subscribers on the marketplace, and

(ivD) discipline subscribers other than by exclusion from participation in the marketplace, and

(b) in Ontario has the meaning set out in subsection 1(1) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario);

"ATS" means an alternative trading system;

"corporate debt security" means a debt security issued in Canada by a company or corporation that is not listed on a recognized exchange or quoted on a recognized quotation and trade reporting system or listed on an exchange or quoted on a quotation and trade reporting system that has been recognized for the purposes of this Instrument and NI 23-101, and does not include a government debt security;

"exchange-traded security" means a security that is listed on a recognized exchange or is quoted on a recognized quotation and trade reporting system or is listed on an exchange or quoted on a quotation and trade reporting system that is recognized for the purposes of this Instrument and NI 23-101;

"foreign exchange-traded security" means a security that is listed on an exchange, or quoted on a quotation and trade reporting system, outside of Canada that is regulated by an ordinary member of the International Organization of Securities Commissions and is not listed on an exchange or quoted on a quotation and trade reporting system in Canada;

"government debt security" means

(a) a debt security issued or guaranteed by the government of Canada, or any province or territory of Canada,

(b) a debt security issued or guaranteed by any municipal corporation or municipal body in Canada, or secured by or payable out of rates or taxes levied under the law of a jurisdiction of Canada on property in the jurisdiction and to be collected by or through the municipality in which the property is situated,

(c) a debt security issued or guaranteed by a crown corporation or public body,

(d) in Ontario, a debt security of any school board in Ontario or of a corporation established under section 248(1) of the Education Act (Ontario), or

(e) in Québec, a debt security of the Comité de gestion de la taxe scolaire de l'île de Montréal

that is not listed on a recognized exchange or quoted on a recognized quotation and trade reporting system or

listed on an exchange or quoted on a quotation and trade reporting system that has been recognized for the purposes of this Instrument and NI 23-101;

"IIROC" means the Investment Industry Regulatory Organization of Canada;

"information processor" means any person or company that receives and provides information under this Instrument and has filed Form 21-101F5;

"inter-dealer bond broker" means a person or company that is approved by IIROC under IIROC Rule 36 Inter-Dealer Bond Brokerage Systems, as amended, and is subject to IIROC Rule 36 and IIROC Rule 2100 Inter-Dealer Bond Brokerage Systems, as amended;

"market integrator" [repealed]

"marketplace",

(a) ~~in every jurisdiction other than Ontario,~~ means

(a~~i~~) an exchange,

(b~~ii~~) a quotation and trade reporting system,

(c~~iii~~) a person or company not included in ~~paragraph clause (a~~i~~) or (b~~ii~~)~~ that

(i~~A~~) constitutes, maintains or provides a market or facility for bringing together buyers and sellers of securities,

(ii~~B~~) brings together the orders for securities of multiple buyers and sellers, and

(iii~~C~~) uses established, non-discretionary methods under which the orders interact with each other, and the buyers and sellers entering the orders agree to the terms of a trade, or

(d~~iv~~) a dealer that executes a trade of an exchange-traded security outside of a marketplace, but does not include an inter-dealer bond broker; ~~and~~

(b) ~~in Ontario has the meaning set out in subsection 1(1) of the Securities Act (Ontario);~~

"marketplace participant" means a member of an exchange, a user of a quotation and trade reporting system, or a subscriber of an ATS;

"member" means, for a recognized exchange, a person or company

(a) holding at least one seat on the exchange, or

(b) that has been granted direct trading access rights by the exchange and is subject to regulatory oversight by the exchange,

and the person or company's representatives;

"NI 23-101" means National Instrument 23-101 *Trading Rules*;

"order" means a firm indication by a person or company, acting as either principal or agent, of a willingness to buy or sell a security;

"private enterprise" means a private enterprise as defined in Part 3 of National Instrument 52-107 *Acceptable Accounting Principles and Auditing Standards*;

"publicly accountable enterprise" means a publicly accountable enterprise as defined in Part 3 of National Instrument 52-107 *Acceptable Accounting Principles and Auditing Standards*;

"recognized exchange" means

(a) ~~in Ontario, an exchange recognized by the securities regulatory authority to carry on business as a stock exchange~~ a recognized exchange as defined in subsection 1(1) of the Securities Act (Ontario),

- (b) in Québec, an exchange recognized by the securities regulatory authority under securities or derivatives legislation as an exchange or self-regulatory organization, and
- (c) in every other jurisdiction, an exchange recognized by the securities regulatory authority as an exchange, self-regulatory organization or self-regulatory body;

"recognized quotation and trade reporting system" means

- (a) in every jurisdiction other than British Columbia, Ontario and Québec, a quotation and trade reporting system recognized by the securities regulatory authority under securities legislation to carry on business as a quotation and trade reporting system,
- (b) in British Columbia, a quotation and trade reporting system recognized by the securities regulatory authority under securities legislation as a quotation and trade reporting system or as an exchange;²
- (b.1) in Ontario, a recognized quotation and trade reporting system as defined in subsection 1(1) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), and
- (c) in Québec, a quotation and trade reporting system recognized by the securities regulatory authority under securities or derivatives legislation as an exchange or a self-regulatory organization;

"regulation services provider" means a person or company that provides regulation services and is

- (a) a recognized exchange,
- (b) a recognized quotation and trade reporting system, or
- (c) a recognized self-regulatory entity;

"self-regulatory entity" means a self-regulatory body or self-regulatory organization that

- (a) is not an exchange, and
- (b) is recognized as a self-regulatory body or self-regulatory organization by the securities regulatory authority;

"subscriber" means, for an ATS, a person or company that has entered into a contractual agreement with the ATS to access the ATS for the purpose of effecting trades or submitting, disseminating or displaying orders on the ATS, and the person or company's representatives;

"trading fee" means the fee that a marketplace charges for execution of a trade on that marketplace;

"trading volume" means the number of securities traded;

"unlisted debt security" means a government debt security or corporate debt security; and

"user" means, for a recognized quotation and trade reporting system, a person or company that quotes orders or reports trades on the recognized quotation and trade reporting system, and the person or company's representatives.

1.2 Interpretation – Marketplace – For the purpose of the definition of "marketplace" in section 1.1, a person or company is not considered to constitute, maintain or provide a market or facilities for bringing together buyers and sellers of securities, solely because the person or company routes orders to a marketplace or a dealer for execution.

1.3 Interpretation – Affiliated Entity, Controlled Entity and Subsidiary Entity

- (1) In this Instrument, a person or company is considered to be an affiliated entity of another person or company if one is a subsidiary entity of the other or if both are subsidiary entities of the same person or company, or if each of them is a controlled entity of the same person or company.
- (2) In this Instrument, a person or company is considered to be controlled by a person or company if
 - (a) in the case of a person or company,

- (i) voting securities of the first-mentioned person or company carrying more than 50 percent of the votes for the election of directors are held, otherwise than by way of security only, by or for the benefit of the other person or company, and
 - (ii) the votes carried by the securities are entitled, if exercised, to elect a majority of the directors of the first-mentioned person or company;
 - (b) in the case of a partnership that does not have directors, other than a limited partnership, the second-mentioned person or company holds more than 50 percent of the interests in the partnership; or
 - (c) in the case of a limited partnership, the general partner is the second-mentioned person or company.
- (3) In this Instrument, a person or company is considered to be a subsidiary entity of another person or company if
- (a) it is a controlled entity of,
 - (i) that other,
 - (ii) that other and one or more persons or companies each of which is a controlled entity of that other, or
 - (iii) two or more persons or companies, each of which is a controlled entity of that other; or
 - (b) it is a subsidiary entity of a person or company that is the other's subsidiary entity.

1.4 Interpretation – Security

- (1) In Alberta and British Columbia, the term "security", when used in this Instrument, includes an option that is an exchange contract but does not include a futures contract.
- (2) In Ontario, the term "security", when used in this Instrument, does not include a commodity futures contract or a commodity futures option that is not traded on a commodity futures exchange registered with or recognized by the Commission under the Commodity Futures Act or the form of which is not accepted by the Director under the *Commodity Futures Act*.
- (3) In Québec, the term "security", when used in this Instrument, includes a standardized derivative as this notion is defined in the *Derivatives Act*.

1.5 Interpretation – NI 23-101

Terms defined or interpreted in NI 23-101 and used in this Instrument have the respective meanings ascribed to them in NI 23-101.

PART 2 APPLICATION

- 2.1 **Application** – This Instrument does not apply to a marketplace that is a member of a recognized exchange or a member of an exchange that has been recognized for the purposes of this Instrument and NI 23-101.

PART 3 MARKETPLACE INFORMATION

3.1 Initial Filing of Information

- (1) A person or company must file as part of its application for recognition as an exchange or a quotation and trade reporting system Form 21-101F1.
- (2) A person or company must not carry on business as an ATS unless it has filed Form 21-101F2 at least 45 days before the ATS begins to carry on business as an ATS.

3.2 Change in Information

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), a marketplace must not implement a significant change to a matter set out in Form 21-101F1 or in Form 21-101F2 unless the marketplace has filed an amendment to the information provided in Form 21-101F1 or in Form 21-101F2 in the manner set out in the Form at least 45 days before implementing the change.

- (2) A marketplace must file an amendment to the information provided in Exhibit L – Fees of Form 21-101F1 or Exhibit L – Fees of Form 21-101F2, as applicable, at least seven business days before implementing a change to the information provided in Exhibit L – Fees.
- (3) ~~Immediately before implementing a~~For any change toinvolving a matter set out in Form 21-101 F1 or Form 21-101F2 other than a change referred to in subsection (1) or (2), a marketplace must file an amendment to the information provided in the Form- by the earlier of
- (a) the close of business of the marketplace on the 10th day after the end of the month in which the change was made, and
- (b) if applicable, the time the marketplace discloses the change publicly.

3.3 Reporting Requirements

A marketplace must file Form 21-101F3 within 30 days after the end of each calendar quarter during any part of which the marketplace has carried on business.

3.4 Ceasing to Carry on Business as an ATS

- (1) An ATS that intends to cease carrying on business as an ATS must file a report on Form 21-101F4 at least 30 days before ceasing to carry on that business.
- (2) An ATS that involuntarily ceases to carry on business as an ATS must file a report on Form 21-101F4 as soon as practicable after it ceases to carry on that business.

3.5 Forms Filed in Electronic Form

A person or company that is required to file a form or exhibit under this Instrument must file that form or exhibit in electronic form.

PART 4 MARKETPLACE FILING OF AUDITED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

4.1 Filing of Initial Audited Financial Statements

- (1) A person or company must file as part of its application for recognition as an exchange or a quotation and trade reporting system, together with Form 21-101F1, audited financial statements for its latest financial year that
- (a) are prepared in accordance with Canadian GAAP applicable to publicly accountable enterprises or IFRS,
- (b) include notes to the financial statements that identify the accounting principles used to prepare the financial statements, and
- (c) are audited in accordance with Canadian GAAS or International Standards on Auditing and are accompanied by an auditor's report.
- (2) A person or company must not carry on business as an ATS unless it has filed, together with Form 21-101F2, audited financial statements for its latest financial year.

4.2 Filing of Annual Audited Financial Statements

- (1) A recognized exchange and a recognized quotation and trade reporting system must file annual audited financial statements within 90 days after the end of its financial year in accordance with the requirements outlined in subsection 4.1(1).
- (2) An ATS must file annual audited financial statements.

PART 5 MARKETPLACE REQUIREMENTS

5.1 Access Requirements

- (1) A marketplace must not unreasonably prohibit, condition or limit access by a person or company to services offered by it.

-
- (2) A marketplace must
- (a) establish written standards for granting access to each of its services; and
 - (b) keep records of
 - (i) each grant of access including the reasons for granting access to an applicant, and
 - (ii) each denial or limitation of access, including the reasons for denying or limiting access to an applicant.
- (3) A marketplace must not
- (a) permit unreasonable discrimination among clients, issuers and marketplace participants; or
 - (b) impose any burden on competition that is not reasonably necessary and appropriate.
- 5.2 No Restrictions on Trading on Another Marketplace** – A marketplace shall not prohibit, condition, or otherwise limit, directly or indirectly, a marketplace participant from effecting a transaction on any marketplace.
- 5.3 Public Interest Rules**
- (1) Rules, policies and other similar instruments adopted by a recognized exchange or a recognized quotation and trade reporting system
- (a) shall not be contrary to the public interest; and
 - (b) shall be designed to
 - (i) ensure compliance with securities legislation,
 - (ii) prevent fraudulent and manipulative acts and practices,
 - (iii) promote just and equitable principles of trade, and
 - (iv) foster co-operation and co-ordination with persons or companies engaged in regulating, clearing, settling, processing information with respect to, and facilitating, transactions in securities.
- (2) **[repealed]**
- 5.4 Compliance Rules** – A recognized exchange or a recognized quotation and trade reporting system shall have rules or other similar instruments that
- (a) require compliance with securities legislation; and
 - (b) provide appropriate sanctions for violations of the rules or other similar instruments of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system.
- 5.5 Filing of Rules** – A recognized exchange or a recognized quotation and trade reporting system shall file all rules, policies and other similar instruments, and all amendments thereto.
- 5.6 [repealed]**
- 5.7 Fair and Orderly Markets** – A marketplace must ~~not engage in any activity that interferes~~ take all reasonable steps to ensure that its operations do not interfere with fair and orderly markets.
- 5.8 Discriminatory Terms** – A marketplace must not impose terms that have the effect of discriminating between orders that are routed to the marketplace and orders that are entered on that marketplace for execution.
-

5.9 Risk Disclosure for Trades in Foreign Exchange-Traded Securities

- (1) ~~When opening an account for a marketplace participant, a~~ marketplace that is trading foreign exchange-traded securities must provide ~~that each~~ marketplace participant with disclosure in substantially the following words:

"The securities traded by or through the marketplace are not listed on an exchange in Canada and may not be securities of a reporting issuer in Canada. As a result, there is no assurance that information concerning the issuer is available or, if the information is available, that it meets Canadian disclosure requirements."

- (2) Before the first order for a foreign exchange-traded security is entered onto the marketplace by a marketplace participant, the marketplace must obtain an acknowledgement from the marketplace participant that the marketplace participant has received the disclosure required in subsection (1).

5.10 Confidential Treatment of Trading Information

- (1) A marketplace must not release a marketplace participant's order or trade information to a person or company, other than the marketplace participant, a securities regulatory authority or a regulation services provider unless
- (a) the marketplace participant has consented in writing to the release of the information;
 - (b) the release of the information is required by this Instrument or under applicable law; or
 - (c) the information has been publicly disclosed by another person or company, and the disclosure was lawful.
- (2) A marketplace must not carry on business unless it has implemented reasonable safeguards and procedures to protect a marketplace participant's order or trade information, including
- (a) limiting access to order or trade information of marketplace participants to
 - (i) employees of the marketplace, or
 - (ii) persons or companies retained by the marketplace to operate the system or to be responsible for compliance by the marketplace with securities legislation; and
 - (b) implementing standards controlling trading by employees of the marketplace for their own accounts.
- (3) A marketplace must not carry on business as a marketplace unless it has implemented adequate oversight procedures to ensure that the safeguards and procedures established under subsection (2) are followed.

5.11 Management of Conflicts of Interest

A marketplace must establish, maintain and ensure compliance with policies and procedures that identify and manage any conflicts of interest arising from the operation of the marketplace or the services it provides.

5.12 Outsourcing

If a marketplace outsources any of its key services or systems to a service provider, which includes affiliates or associates of the marketplace, the marketplace must:

- (a) establish and maintain policies and procedures for the selection of service providers to which key services and systems may be outsourced and for the evaluation and approval of such outsourcing arrangements,
- (b) identify any conflicts of interest between the marketplace and the service provider to which key services and systems are outsourced, and establish and maintain policies and procedures to mitigate and manage such conflicts of interest,
- (c) enter into a contract with the service provider to which key services and systems are outsourced that is appropriate for the materiality and nature of the outsourced activities and that provides for adequate termination procedures,
- (d) maintain access to the books and records of the service providers relating to the outsourced activities,
- (e) ensure that the securities regulatory authorities have access to all data, information and systems maintained

by the service provider on behalf of the marketplace, for the purposes of determining the marketplace's compliance with securities legislation,

- (f) take appropriate measures to determine that service providers to which key services or systems are outsourced establish, maintain and periodically test an appropriate business continuity plan, including a disaster recovery plan,
- (g) take appropriate measures to ensure that the service providers protect the marketplace participants' proprietary, order, trade or any other confidential information, and
- (h) establish processes and procedures to regularly review the performance of the service provider under any such outsourcing arrangement.

PART 6 REQUIREMENTS APPLICABLE ONLY TO ATSs

6.1 Registration – An ATS shall not carry on business as an ATS unless

- (a) it is registered as a dealer;
- (b) it is a member of a self-regulatory entity; and
- (c) it complies with the provisions of this Instrument and NI 23-101.

6.2 Registration Exemption Not Available – Except as provided in this Instrument, the registration exemptions applicable to dealers under securities legislation are not available to an ATS.

6.3 Securities Permitted to be Traded on an ATS – An ATS shall not execute trades in securities other than

- (a) exchange-traded securities;
- (b) corporate debt securities;
- (c) government debt securities; or
- (d) foreign exchange-traded securities.

6.4 [repealed]

6.5 [repealed]

6.6 [repealed]

6.7 Notification of Threshold

- (1) An ATS must notify the securities regulatory authority in writing if,
 - (a) during at least two of the preceding three months of operation, the total dollar value of the trading volume on the ATS for a month in any type of security is equal to or greater than 10 percent of the total dollar value of the trading volume for the month in that type of security on all marketplaces in Canada;
 - (b) during at least two of the preceding three months of operation, the total trading volume on the ATS for a month in any type of security is equal to or greater than 10 percent of the total trading volume for the month in that type of security on all marketplaces in Canada; or
 - (c) during at least two of the preceding three months of operation, the number of trades on the ATS for a month in any type of security is equal to or greater than 10 percent of the number of trades for the month in that type of security on all marketplaces in Canada.
- (2) An ATS must provide the notice referred to in subsection (1) within 30 days after the threshold referred to in subsection (1) is met or exceeded.

6.8 [repealed]

6.9 Name – An ATS shall not use in its name the word "exchange", the words "stock market", the word "bourse" or any derivations of those terms.

6.10 [repealed]**6.11 Risk Disclosure to Non-Registered Subscribers**

(1) When opening an account for a subscriber that is not registered as a dealer under securities legislation, an ATS shall provide that subscriber with disclosure in substantially the following words:

Although the ATS is registered as a dealer under securities legislation, it is a marketplace and therefore does not ensure best execution for its subscribers.

(2) Before the first order submitted by a subscriber that is not registered as a dealer under securities legislation is entered onto the ATS by the subscriber, the ATS shall obtain an acknowledgement from that subscriber that the subscriber has received the disclosure required in subsection (1).

6.12 [repealed]**6.13 [repealed]****PART 7 INFORMATION TRANSPARENCY REQUIREMENTS FOR MARKETPLACES DEALING IN EXCHANGE-TRADED SECURITIES AND FOREIGN EXCHANGE-TRADED SECURITIES****7.1 Pre-Trade Information Transparency – Exchange-Traded Securities**

(1) A marketplace that displays orders of exchange-traded securities to a person or company shall provide accurate and timely information regarding orders for the exchange-traded securities displayed by the marketplace to an information processor as required by the information processor or, if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider.

(2) Subsection (1) does not apply if the marketplace only displays orders to its employees or to persons or companies retained by the marketplace to assist in the operation of the marketplace and if the orders posted on the marketplace meet the size threshold set by a regulation services provider.

7.2 Post-Trade Information Transparency – Exchange-Traded Securities – A marketplace shall provide accurate and timely information regarding trades for exchange-traded securities executed on the marketplace to an information processor as required by the information processor or, if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider.

7.3 Pre-Trade Information Transparency – Foreign Exchange-Traded Securities

(1) A marketplace that displays orders of foreign exchange-traded securities to a person or company shall provide accurate and timely information regarding orders for the foreign exchange-traded securities displayed by the marketplace to an information vendor.

(2) Subsection (1) does not apply if the marketplace only displays orders to its employees or to persons or companies retained by the marketplace to assist in the operation of the marketplace and if the orders posted on the marketplace meet the size threshold set by a regulation services provider.

7.4 Post-Trade Information Transparency – Foreign Exchange-Traded Securities – A marketplace shall provide accurate and timely information regarding trades for foreign exchange-traded securities executed on the marketplace to an information vendor.

7.5 Consolidated Feed – Exchange-Traded Securities – An information processor shall produce an accurate consolidated feed in real-time showing the information provided to the information processor under sections 7.1 and 7.2.

- 7.6 Compliance with Requirements of an Information Processor** – A marketplace that is subject to this Part shall comply with the reasonable requirements of the information processor to which it is required to provide information under this Part.

PART 8 INFORMATION TRANSPARENCY REQUIREMENTS FOR MARKETPLACES DEALING IN UNLISTED DEBT SECURITIES, INTER-DEALER BOND BROKERS AND DEALERS

8.1 Pre-Trade and Post-Trade Information Transparency Requirements – Government Debt Securities

- (1) A marketplace that displays orders of government debt securities to a person or company shall provide to an information processor accurate and timely information regarding orders for government debt securities displayed by the marketplace as required by the information processor.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply if the marketplace only displays orders to its employees or to persons or companies retained by the marketplace to assist in the operation of the marketplace.
- (3) A marketplace shall provide to an information processor accurate and timely information regarding details of trades of government debt securities executed on the marketplace as required by the information processor.
- (4) An inter-dealer bond broker shall provide to an information processor accurate and timely information regarding orders for government debt securities executed through the inter-dealer bond broker as required by the information processor.
- (5) An inter-dealer bond broker shall provide to an information processor accurate and timely information regarding details of trades of government debt securities executed through the interdealer bond broker as required by the information processor.

8.2 Pre-Trade and Post-Trade Information Transparency Requirements – Corporate Debt Securities

- (1) A marketplace that displays orders of corporate debt securities to a person or company shall provide accurate and timely information regarding orders for designated corporate debt securities displayed by the marketplace to an information processor, as required by the information processor, or if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider, as required by the regulation services provider.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply if the marketplace only displays orders to its employees or to persons or companies retained by the marketplace to assist in the operation of the marketplace.
- (3) A marketplace shall provide accurate and timely information regarding details of trades of designated corporate debt securities executed on the marketplace to an information processor, as required by the information processor, or if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider, as required by the regulation services provider.
- (4) An inter-dealer bond broker shall provide accurate and timely information regarding details of trades of designated corporate debt securities executed through the inter-dealer bond broker to an information processor, as required by the information processor, or if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider, as required by the regulation services provider.
- (5) A dealer executing trades of corporate debt securities outside of a marketplace shall provide accurate and timely information regarding details of trades of designated corporate debt securities traded by or through the dealer to an information processor, as required by the information processor, or if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider, as required by the regulation services provider.

- 8.3 Consolidated Feed – Unlisted Debt Securities** – An information processor shall produce an accurate consolidated feed in real-time showing the information provided to the information processor under sections 8.1 and 8.2.

- 8.4 Compliance with Requirements of an Information Processor** – A marketplace, interdealer bond broker or dealer that is subject to this Part shall comply with the reasonable requirements of the information processor to which it is required to provide information under this Part.

- 8.5 [repealed]**

8.6 Exemption for Government Debt Securities – Section 8.1 does not apply until January 1, 2015.

PART 9 [repealed]

PART 10 TRANSPARENCY OF MARKETPLACE OPERATIONS

10.1 Disclosure by Marketplaces – A marketplace must publicly disclose on its website information reasonably necessary to enable a person or company to understand the marketplace's operations or services it provides, including but not limited to information related to:

- (a) all fees, including any listing fees, trading fees, data fees, co-location and routing fees charged by the marketplace, an affiliate or by a third-party to which services have directly or indirectly been outsourced or which directly or indirectly provides those services;
- (b) how orders are entered, interact and execute;
- (c) all order types;
- (d) access requirements;
- (e) the policies and procedures that identify and manage any conflicts of interest arising from the operation of the marketplace or the services it provides;
- (f) any referral arrangements between the marketplace and service providers;
- (g) where routing is offered, how routing decisions are made; and
- (h) when indications of interest are disseminated, the information disseminated and the types of recipients of such indications of interest.

10.2 [repealed]

10.3 [repealed]

PART 11 RECORDKEEPING REQUIREMENTS FOR MARKETPLACES

11.1 Business Records – A marketplace shall keep such books, records and other documents as are reasonably necessary for the proper recording of its business in electronic form.

11.2 Other Records

- (1) As part of the records required to be maintained under section 11.1, a marketplace shall include the following information in electronic form:
 - (a) a record of all marketplace participants who have been granted access to trading in the marketplace;
 - (b) daily trading summaries for the marketplace including
 - (i) a list of securities traded,
 - (ii) transaction volumes
 - (A) for securities other than debt securities, expressed as the number of issues traded, number of trades, total unit volume and total dollar value of trades and, if the price of the securities traded is quoted in a currency other than Canadian dollars, the total value in that other currency, and
 - (B) for debt securities, expressed as the number of trades and total dollar value traded and, if the price of the securities traded is quoted in a currency other than Canadian dollars, the total value in that other currency,

-
- (c) a record of each order which must include
- (i) the order identifier assigned to the order by the marketplace,
 - (ii) the marketplace participant identifier assigned to the marketplace participant transmitting the order,
 - (iii) the identifier assigned to the marketplace where the order is received or originated,
 - (iv) each unique client identifier assigned to a client accessing the marketplace using direct electronic access,
 - (v) the type, issuer, class, series and symbol of the security,
 - (vi) the number of securities to which the order applies,
 - (vii) the strike date and strike price, if applicable,
 - (viii) whether the order is a buy or sell order,
 - (ix) whether the order is a short sale order, if applicable,
 - (x) whether the order is a market order, limit order or other type of order, and if the order is not a market order, the price at which the order is to trade,
 - (xi) the date and time the order is first originated or received by the marketplace,
 - (xii) whether the account is a retail, wholesale, employee, proprietary or any other type of account,
 - (xiii) the date and time the order expires,
 - (xiv) whether the order is an intentional cross,
 - (xv) whether the order is a jitney and if so, the identifier of the underlying broker,
 - (xvi) the currency of the order,
 - (xvii) whether the order is routed to another marketplace for execution, and the date, time and name of the marketplace to which the order was routed, and
 - (xviii) whether the order is a directed-action order, and ~~(xix) whether the marketplace or a marketplace participant has marked the order as a directed-action order or received the order marked as a directed-action order, and, and~~
- (d) in addition to the record maintained in accordance with paragraph (c), all execution report details of orders, including
- (i) the identifier assigned to the marketplace where the order was executed,
 - (ii) whether the order was fully or partially executed,
 - (iii) the number of securities bought or sold,
 - (iv) the date and time of the execution of the order,
 - (v) the price at which the order was executed,
 - (vi) the identifier assigned to the marketplace participant on each side of the trade,
 - (vii) whether the transaction was a cross,
 - (viii) time-sequenced records of all messages sent to or received from an information processor, an information vendor or a marketplace,
-

- (ix) the marketplace trading fee for each trade, and
- (x) each unique client identifier assigned to a client accessing the marketplace using direct electronic access.

11.2.1 Transmission in Electronic Form – A marketplace shall transmit

- (a) to a regulation services provider, if it has entered into an agreement with a regulation services provider in accordance with NI 23-101, the information required by the regulation services provider, within ten business days, in electronic form; and
- (b) to the securities regulatory authority the information required by the securities regulatory authority under securities legislation, within ten business days, in electronic form.

11.3 Record Preservation Requirements

- (1) For a period of not less than seven years from the creation of a record referred to in this section, and for the first two years in a readily accessible location, a marketplace shall keep
 - (a) all records required to be made under sections 11.1 and 11.2;
 - (b) at least one copy of its standards for granting access to trading, if any, all records relevant to its decision to grant, deny or limit access to a person or company and, if applicable, all other records made or received by the marketplace in the course of complying with section 5.1;
 - (c) at least one copy of all records made or received by the marketplace in the course of complying with section 12.1 and 12.4, including all correspondence, memoranda, papers, books, notices, accounts, reports, test scripts, test results, and other similar records;
 - (d) all written notices provided by the marketplace to marketplace participants generally, including notices addressing hours of system operations, system malfunctions, changes to system procedures, maintenance of hardware and software, instructions pertaining to access to the marketplace and denials of, or limitation to, access to the marketplace;
 - (e) the acknowledgement obtained under subsection 5.9(2) or 6.11(2);
 - (f) a copy of any agreement referred to in section 8.4 of NI 23-101; and
 - (g) a copy of any agreement referred to in subsections 13.1(2) and 13.1(3).
- (2) During the period in which a marketplace is in existence, the marketplace shall keep
 - (a) all organizational documents, minute books and stock certificate books;
 - (b) copies of all forms filed under Part 3; and
 - (c) in the case of an ATS, copies of all notices given under section 6.7.

11.4 [repealed]

11.5 Synchronization of Clocks

- (1) A marketplace trading exchange-traded securities or foreign exchange-traded securities, an information processor receiving information about those securities, and a dealer trading those securities shall synchronize the clocks used for recording or monitoring the time and date of any event that must be recorded under this Part and under NI 23-101 with the clock used by a regulation services provider monitoring the activities of marketplaces and marketplace participants trading those securities.
- (2) A marketplace trading corporate debt securities or government debt securities, an information processor receiving information about those securities, a dealer trading those securities, and an inter-dealer bond broker trading those securities shall synchronize the clocks used for recording or monitoring the time and date of any event that must be recorded under this Part and under NI 23-101 with the clock used by a regulation services provider monitoring the activities of marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers or dealers trading those securities.

PART 12 MARKETPLACE SYSTEMS AND BUSINESS CONTINUITY PLANNING

12.1 System Requirements – For each of its systems that support order entry, order routing, execution, trade reporting, trade comparison, data feeds, market surveillance and trade clearing, a marketplace shall

- (a) develop and maintain
 - (i) an adequate system of internal control over those systems; and
 - (ii) adequate information technology general controls, including without limitation, controls relating to information systems operations, information security, change management, problem management, network support and system software support;
- (b) in accordance with prudent business practice, on a reasonably frequent basis and, in any event, at least annually,
 - (i) make reasonable current and future capacity estimates;
 - (ii) conduct capacity stress tests to determine the ability of those systems to process transactions in an accurate, timely and efficient manner; and
- (c) promptly notify the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority and, if applicable, its regulation services provider, of any material systems failure, malfunction or delay.

12.2 System Reviews

- (1) For each of its systems that support order entry, order routing, execution, trade reporting, trade comparison, data feeds, market surveillance and trade clearing, a marketplace shall annually engage a qualified party to conduct an independent systems review and prepare a report in accordance with established audit standards to ensure that it is in compliance with paragraph 12.1(a) and section 12.4.
- (2) A marketplace shall provide the report resulting from the review conducted under subsection (1) to
 - (a) its board of directors, or audit committee, promptly upon the report's completion, and
 - (b) to the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, within 30 days of providing the report to its board of directors or the audit committee.

12.3 Availability of Technology Requirements and Testing Facilities

- (1) A marketplace shall make publicly available all technology requirements regarding interfacing with or accessing the marketplace in their final form,
 - (a) if operations have not begun, for at least three months immediately before operations begin; and
 - (b) if operations have begun, for at least three months before implementing a material change to its technology requirements.
- (2) After complying with subsection (1), a marketplace shall make available testing facilities for interfacing with or accessing the marketplace,
 - (a) if operations have not begun, for at least two months immediately before operations begin; and
 - (b) if operations have begun, for at least two months before implementing a material change to its technology requirements.
- (3) A marketplace shall not begin operations until it has complied with paragraphs (1)(a) and (2)(a).
- (4) ~~Subsections~~Paragraphs 12.3(1)(b) and (2)(b) do not apply to a marketplace if the change must be made immediately to address a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems or equipment if
 - (a) the marketplace immediately notifies the regulator, or in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, and, if applicable, its regulation services provider of its intention to make the change; and

- (b) the marketplace publishes the changed technology requirements as soon as practicable.

12.4 Business Continuity Planning

- (1) A marketplace must develop and maintain reasonable business continuity plans, including disaster recovery plans.
- (2) A marketplace must test its business continuity plans, including disaster recovery plans, on a reasonably frequent basis and, in any event, at least annually.

PART 13 MARKETPLACE CLEARING AND SETTLEMENT

13.1 Clearing and Settlement

- (1) All trades executed on a marketplace shall be reported to and settled through a clearing agency.
- (2) For a trade executed through an ATS by a subscriber that is registered as a dealer under securities legislation, the ATS and its subscriber shall enter into an agreement that specifies whether the trade shall be reported and settled by
 - (a) the ATS;
 - (b) the subscriber; or
 - (c) an agent for the subscriber that is a clearing member of a clearing agency.
- (3) For a trade executed through an ATS by a subscriber that is not registered as a dealer under securities legislation, an ATS and its subscriber shall enter into an agreement that specifies whether the trade shall be reported and settled by
 - (a) the ATS; or
 - (b) an agent for the subscriber that is a clearing member of a clearing agency.

PART 14 REQUIREMENTS FOR AN INFORMATION PROCESSOR

14.1 Filing Requirements for an Information Processor

- (1) A person or company that intends to carry on business as an information processor shall file Form 21-101F5 at least 90 days before the information processor begins to carry on business as an information processor.
- (2) [repealed]

14.2 Change in Information

- (1) At least 45 days before implementing a significant change involving a matter set out in Form 21-101F5, an information processor shall file an amendment to the information provided in Form 21-101F5 in the manner set out in Form 21-101F5.
- (2) If an information processor implements a change involving a matter set out in Form 21-101F5, other than a change referred to in subsection (1), the information processor shall, within 30 days after the end of the calendar quarter in which the change takes place, file an amendment to the information provided in Form 21-101F5 in the manner set out in Form 21-101F5.

14.3 Ceasing to Carry on Business as an Information Processor

- (1) If an information processor intends to cease carrying on business as an information processor, the information processor shall file a report on Form 21-101F6 at least 30 days before ceasing to carry on that business.
- (2) If an information processor involuntarily ceases to carry on business as an information processor, the information processor shall file a report on Form 21-101F6 as soon as practicable after it ceases to carry on that business.

14.4 Requirements Applicable to an Information Processor

- (1) An information processor shall enter into an agreement with each marketplace, inter-dealer bond broker and dealer that is required to provide information to the information processor that the marketplace, inter-dealer bond broker or dealer will
 - (a) provide information to the information processor in accordance with Part 7 or 8, as applicable; and
 - (b) comply with any other reasonable requirements set by the information processor.
- (2) An information processor shall provide timely, accurate, reliable and fair collection, processing, distribution and publication of information for orders for, and trades in, securities.
- (3) An information processor shall keep such books, records and other documents as are reasonably necessary for the proper recording of its business.
- (4) An information processor shall establish in a timely manner an electronic connection to a marketplace, inter-dealer bond broker or dealer that is required to provide information to the information processor.
- (5) An information processor shall provide prompt and accurate order and trade information and shall not unreasonably restrict fair access to such information.
- (6) An information processor must file annual audited financial statements within 90 days after the end of its financial year that
 - (a) are prepared in accordance with Canadian GAAP applicable to publicly accountable enterprises, Canadian GAAP applicable to private enterprises or IFRS,
 - (b) include notes to the financial statements that identify the accounting principles used to prepare the financial statements, and
 - (c) are audited in accordance with Canadian GAAS or International Standards on Auditing and are accompanied by an auditor's report.
- (7) An information processor must file its financial budget within 30 days after the start of a financial year.
- (8) An information processor must file, within 30 days after the end of each calendar quarter, the process and criteria for the selection of government debt securities, as applicable, and designated corporate debt securities and the list of government debt securities, as applicable, and designated corporate debt securities.
- (9) An information processor must file, within 30 days after the end of each calendar year, the process to communicate the designated securities to the marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers and dealers providing the information required by the Instrument, including where the list of designated securities can be found.

14.5 System Requirements – An information processor shall,

- (a) develop and maintain
 - (i) an adequate system of internal controls over its critical systems; and
 - (ii) adequate information technology general controls, including, without limitation, controls relating to information systems operations, information security, change management, problem management, network support, and system software support;
- (b) in accordance with prudent business practice, on a reasonably frequent basis and in any event, at least annually,
 - (i) make reasonable current and future capacity estimates for each of its systems; and
 - (ii) conduct capacity stress tests of its critical systems to determine the ability of those systems to process information in an accurate, timely and efficient manner;
- (c) annually engage a qualified party to conduct an independent systems review and prepare a report in

accordance with established audit standards to ensure that it is in compliance with paragraph (a) and section 14.6;

- (d) provide the report resulting from the review conducted under paragraph (c) to
 - (i) its board of directors or the audit committee promptly upon the report's completion, and
 - (ii) the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, within 30 days of providing it to the board of directors or the audit committee; and
- (e) promptly notify the following of any failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems or equipment
 - (i) the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority; and
 - (ii) any regulation services provider, recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system monitoring trading of the securities about which information is provided to the information processor.

14.6 Business Continuity Planning

- (1) An information processor must develop and maintain reasonable business continuity plans, including disaster recovery plans.
- (2) An information processor must test its business continuity plans, including disaster recovery plans, on a reasonably frequent basis and, in any event, at least annually.

14.7 Confidential Treatment of Trading Information

An information processor must not release order and trade information to a person or company other than the marketplace, inter-dealer bond broker or dealer that provided this information in accordance with this Instrument, or other than a securities regulatory authority, unless:

- (a) the release of that information is required by this Instrument or under applicable law; or
- (b) the information processor received prior approval from the securities regulatory authority.

14.8 Transparency of Operations of an Information Processor

An information processor must publicly disclose on its website information reasonably necessary to enable a person or company to understand the information processor's operations or services it provides including, but not limited to:

- (a) all fees charged by the information processor for the consolidated data;
- (b) a description of the process and criteria for the selection of government debt securities, as applicable, and designated corporate debt securities and the list of government debt securities, as applicable, and designated corporate debt securities;
- (c) access requirements; and
- (d) the policies and procedures to manage conflicts of interest that may arise in the operation of the information processor.

PART 15 EXEMPTION

15.1 Exemption

- (1) The regulator or the securities regulatory authority may grant an exemption from this Instrument, in whole or in part, subject to such conditions or restrictions as may be imposed in the exemption.
- (2) Despite subsection (1), in Ontario, only the regulator may grant such an exemption.

**FORM 21-101F1
INFORMATION STATEMENT
EXCHANGE OR QUOTATION AND TRADE REPORTING SYSTEM**

Filer: ☐ **EXCHANGE** ☐ **QUOTATION AND TRADE REPORTING SYSTEM**

Type of Filing: ☐ **INITIAL** ☐ **AMENDMENT**

1. Full name of exchange or quotation and trade reporting system:
2. Name(s) under which business is conducted, or name of market or facility, if different from item 1:
3. If this filing makes a name change on behalf of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system in respect of the name set out in item 1 or item 2, enter the previous name and the new name:

Previous name:

New name:

4. Head office

Address:

Telephone:

Facsimile:

5. Mailing address (if different):

6. Other offices

Address:

Telephone:

Facsimile:

7. Website address:

8. Contact employee

Name and title:

Telephone number:

Facsimile:

E-mail address:

9. Counsel

Firm name:

Contact name:

Telephone number:

Facsimile:

E-mail address:

10. Market Regulation is being conducted by:
- ☐ the exchange
 - ☐ the quotation and trade reporting system
 - ☐ regulation services provider other than the filer (see Exhibit M)

EXHIBITS

File all Exhibits with the Filing. For each Exhibit, include the name of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system, the date of filing of the Exhibit and the date as of which the information is accurate (if different from the date of the filing). If any Exhibit required is inapplicable, a statement to that effect shall be furnished instead of such Exhibit.

If Except as provided below, if the filer, recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system files an amendment to the information provided in its Filing and the information relates to an Exhibit filed with the Filing or a subsequent amendment, the filer, recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system, must, in order to comply with subsections 2-23.2(1), 2-23.2(2) or 2-23.2(3) of National Instrument 21-101, provide a description of the change, the expected date of the implementation of the change, and file a complete and updated Exhibit. The filer should must provide a clean and a blacklined version showing changes from the previous filing.

If the filer, recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system has otherwise filed the information required by the previous paragraph pursuant to section 5.5 of National Instrument 21-101, it is not required to file the information again as an amendment to an Exhibit. However, if supplementary material relating to a filed rule is contained in an Exhibit, an amendment to the Exhibit must also be filed.

Exhibit A – Corporate Governance

1. Legal status:
 - ☐ Corporation
 - ☐ Partnership
 - ☐ Sole Proprietorship
 - ☐ Other (specify):
2. Except where the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system is a sole proprietorship, indicate the following:
 1. Date (DD/MM/YYYY) of formation₂
 2. Place of formation₂
 3. Statute under which exchange or quotation and trade reporting system was organized.
3. Provide a copy of the constating documents (including corporate by-laws), shareholder agreements, partnership agreements and other similar documents, and all subsequent amendments.
4. Provide the policies and procedures to address potential conflicts of interest arising from the operation of the marketplace or the services it provides, including those related to the commercial interest of the marketplace, the interests of its owners and its operators, the responsibilities and sound functioning of the marketplace, and those between the operations of the marketplace and its regulatory responsibilities.

Exhibit B – Ownership

A list of the registered or beneficial holders of securities of, partnership interests in, or other ownership interests in, the exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system. For each of the persons listed in the Exhibit, please provide the following:

1. Name.
2. Principal business or occupation and title.
3. Ownership interest.
4. Nature of the ownership interest, including a description of the type of security, partnership interest or other ownership interest, and whether the ownership interest is a legal or beneficial interest.
5. Whether the person has control (as interpreted in subsection 1.3(2) of National Instrument 21-101 *Marketplace Operation*).

In the case of an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system that is publicly traded, if the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system is a corporation, please only provide a list of each shareholder that directly owns five percent or more of a class of a voting security of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system.

Exhibit C – Organization

1. A list of partners, directors, officers, governors, and members of the board of directors and any standing committees of the board, or persons performing similar functions, who presently hold or have held their offices or positions during the previous year, indicating the following for each:
 1. Name.
 2. Principal business or occupation and title and length of time position held.
 3. Dates of commencement and expiry of present term of office or position.
 4. Type of business in which each is primarily engaged (e.g. sales, trading, market making, etc.) and current employer.
 5. Type of business in which each was primarily engaged in the preceding five years, if different from that set out in item 4.
 6. Whether the person is considered to be an independent director.
2. A list of the committees of the board, including their mandates.

Exhibit D – Affiliates

1. For each affiliated entity of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system provide the name, head office address and describe the principal business of the affiliate.
2. ~~Provide the information below for~~ For each affiliated entity of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system
 - (i) to which the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system has outsourced any of its key services or systems affecting the market or facility described in Exhibit E – *Operation Operations of the Marketplace*, including order entry, trading, execution, routing and data, or
 - (ii) with which the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system has any other material business relationship, including loans, cross-guarantees, etc.

provide the following information:

- i. 1. Name and address of the affiliate.
- ii. 2. The name and title of the directors and officers, or persons performing similar functions, of the affiliate.
- iii. 3. A description of the nature and extent of the contractual and other agreements with the exchange and quotation and trade reporting system, and the roles and responsibilities of the affiliate under the arrangement.
- iv. 4. A copy of each material contract relating to any outsourced functions or other material

~~relationship~~relationships.

- ~~v.5.~~ Copies of constating documents (including corporate by-laws), shareholder agreements, partnership agreements and other similar documents.
- ~~vi.6.~~ For the latest financial year of the affiliated entity, financial statements, which may be unaudited, prepared in accordance with:
 - a. Canadian GAAP applicable to publicly accountable enterprises; or
 - b. Canadian GAAP applicable to private enterprises; or
 - c. IFRS.

Where the affiliated entity is incorporated or organized under the laws of a foreign jurisdiction, such financial statements may also be prepared in accordance with:

- ~~1.a.~~ U.S. GAAP; or
- ~~2.b.~~ accounting principles of a designated foreign jurisdiction as defined under National Instrument 52-107 *Acceptable Accounting Principles and Auditing Standards*.

Exhibit E – OperationOperations of the Marketplace

Describe in detail the manner of operation of the market or facility and its associated functions. This should include, but not be limited to, a description of the following:

1. The structure of the market (e.g., call market, auction market, dealer market).
2. Means of access to the market or facility and services, including a description of any co-location arrangements.
3. The hours of operation.
4. A description of the services offered by the marketplace, including, but not limited to, order entry ~~including~~, co-location, trading, execution, routing and data.
5. A list of the types of orders offered, including, but not limited to, a description of the features and characteristics of orders.
6. Procedures regarding the entry, display and execution of orders. If indications of interest are used, please describe the information they include and list the types of recipients.
7. Description of how orders interact, including ~~how~~, but not limited to, ~~the priority is allocated between orders of execution for all order types~~.
8. Description of order routing procedures.
9. Description of order and trade reporting procedures.
10. Description of procedures for clearance and settlement of transactions.
11. The safeguards and procedures of the marketplace to protect trading information of marketplace participants.
12. Training provided to participants and a copy of any materials provided both with respect to systems of the marketplace, the requirements of the marketplace, and the rules of the regulation services providers, if applicable.
13. Steps taken to ensure that marketplace participants have knowledge of and comply with the requirements of the marketplace.

The filer ~~should~~must provide all policies, procedures and trading manuals related to the operation of the marketplace and, if applicable, the order router. ~~If the marketplace is already filing these documents pursuant to section 14.3 of the Instrument, these need not be filed again.~~

Exhibit F – Outsourcing

Where the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system has outsourced the operation of key services or systems affecting the market or facility described in Exhibit E – ~~Operation~~Operations of the Marketplace to an arms-length third party, including any function associated with the order entry, trading, execution, routing and data, provide the following information:

1. Name and address of person or company to whom the function has been outsourced.
2. A description of the nature and extent of the contractual or other agreement with the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system and the roles and responsibilities of the arms-length party under the arrangement.
3. A copy of each material contract relating to any outsourced function.

Exhibit G – Systems and Contingency Planning

For each of the systems that support order entry, order routing, execution, trade reporting, trade comparison, data feed, market surveillance, and trade clearing, describe:

1. Current and future capacity estimates.
2. Procedures for reviewing system capacity.
3. Procedures for reviewing system security.
4. Procedures to conduct stress tests.
5. A description of the filer's business continuity and disaster recovery plans, including any relevant documentation.
6. Procedures to test business continuity and disaster recovery plans.

Exhibit H – Custody of Assets

1. If the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system proposes to hold funds or securities of a marketplace participant on a regular basis, a description of the controls that will be implemented to ensure the safety of the funds or securities.
2. If any other person or company, other than the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system, will hold or safeguard funds or securities of a marketplace participant on a regular basis, provide the name of the person or company and a description of the controls that will be implemented to ensure the safety of the funds or securities.

Exhibit I – Securities

1. List the types of securities listed on the exchange or quoted on the quotation and trade reporting system. If this is an initial filing, list the types of securities the Filer expects to list or quote.
2. List the types of any other securities that are traded on the marketplace or quoted on the quotation and trade reporting system, indicating the exchange(s) on which such securities are listed. If this is an initial filing, list the types of securities the Filer expects to trade.

Exhibit J – Access to Services

1. A complete set of all forms, agreements or other materials pertaining to access to the services of the marketplace described in Exhibit E.4, including trading on the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system.
2. Describe the classes of marketplace participants.
3. Describe the exchange or quotation and trade reporting service's criteria for access to the services of the marketplace.

4. Describe any differences in access to the services offered by the marketplace to different groups or classes of marketplace participants.
5. Describe conditions under which marketplace participants may be subject to suspension or termination with regard to access to the services of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting services~~system~~.
6. Describe any procedures that will be involved in the suspension or termination of a marketplace participant.
7. Describe the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system's arrangements for permitting clients of marketplace participants to have access to the marketplace. Provide a copy of any agreements or documentation relating to these arrangements.

Exhibit K – Marketplace Participants

Provide an alphabetical list of all marketplace participants, including the following information:

1. Name.
2. Date of becoming a marketplace participant.
3. Describe the type of trading activities primarily engaged in by the marketplace participant (e.g., agency ~~trader~~trading, proprietary ~~trader~~trading, registered ~~trader~~trading, market makingmaker). ~~A person shall be “primarily engaged in an activity or function for the purposes of this item when that activity or function is the one in which that person is engaged for the majority of their time. When more than one type of person at an entity engages in any of the activities or functions enumerated in this item, identify each type (e.g. agency trades, registered trader and market marker) and state the number of marketplace participants in each.~~
4. The class of participation or other access.
5. Provide a list of all persons or entities that were denied or limited access to the marketplace, indicating for each:
 - (i) whether they were denied or limited access;
 - (ii) the date the marketplace took such action;
 - (iii) the effective date of such action; and
 - (iv) the nature and reason ~~off~~for any denial or limitation of access.

Exhibit L – Fees

A description of the fee model and all fees charged by the marketplace, or by a third-party to whom which services have been directly or indirectly outsourced or ~~which provides these services~~, including, but not limited to, fees relating to connecting to the market or facility, access, data, regulation (if applicable), trading, routing, and co-location, ~~and how such fees are set, and any fee rebates or discounts and how the rebates and discounts are set.~~

Exhibit M – Regulation

Market Regulation is being conducted by:

☐ the exchange or QTRS

1. Provide a description of the regulation performed by the exchange or QTRS, including the structure of the department performing regulation, how the department is funded, policies and procedures in place to ensure confidentiality and the management of conflicts of interest, and policies and procedures relating to conducting an investigation.
2. If more than one entity is performing regulation services for a type of security and the filer is conducting market regulation for itself and its members, provide the contract between the filer and the regulation services provider providing for co-ordinated monitoring and enforcement under section 7.5 of National Instrument 23-101 *Trading Rules*.

☐ a regulation services provider other than the filer (provide a copy of the contract between the filer and the regulation services provider.)

Exhibit N – Acknowledgement

The form of acknowledgement required by subsection 5.9(2) of National Instrument 21-101.

CERTIFICATE OF EXCHANGE OR QUOTATION AND TRADE REPORTING SYSTEM

The undersigned certifies that the information given in this report is true and correct.

DATED at _____ this _____ day of _____ 20 _____

(Name of exchange or quotation and trade reporting system)

(Name of director, officer or partner – please type or print)

(Signature of director, officer or partner)

(Official capacity – please type or print)

**FORM 21-101F2
INITIAL OPERATION REPORT
ALTERNATIVE TRADING SYSTEM**

TYPE OF FILING:

☐ **INITIAL OPERATION REPORT** ☐ **AMENDMENT**

Identification:

1. Full name of alternative trading system:

2. Name(s) under which business is conducted, if different from item 1:

3. If this filing makes a name change on behalf of the alternative trading system in respect of the name set out in Item 1 or Item 2, enter the previous name and the new name.

Previous name:

New name:
4. Head office

Address:

Telephone:

Facsimile:
5. Mailing address (if different):
6. Other offices

Address:

Telephone:

Facsimile:
7. Website address:
8. Contact employee

Name and title:

Telephone number:

Facsimile:

E-mail address:
9. Counsel

Firm name:

Contact name:

Telephone number:

Facsimile:

E-mail address:

10. The ATS is

☐ a member of _____ (name of the recognized self-regulatory entity)

☐ a registered dealer

11. If this is an initial operation report, the date the alternative trading system expects to commence operation:

12. The ATS has contracted with [regulation services provider] to perform market regulation for the ATS and its subscribers.

EXHIBITS

File all Exhibits with the Initial Operation Report. For each Exhibit, include the name of the ATS, the date of filing of the Exhibit and the date as of which the information is accurate (if different from the date of the filing). If any Exhibit required is inapplicable, a statement to that effect shall be furnished instead of such Exhibit.

If the ATS files an amendment to the information provided in its Initial Operation Report and the information relates to an Exhibit filed with the Initial Operation Report or a subsequent amendment, the ATS must, in order to comply with subsection 2.23.2(1), 2.23.2(2) or 2.23.2(3) of National Instrument 21-101, provide a description of the change, the expected date of the implementation of the change, and file a complete and updated Exhibit. The ATS ~~should~~must provide a clean and blacklined version showing changes from the previous filing.

Exhibit A – Corporate Governance

1. Legal status:

☐ Corporation

☐ Partnership

☐ Sole Proprietorship

☐ Other (specify):

2. Except where the ATS is a sole proprietorship, indicate the following:

1. Date (DD/MM/YYYY) of formation.

2. Place of formation.

3. Statute under which the ATS was organized.

3. Provide a copy of the constating documents (including corporate by-laws), shareholder agreements, partnership agreements and other similar documents, and all subsequent amendments.

4. Provide the policies and procedures to address conflicts of interest arising from the operation of the marketplace or the services it provides, including those related to the commercial interest of the marketplace, the interests of its owners and its operators, and the responsibilities and sound functioning of the marketplace.

Exhibit B – Ownership

A list of the registered or beneficial holders of securities of, partnership interests in, or other ownership interests in, the ATS. For each of the persons listed in the Exhibit, please provide the following:

1. Name₂

2. Principal business or occupation and title₂

3. Ownership interest₂
4. Nature of the ownership interest, including a description of the type of security, partnership interest or other ownership interest, and whether the ownership interest is a legal or beneficial interest₂
5. Whether the person has control (as interpreted in subsection 1.3(2) of National Instrument 21-101 *Marketplace Operation*)₂

In the case of an ATS that is publicly traded, if the ATS is a corporation, please only provide a list of each shareholder that directly owns five percent or more of a class of a voting security of the ATS.

Exhibit C – Organization

1. A list of partners, directors, officers, governors, and members of the board of directors and any standing committees of the board, or persons performing similar functions, who presently hold or have held their offices or positions during the previous year, indicating the following for each:
 1. Name₂
 2. Principal business or occupation and title₂
 3. Dates of commencement and expiry of present term of office or position ~~and length of time position held~~₂
 4. Type of business in which each is primarily engaged ~~(e.g. sales, trading, market making, etc.)~~ and current employer₂
 5. Type of business in which each was primarily engaged in the preceding five years, if different from that set out in item 4.
 6. Whether the person is considered to be an independent director₂
2. A list of the committees of the board, including their ~~mandate~~mandates.

Exhibit D – Affiliates

1. For each affiliated entity of the ATS provide the name, head office address and describe the principal business of the affiliate.
2. ~~Provide the information below for~~For each affiliated entity of the ATS
 - (i) to which the ATS has outsourced any of its key services or systems affecting the market or facility described in Exhibit E – ~~Operation~~Operations of the Marketplace, including order entry, trading, execution, routing and data, or
 - (ii) with which the ATS has any other material business relationship, including loans, cross-guarantees, etc.

provide the following information:

- i.1. Name and address of the affiliate.
- ii.2. The name and title of the directors and officers, or persons performing similar functions, of the affiliate.
- iii.3. A description of the nature and extent of the contractual and other agreement with the exchange and quotation and trade reporting system, and the roles and responsibilities of the affiliate under the arrangement.
- iv.4. A copy of each material contract relating to any outsourced functions or other material relationship.
- v.5. Copies of constating documents (including corporate by-laws), shareholder agreements, partnership agreements and other similar documents.

Exhibit E – OperationOperations of the Marketplace

Describe in detail the manner of operation of the market and its associated functions. This should include, but not be limited to, a description of the following:

1. The structure of the market (e.g., call market, auction market, dealer market).
2. Means of access to the market or facility and services, including a description of any co-location arrangements.
3. The hours of operation.
4. A description of the services offered by the marketplace including, but not limited to, order entry including co-location, trading, execution, routing and data.
5. A list of the types of orders offered, including, but not limited to, a description of the features and characteristics of orders.
6. Procedures regarding the entry, display and execution of orders. If indications of interest are used, please describe the information they include and list the types of recipients.
7. Description of how orders interact, including ~~how~~, but not limited to, the priority is allocated between orders of execution for all order types.
8. Description of order routing procedures.
9. Description of order and trade reporting procedures.
10. Description of procedures for clearance and settlement of transactions.
11. The safeguards and procedures of the marketplace to protect trading information of marketplace participants.
12. Training provided to participants and a copy of any materials provided both with respect to systems of the marketplace, the requirements of the marketplace, and the rules of the regulation services providers, if applicable.
13. Steps taken to ensure that marketplace participants have knowledge of and comply with the requirements of the marketplace.

The filer ~~should~~must provide all policies, procedures and trading manuals related to the operation of the marketplace and, if applicable, the order router.

Exhibit F – Outsourcing

Where the ATS has outsourced the operation of key services or systems affecting the market or facility described in Exhibit E – OperationOperations of the Marketplace to an arms-length third party, including any function associated with the routing, trading, execution, clearing and settlement, and co-location, provide the following information:

1. Name and address of person or company to whom the function has been outsourced.
2. A description of the nature and extent of the contractual or other agreement with the ATS and the roles and responsibilities of the arms-length party under the arrangement.
3. A copy of each material contract relating to any outsourced function.

Exhibit G – Systems and Contingency Planning

For each of the systems that support order entry, order routing, execution, trade reporting, trade comparison, data feed, market surveillance, and trade clearing, describe:

1. Current and future capacity estimates.
2. Procedures for reviewing system capacity.

3. Procedures for reviewing system security.
4. Procedures to conduct stress tests.
5. A description of the filer's business continuity and disaster recovery plans, including any relevant documentation.
6. Procedures to test business continuity and disaster recovery plans.

Exhibit H – Custody of Assets

1. If the ATS proposes to hold funds or securities of a marketplace participant on a regular basis, a description of the controls that will be implemented to ensure the safety of the funds or securities.
2. If any other person or company, other than the ATS, will hold or safeguard funds or securities of a marketplace participant on a regular basis, provide the name of the person or company and a description of the controls that will be implemented to ensure the safety of the funds or securities.

Exhibit I – Securities

A list of ~~list~~ the types of any other securities that are traded on the ATS, indicating the exchange(s) on which such securities are listed. If this is an initial operation report, filing, list the types of securities the ATS expects to trade.

Exhibit J – Access to Services

1. A complete set of all forms, agreements or other materials pertaining to participation in the services of the marketplace described in Exhibit E.4, including trading on the ATS.
2. Describe the classes of marketplace participants (i.e. dealer, institution, or retail).
3. Describe the ATS's criteria for access to the services of the marketplace.
4. Describe any differences in access to the services offered by the marketplace to different groups or classes of marketplace participants.
5. Describe conditions under which marketplace participants may be subject to suspension or termination with regard to access to the services of the ATS.
6. Describe any procedures that will be involved in the suspension or termination of a marketplace participant.
7. Describe the ATS's arrangements for permitting clients of marketplace participants to have access to the marketplace. Provide a copy of any agreements or documentation relating to these arrangements.

Exhibit K – Marketplace Participants

Provide an alphabetical list of all marketplace participants, including the following information:

1. Name.
2. Date of becoming a marketplace participant.
3. Describe the type of trading activities primarily engaged in by the marketplace participant (e.g., agency ~~tradertrading~~, proprietary ~~tradertrading~~, registered ~~tradertrading~~, market ~~makingmaker~~). ~~A person shall be "primarily engaged in an activity of function for the purposes of this item when that activity or function is the one in which that person is engaged for the majority of their time. When more than one type of person at an entity engages in any of the activities or functions enumerated in this item, identify each type (e.g. agency trades, registered trader and market marker) and state the number of marketplace participants in each.~~
4. The class of participation or other access.
5. Provide a list of all persons or entities that were denied or limited access to the marketplace, indicating for each:

- (i) whether they were denied or limited access;
- (ii) the date the marketplace took such action;
- (iii) ~~The~~the effective date of such action; and
- (iv) ~~The~~the nature and reason ~~off~~for any denial or limitation of access.

Exhibit L – Fees

A description of the fee model and all fees charged by the marketplace, or by a third-party to whom services have been directly or indirectly outsourced ~~or which provides those services~~, including, but not limited to, fees relating to connecting to the market or facility, access, data, regulation (if applicable), trading, routing, and co-location, ~~and how such fees are set and any fee rebates or discounts and how the rebates or discounts are set.~~

Exhibit M – Regulation

The ATS has contracted with regulation ~~services~~services provider _____ to perform market regulation for ATS and its subscribers. Provide a copy of the contract between the filer and the regulation services provider.

Exhibit N – Acknowledgement

The form of acknowledgement required by subsections ~~6-105.9~~6.9(2) and 6.11(2) of National Instrument 21-101.

CERTIFICATE OF ALTERNATIVE TRADING SYSTEM

The undersigned certifies that the information given in this report is true and correct.

DATED at _____ this _____ day of _____ 20____

(Name of alternative trading system)

(Name of director, officer or partner – please type or print)

(Signature of director, officer or partner)

(Official capacity – please type or print)

Form 21-101F3
QUARTERLY REPORT OF MARKETPLACE ACTIVITIES

A. General Marketplace Information

1. Marketplace Name:
2. Period covered by this report:
3. Identification
 - A. Full name of marketplace (if sole proprietor, last, first and middle name):
 - B. Name(s) under which business is conducted, if different from item A:
 - C. Marketplace main street address:
4. Attach as **Exhibit A** a current list of all marketplace participants at the end of the period covered by this report, identifying those market participants that are using the marketplace's co-location services, if any. For each marketplace participant, indicate the number of trader IDs that may access the marketplace.
5. Attach as **Exhibit B** a list of all marketplace participants granted, denied or limited access to the marketplace during the period covered by this report, indicating for each marketplace participant: (a) whether they were granted, denied or limited access; (b) the date the marketplace took such action; (c) the effective date of such action; and (d) the nature of any denial or limitation of access.
6. A list of all amendments in the information in Form 21-101F1 or 21-101F2 that were filed with the Canadian securities regulatory authorities and implemented during the period covered by the report. The list must include a brief description of each amendment, including the date filed and amendment number the date implemented.
7. A list of all amendments in the information in Form 21-101F1 or 21-101F2 that ~~were~~have been filed with the Canadian securities regulatory authorities and ~~not implemented, including a description of the reason for which they were not implemented. The amendments should include those filed during the period covered by the report, and cumulatively, as at but not implemented as of~~ the end of the period covered by the report. The list must include a brief description of each amendment, the date filed and the reason why it was not implemented.
8. Systems – If any outages occurred at any time during the period for any system relating to trading activity, including trading, routing or data, provide the date, duration and reason for the outage.

B. Marketplace Activity Information**Section 1 – Marketplaces Trading Exchange-Listed Securities**

1. **General trading activity** – For each type of security traded on the marketplace, provide the details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 1**. The information should be provided for transactions executed at the opening of the market, during regular trading hours, and after hours during the quarter. Enter "None", "N/A", or "0" where appropriate.

Chart 1 – General trading activity for marketplaces trading exchange-listed securities

Category of Securities	Volume		Value		Number of Trades	
	Transparent	Non-transparent	Transparent	Non-transparent	Transparent	Non-transparent
Exchange-Traded Securities						
1. Equity (includes preferred shares)						

2. Exchange-traded funds (ETFs)						
3. Debt securities						
4. Options						
Foreign Exchange-Traded Securities						
1. Equity (includes preferred shares)						
2. ETFs						
3. Debt securities						
4. Options						

2. **Crosses** – Provide the details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 2** below for each type of cross executed on the marketplace for trades executed at the opening of the market, during regular trading and after hours during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 2 – Crosses

Types of Crosses	% Volume	% Value	% Number of Trades
% of exchange-traded securities that are			
1. Intentional Crosses ¹			
2. Internal crosses			
3. Other crosses			

3. **Order information** – Provide the details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 3** below for each type of order in exchange traded securities executed on the marketplace for orders entered at the opening of the market, during regular trading and after hours during the quarter. Enter “none”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 3 – Order information

Types of Orders	Number of Orders	% Orders Executed	% Orders Cancelled ²
1. Anonymous ³			
2. Fully transparent			
3. Pegged Orders			
4. Fully hidden			
5. Separate dark facility of a transparent market			

¹ See definition of an Internal and Intentional Cross in Section 1.1 of the Universal Market Integrity Rules.

² By cancellations, we mean “pure” cancellations, i.e. cancellations that do not result in a new and amended order.

³ Orders executed under ID 001.

Types of Orders	Number of Orders	% Orders Executed	% Orders Cancelled ²
6. 5-Partially hidden (reserve)			
7. <u>Total number of orders entered during the quarter</u>			

4. **Trading by security** – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 4** below for the 10 most traded securities on the marketplace (based on the volume of securities traded) for trades executed at the opening of the market, during regular trading and after hours during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 4 – Most traded securities

Category of Securities	Volume	Value	Number of Trades
Exchange-Traded Securities			
1. Equity (<u>includes preferred shares</u>) [Name of Securities] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			
2. ETFs [Name of Securities] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			
3. Debt [Enter issuer, maturity and coupon] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9.			

Category of Securities	Volume	Value	Number of Trades
10.			
Foreign Exchange-Traded Securities			
1. Equity (includes preferred shares) [Name of Securities] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			
2. ETFs [Name of Securities] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			
3. Debt [Name of Securities] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			

5. **Trading by marketplace participant** – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 5** below for the top 10 marketplace participants (based on the volume of securities traded). The information should be provided for the total trading volume, including for trades executed at the opening of the market, during regular trading and after hours during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate. Where a marketplace’s marketplace participants are dealers and non-dealers, the marketplace should complete a separate chart for each.

Chart 5 – Concentration of trading by marketplace participant

Marketplace Participant Name	Total Active Volume	Total Passive Volume
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		

6. **Routing Activities**~~activities~~ – Indicate the percentage of marketplace participants that used marketplace-owned or third-party or affiliated routing services during the reporting period. In addition, provide the information in Chart 6 below.

Chart 6 – Routing of marketplace orders

<u>Number</u> % of orders executed on the reporting marketplace	
<u>Number</u> % of orders routed to away marketplaces (list all marketplaces where orders were routed)	
<u>Number</u> % of orders that are marked and treated as Directed Action Orders (DAO)	

7. **Co-location** – Indicate the percentage of marketplace participants that are using the marketplace's co-location services, if any.

Section 2 – Fixed Income Marketplaces

1. **General trading activity** – Provide the details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 7** below for each type of fixed income security traded on the marketplace for transactions executed during regular trading hours. Enter "None", "N/A", or "0" where appropriate.

Chart 7 – Fixed Income Activity~~income activity~~

Category of Securities	Value Traded	Number of Trades
Domestic Unlisted Debt Securities – Government		
1. Federal		
2. Federal Agency		
3. Provincial and Municipal		
Domestic Unlisted Debt Securities – Corporate		
Domestic Unlisted Debt Securities – Other		
Foreign Unlisted Debt Securities – Government		
Foreign Unlisted Debt Securities –		

Category of Securities	Value Traded	Number of Trades
Corporate		
Foreign Unlisted Debt Securities – Other		

2. **Trading by security** – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 288** below for the 10 most traded fixed income securities on the marketplace (based on the value of the volume traded) for trades executed during regular trading hours during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 8 – Most traded fixed income securities

Category of Securities	Value Traded	Number of Trades
Domestic Unlisted Debt Securities – Government		
1. Federal		
[Enter issuer, maturity, coupon]		
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		
2. Federal Agency		
[Enter issuer, maturity, coupon]		
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		
3. Provincial and Municipal		
[Enter issuer, maturity, coupon]		
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		

<p>Domestic Unlisted Debt Securities – Corporate</p> <p>[Enter issuer, maturity, coupon]</p> <p>1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.</p>		
<p>Domestic Unlisted Debt Securities – Other</p> <p>[Enter issuer, maturity, coupon]</p> <p>1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.</p>		
<p>Foreign Unlisted Debt Securities – Government</p> <p>[Enter issuer, maturity, coupon]</p> <p>1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.</p>		
<p>Foreign Unlisted Debt Securities – Corporate</p> <p>[Enter issuer, maturity, coupon]</p> <p>1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.</p>		

Foreign Unlisted Debt Securities – Other [Enter issuer, maturity, coupon] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
---	--	--

3. **Trading by marketplace participant** – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 9** below for the top 10 marketplace participants for trades executed during regular trading hours during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate. If marketplace participants are dealers and non-dealer institutions, the marketplace should complete a separate chart for each.

Chart 9 – Concentration of Trading by Marketplace Participanttrading by marketplace participant

Marketplace Participant Name	Value Traded
1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.	

Section 3 – Securities Lending Marketplaces

1. **General Lending Activity**lending activity – Please provide details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 10** below for each type of securities loaned on the marketplace. Enter “None”, “N/A” or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 10 – Lending aActivityactivity

Category of Securities	Quantity of Securities Lent During the Quarter	Aggregate Value of Securities Lent During the Quarter
Domestic		
1. Corporate Equity Securities		
1.1. Common Shares		
1.2. Preferred Shares		
2. Non-Corporate Equity Securities (e.g. trust units, partnership units, etc.)(please specify)		
3. Government Debt Securities		
4. Corporate Debt Securities		
5. Other Fixed Income Securities		

Category of Securities	Quantity of Securities Lent During the Quarter	Aggregate Value of Securities Lent During the Quarter
(please specify)		
Foreign		
1. Corporate Equity Securities		
1.1. Common Shares		
1.2. Preferred Shares		
2. Non-Corporate Equity Securities (e.g. trust units, partnership units, etc.)(please specify)		
3. Government Debt Securities		
4. Corporate Debt Securities		
5. Other Fixed Income Securities (please specify)		

2. **Trading Marketplace Participant**~~by marketplace participant~~ – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 11** and **Chart 12** below for the top 10 borrowers and lenders based on their aggregate value of securities borrowed or loaned, respectively, during the quarter.

Chart 11 – Concentration of Activity~~activity~~ **by Borrower**~~borrower~~

Borrower Name	Aggregate Value of Securities Borrowed During the Quarter
1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	
7.	
8.	
9.	
10.	

Chart 12 – Concentration of Activity~~activity~~ **by Lender**~~lender~~

Lender Name	Aggregate Value of Securities Loaned During the Quarter
1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	
7.	
8.	
9.	
10.	

3. **Lending activity by security** – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 13** below for the 10 most loaned securities on the marketplace (based on the quantity of securities loaned during the quarter). Enter “None”, “N/A” or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 13 – Most ~~Loaned Securities~~ loaned securities

Category of Securities	Quantity of Securities Lent During the Quarter	Aggregate Value of Securities Lent During the Quarter
Domestic		
1. Common Shares [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
2. Preferred Shares [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
3. Non-Corporate Equity Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
4. Government Debt Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8.		

Category of Securities	Quantity of Securities Lent During the Quarter	Aggregate Value of Securities Lent During the Quarter
9.		
10.		
5. Corporate Debt Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
6. Other Fixed Income Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
Foreign		
1. Common Shares [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
2. Preferred Shares [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7.		

Category of Securities	Quantity of Securities Lent During the Quarter	Aggregate Value of Securities Lent During the Quarter
8. 9. 10.		
3. Non-Corporate Equity Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
4. Government Debt Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
5. Corporate Debt Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
6. Other Fixed Income Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8.		

Category of Securities	Quantity of Securities Lent During the Quarter	Aggregate Value of Securities Lent During the Quarter
9.		
10.		

Section 4 – Derivatives Marketplaces in Quebec

1. **General trading activity** – For each category of ~~contracts~~product traded on the marketplace, provide the details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 14** below. For products other than options on ETFs and equity options, provide the details on a product-by-product basis in the appropriate category. Details for options on ETFs and equity options should be provided on an aggregate basis (one total for options on ETFs and one for options on equities). The information should be provided for transactions executed at ~~in the opening of the market~~early session, during the regular trading hours and after hours session, and in the extended session during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 14 – General trading activity

Category of <u>Product</u>	Volume	Number of Trades	End-of Quarter Open Interest (Number/End of Quarter)
<u>Futures Products</u>			
1(a) Interest rate – short term			
1(b) Interest rate – long term			
2. Index			
3. ETF			
4. Equity			
5. Currency			
6. Energy			
7. Others, please specify			
<u>Options Products</u>			
1(a) Interest rate -short term			
1(b) Interest rate – long term			
2. Index			
3. ETF			
4. Equity			
5. Currency			
6. Energy			
7. Others, please specify			

2. **Trades resulting from pre-negotiation discussions** – Provide the details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 15** below by product and for each type of trade resulting from pre-negotiation discussions. For products other than options on ETFs and equity options, provide the details on a product-by-product basis in the appropriate category. Details for options on ETFs and equity options should be provided on an aggregate basis (one total for

options on ETFs and one for options on equities). The information should be provided for trades executed in the early session, during the regular session and in the extended session during the quarter. Enter "None", "N/A", or "0" where appropriate.

Chart 15 – Trades resulting from pre-negotiation discussions

Type of Trade	% of Volume	% Number of Trades
<u>Futures Products</u>		
A. Cross		
B. Pre-arranged		
C. Block		
D. Exchange for physical		
E. Exchange for risk		
F. Riskless basis cross		
G. Others, please specify		
<u>Options Products</u>		
A. Cross		
B. Pre-arranged		
C. Block		
D. Exchange for physical		
E. Exchange for risk		
F. Riskless basis cross		
G. D. Others, please specify		

3. **Order information** – Provide the aggregate information ~~details~~ (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 16** below by ~~category of contract~~product and for each type of order in exchange traded contracts executed on the marketplace. For products other than options on ETFs and equity options, provide the details on a product-by-product basis in the appropriate category. Details for options on ETFs and equity options should be provided on an aggregate basis (one total for options on ETFs and one for options on equities). The information should be provided for orders entered at the opening of the market ~~during regular trading and after hours~~. Enter "none" ~~in the early session, during the regular session and in the extended session during the quarter.~~ Enter "none", "N/A", or "0" where appropriate.

Chart 16 – Order Information

Type of Orders	% Volume	% Number of Trades
<u>1.</u> I. Anonymous		
<u>2.</u> II. Fully transparent		
<u>3.</u> III. Pegged orders		
<u>4.</u> IV. Fully hidden		
<u>5.</u> Separate dark facility of a transparent market		

6. V. Partially hidden (reserve, for example, iceberg orders)		
---	--	--

4. **Trading by category of contract product** – Provide the aggregate information details requested in the form set out in Chart 17 below. For each product other than options on ETFs and equity options, list the most actively-traded contracts (by volume) on the marketplace that in the aggregate constitute at least 75% of the total volume for each product during the quarter. The list must include at least 3 contracts. For options on ETFs and equity options, list the 10 most actively traded classes by volume. Details for options on ETFs and equity options should be provided on an aggregate basis (one total for options on ETFs and one for options on equities). The information should be provided for trades executed at in the opening of the market early session, during the regular trading session and after-hours in the extended session during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 17 – Most traded contracts

Category of <u>Product</u>	Volume	Number of Trades	Open Interest (Number/End of Quarter)
<u>Futures Products</u>			
1. <u>Name of products – 3 most-traded contracts (or more as applicable)</u> 1. 2. 3.			
<u>Options Products</u>			
2. <u>ETF</u> <u>[Classes]</u> 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			
3. <u>Equity</u> <u>[Classes]</u> 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			
4. <u>Other listed options (specify for each) – 3 most traded contracts (or more as applicable)</u>			

1.			
2.			
3.			

5. **Trading by market participant Concentration of trading by marketplace participant** – Provide the aggregate information details requested in the form set out in **Chart 18** below for each category of contract and for the top 3 market participants on the marketplace (based on the number of contracts traded) below. For each product other than options on ETFs and equity options, list the top marketplace participants whose aggregate trading (by volume) constituted at least 75% of the total volume traded. The list must include at least 3 marketplace participants. For options on ETFs and equity options, provide the top 10 most active marketplace participants (by volume). The information should be provided on an aggregate basis (one total for options on ETFs and one for options on equities). The information should be provided for trades executed at the opening of the market executed in the early session, during the regular trading session and after hours in the extended session during the quarter. Enter "None", "N/A", or "0" where appropriate.

Chart 18 – Concentration of trading per by marketplace participant

<u>Product Name</u>	<u>Marketplace Participant Name</u>	<u>Volume</u>
Futures		
<u>Product Name (specify for each)</u>	1. 2. 3. (more if necessary)	
Options		
<u>ETF</u>	1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.	
<u>Equity</u>	1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.	
<u>Other options (specify for each)</u>	1. 2. 3. (more if necessary)	

6. Co-location

Indicate the percentage of marketplace participants that are using the marketplace's co-location services, if any.

C. Certificate of Marketplace

The undersigned certifies that the information given in this report relating to the marketplace is true and correct.

DATED at _____ this _____ day of _____ 20____

(Name of Marketplace)

(Name of director, officer or partner – please type or print)

(Signature of director, officer or partner)

(Official capacity – please type or print)

FORM 21-101F5
INITIAL OPERATION REPORT FOR INFORMATION PROCESSOR

TYPE OF FILING:☐ **INITIAL FORM**☐ **AMENDMENT****GENERAL INFORMATION**

1. Full name of information processor:
2. Name(s) under which business is conducted, if different from item 1:
3. If this filing makes a name change on behalf of the information processor in respect of the name set out in item 1 or item 2, enter the previous name and the new name:

Previous name:

New name:
4. Head office

Address:

Telephone:

Facsimile:
5. Mailing address (if different):
6. Other offices

Address:

Telephone:

Facsimile:
7. Website address:
8. Contact employee

Name and title:

Telephone number:

Facsimile:

E-mail address:
9. Counsel

Firm name:

Contact name:

Telephone number:

Facsimile:

E-mail address:

10. List of all marketplaces, dealers or other parties for which the information processor is acting or for which it proposes to act as an information processor. For each marketplace, dealer or other party, provide a description of the function(s) which the information processor performs or proposes to perform.
11. List all types of securities for which information will be collected, processed, distributed or published by the information processor. For each such marketplace, dealer or other party, provide a list of all securities for which information with respect to quotations for, or transactions in, is or is proposed to be collected, processed, distributed or published.

Exhibits

File all Exhibits with the Initial Form. For each Exhibit, include the name of the information processor, the date of filing of the Exhibit and the date as of which the information is accurate (if different from the date of the filing). If any Exhibit required is inapplicable, a statement to that effect shall be furnished instead of such Exhibit.

If the information processor files an amendment to the information provided in its Initial Form, and the information relates to an Exhibit filed with the Initial Form or a subsequent amendment, the information processor must, in order to comply with sections 14.1 and 14.2 of National Instrument 21-101 provide a description of the change, the expected date of the implementation of the change, and file a complete and updated Exhibit. The information processor ~~should~~must provide a clean and a ~~blackline~~blacklined version showing changes from the previous filing.

Exhibit A – Corporate Governance

1. Legal status:
 - ☐ Corporation
 - ☐ Sole Proprietorship
 - ☐ Partnership
 - ☐ Other (specify):
2. Except where the information processor is a sole proprietorship, indicate the date and place where the information processor obtained its legal status (e.g., place of incorporation, place where partnership agreement was filed or where information processor was formed):
 1. Date (DD/MM/YYYY) of formation.
 2. Place of formation.
 3. Statute under which the information processor was organized.
3. Provide a copy of the constating documents (including corporate by-laws), shareholder agreements, partnership agreements and other similar documents, and all subsequent documents.
4. Provide the policies and procedures which promote independence of the information processor from the marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers and dealers that provide data.
5. Provide the policies and procedures which address the potential conflicts of interest between the interests of the information processor and its owners, partners, directors and officers.

Exhibit B – Ownership

List any person or company who owns 10 percent or more of the information processor's outstanding shares or who, either directly or indirectly, through agreement or otherwise, in any other manner, may control or direct the management or policies of the information processor. Provide the full name and address of each such person and attach a copy of the agreement or, if there is none written, describe the agreement or basis through which such person exercises or may exercise such control or direction.

Exhibit C – Organization

1. A list of the partners, directors, governors, and members of the board of directors and any standing committees of the board or persons performing similar functions who presently hold or have held their offices or positions during the

previous year identifying those individuals with overall responsibility for the integrity and timeliness of data reported to and displayed by the system (the "System") of the information processor, indicating the following for each:

1. Name.
2. Principal business or occupation and title.
3. Dates of commencement and expiry of present term of office or position ~~and length of time the office or position held.~~
4. Type of business in which each is primarily engaged and current employer.
5. Type of business in which each was primarily engaged in the preceding five years, if different from that set out in item 4.
6. Whether the person is considered to be an independent director.
7. A list of the committees of the board, including their mandates.
8. A narrative or graphic description of the organizational structure of the information processor.

Exhibit D – Staffing

A description of the personnel qualifications for each category of professional, non-professional and supervisory employee employed by the information processor. Detail whether the personnel are employed by the information processor or a third party, identifying the employees responsible for monitoring the timeliness and integrity of data reported to and displayed by the System.

Exhibit E – Affiliates

For each affiliated entity of the information processor, and for any person or company with whom the information processor has a contractual or other agreement relating to the operations of the information processor, including loans or cross-guarantees, provide the following information:

1. Name and address of person or company.
2. Form of organization (e.g., association, corporation, partnership, etc.).
3. Name of location and statute citation under which organized.
4. Date of incorporation in present form.
5. Description of nature and extent of affiliation and/or contractual or other agreement with the information processor.
6. Description of business or functions of the affiliates.
7. If a person or company has ceased to be an affiliated entity of the information processor during the previous year or ceased to have a contractual or other agreement relating to the operation of the information processor during the previous year, provide a brief statement of the reasons for termination of the relationship.

Exhibit F – Services

A description in narrative form of each service or function performed by the information processor. Include a description of all procedures utilized for the collection, processing, distribution, validation and publication of information with respect to orders and trades in securities.

Exhibit G – System and Operations

1. Describe the manner of operation of the System of the information processor that collects, processes, distributes and publishes information in accordance with National Instruments 21-101 and 23-101. This description should include the following:

1. The means of access to the System.
2. Procedures governing entry and display of quotations and orders in the System including data validation processes.
3. A description of any measures used to verify the timeliness and accuracy of information received and disseminated by the system, including the processes to resolve data integrity issues identified.
4. The hours of operation of the System.
5. Description of the training provided to users of the System and any materials provided to the users.
2. Include a list of all computer hardware utilized by the information processor to perform the services or functions listed in Exhibit F, indicating:
 1. Manufacturer, and manufacturer's equipment and identification number.
 2. Whether purchased or leased (if leased, duration of lease and any provisions for purchase or renewal).
 3. Where such equipment (exclusive of terminals and other access devices) is physically located.
3. Provide a description of the measures or procedures implemented by the information processor to provide for the security of any system employed to perform the functions of an information processor. This should include a general description of any physical and operational safeguards designed to prevent unauthorized access to the system.
4. Provide a description of all backup systems which are designed to prevent interruptions in the performance of any information providing functions as a result of technical malfunctions or otherwise in the system itself, in any permitted input or output system connection or as a result of any independent source.
5. Describe the business continuity and disaster recovery plans of the information processor, and provide any relevant documentation.
6. List each type of interruption which has lasted for more than two minutes and has occurred within the six (6) months preceding the date of the filing, including the date of each interruption, the cause and duration. Provide the total number of interruptions which have lasted two minutes or less.
7. Describe the procedures for reviewing system capacity, and indicate current and future capacity estimates.
8. Quantify in appropriate units of measure the limits on the information processor's capacity to receive, collect, process, store or display the data elements included within each function.
9. Identify the factors (mechanical, electronic or other) which account for the current limitations on the capacity to receive, collect, process, store or display the data elements included within each function described in section 8 above.
10. Describe the procedures for conducting stress tests.

Exhibit H – Outsourcing

Where the information processor has outsourced the operation of any aspect of the services listed in Exhibit F to an arms-length third party, including any function related to the collection, consolidation, and dissemination of data, provide the following information:

1. Name and address of person or company to whom the function has been outsourced.
2. A description of the nature and extent of the contractual or other agreement with the information processor, and the roles and responsibilities of the arms-length third party under the arrangement.
3. A copy of each material contract relating to any outsourced function.

Exhibit I – Financial Viability

1. Provide a business plan with pro forma financial statements and estimates of revenue.

2. Discuss the financial viability of the information processor in the context of having sufficient financial resources to properly perform its functions.

Exhibit J – Fees and Revenue Sharing

1. Provide a complete list of all fees and other charges imposed, or to be imposed, by or on behalf of the information processor for its information services. This would include all fees to provide data and fees to receive the data from the information processor.
2. Where arrangements exist to share revenue from the sale of data disseminated by the information processor with marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers and dealers that provide data to the information processor in accordance with National Instrument 21-101, a complete description of the arrangements and the basis for these arrangements.

Exhibit K – Reporting to the Information Processor

1. List all persons and entities that provide data to the information processor in accordance with the requirements of National Instrument 21-101.
2. Provide a complete set of all forms, agreements and other materials pertaining to the provision of data to the information processor.
3. A description of any specifications or criteria required of marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers or dealers who provide securities information to the information processor for collection, processing for distribution or publication. Identify those specifications or criteria which limit, are interpreted to limit or have the effect of limiting access to or use of any services provided by the information processor and state the reasons for imposing such specifications or criteria.
4. For each instance during the past year in which any person or entity has been prohibited or limited to provide data by the information processor, indicate the name of each such person or entity and the reason for the prohibition or limitation.

Exhibit L – Access to the Services of the Information Processor

1. A list of all persons and entities who presently subscribe or who have notified the information processor of their intention to subscribe to the services of the information processor.
2. The form of contract governing the terms by which persons may subscribe to the services of an information processor.
3. A description of any specifications or criteria which limit, are interpreted to limit or have the effect of limiting access to or use of any services provided by the information processor and state the reasons for imposing such specifications or criteria. This applies to limits relating to providing information to the information processor and the limits relating to accessing the consolidated feed distributed by the information processor.
4. For each instance during the past year in which any person has been prohibited or limited in respect of access to services offered by the information processor, indicate the name of each such person and the reason for the prohibition or limitation.

Exhibit M – Selection of Securities for which Information Must Be Reported to the Information Processor

Where the information processor is responsible for making a determination of the data which must be reported, including the securities for which information must be reported in accordance with National Instrument 21-101, describe the manner of selection and communication of these securities. This description should include the following:

1. The criteria used to determine the securities for which information must be reported and the data which must be reported to the information processor.
2. The process for selection of the securities, including a description of the parties consulted in the process and the frequency of the selection process.
3. The process to communicate the securities selected and data to be reported to the marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers and dealers providing the information as required by National Instrument 21-101. The description should include where this information is located.

CERTIFICATE OF INFORMATION PROCESSOR

The undersigned certifies that the information given in this report is true and correct.

DATED at _____ this _____ day of _____ 20 _____

(Name of information processor)

(Name of director, officer or partner – please type or print)

(Signature of director, officer or partner)

(Official capacity – please type or print)

**COMPANION POLICY 21-101 CP
TO NATIONAL INSTRUMENT 21-101 MARKETPLACE OPERATION**

PART 1 INTRODUCTION

- 1.1 Introduction** – Exchanges, quotation and trade reporting systems and ATSS are marketplaces that provide a market facility or venue on which securities can be traded. The areas of interest from a regulatory perspective are in many ways similar for each of these marketplaces since they may have similar trading activities. The regulatory regime for exchanges and quotation and trade reporting systems arises from the securities legislation of the various jurisdictions. Exchanges and quotation and trade reporting systems are recognized under orders from the Canadian securities regulatory authorities, with various terms and conditions of recognition. ATSS, which are not recognized as exchanges or quotation and trade reporting systems, are regulated under National Instrument 21-101 Marketplace Operation (the Instrument) and National Instrument 23-101 Trading Rules (NI 23-101). The Instruments, which were adopted at a time when new types of markets were emerging, provide the regulatory framework that allows and regulates the operation of multiple marketplaces.

The purpose of this Companion Policy is to state the views of the Canadian securities regulatory authorities on various matters related to the Instrument, including:

- (a) a discussion of the general approach taken by the Canadian securities regulatory authorities in, and the general regulatory purpose for, the Instrument; and
- (b) the interpretation of various terms and provisions in the Instrument.

- 1.2 Definition of Exchange-Traded Security** – Section 1.1 of the Instrument defines an "exchange-traded security" as a security that is listed on a recognized exchange or is quoted on a recognized quotation and trade reporting system or is listed on an exchange or quoted on a quotation and trade reporting system that is recognized for the purposes of the Instrument and NI 23-101.

If a security trades on a recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system on a "when issued" basis, as defined in IIROC's Universal Market Integrity Rules, the security would be considered to be listed on that recognized exchange or quoted on that recognized quotation and trade reporting system and would therefore be an exchange-traded security.

If no "when issued" market has been posted by a recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system for a security, an ATS may not allow this security to be traded on a "when issued" basis on its marketplace.

A security that is inter-listed would be considered to be an exchange-traded security. A security that is listed on a foreign exchange or quoted on a foreign quotation and trade reporting system, but is not listed or quoted on a domestic exchange or quotation and trade reporting system, falls within the definition of "foreign exchange-traded security".

- 1.3 Definition of Foreign Exchange-Traded Security** – The definition of foreign exchange-traded security includes a reference to ordinary members of the International Organization of Securities Commissions (IOSCO). To determine the current list of ordinary members, reference should be made to the IOSCO website at www.iosco.org.
- 1.4 Definition of Regulation Services Provider** – The definition of regulation services provider is meant to capture a third party provider that provides regulation services to marketplaces. A recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system would not be a regulation services provider if it only conducts these regulatory services for its own marketplace or an affiliated marketplace.

PART 2 MARKETPLACE

2.1 Marketplace

- (1) The Instrument uses the term "marketplace" to encompass the different types of trading systems that match trades. A marketplace is an exchange, a quotation and trade reporting system or an ATS. Paragraphs (c) and (d) of the definition of "marketplace" describe marketplaces that the Canadian securities regulatory authorities consider to be ATSS. A dealer that internalizes its orders of exchange-traded securities and does not execute and print the trades on an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system in accordance with the rules of the exchange or the quotation and trade reporting system (including an exemption from those rules) is considered to be a marketplace pursuant to paragraph (d) of the definition of "marketplace" and an ATS.

- (2) Two of the characteristics of a "marketplace" are
 - (a) that it brings together orders for securities of multiple buyers and sellers; and
 - (b) that it uses established, non-discretionary methods under which the orders interact with each other.
- (3) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities consider that a person or company brings together orders for securities if it
 - (a) displays, or otherwise represents to marketplace participants, trading interests entered on the system; or
 - (b) receives orders centrally for processing and execution (regardless of the level of automation used).
- (4) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities are of the view that "established, nondiscretionary methods" include any methods that dictate the terms of trading among the multiple buyers and sellers entering orders on the system. Such methods include providing a trading facility or setting rules governing trading among marketplace participants. Common examples include a traditional exchange and a computer system, whether comprised of software, hardware, protocols, or any combination thereof, through which orders interact, or any other trading mechanism that provides a means or location for the bringing together and execution of orders. Rules imposing execution priorities, such as time and price priority rules, would be "established, non-discretionary methods."
- (5) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities do not consider the following systems to be marketplaces for purposes of the Instrument:
 - (a) A system operated by a person or company that only permits one seller to sell its securities, such as a system that permits issuers to sell their own securities to investors.
 - (b) A system that merely routes orders for execution to a facility where the orders are executed.
 - (c) A system that posts information about trading interests, without facilities for execution.

In the first two cases, the criteria of multiple buyers and sellers would not be met. In the last two cases, routing systems and bulletin boards do not establish non-discretionary methods under which parties entering orders interact with each other.

- (6) A person or company operating any of the systems described in subsection (5) should consider whether the person or company is required to be registered as a dealer under securities legislation.
- (7) Inter-dealer bond brokers that conduct traditional inter-dealer bond broker activity have a choice as to how to be regulated under the Instrument and NI 23-101. Each inter-dealer bond broker can choose to be subject to IIROC Rule 36 and IIROC Rule 2100, fall within the definition of inter-dealer bond broker in the Instrument and be subject to the transparency requirements of Part 8 of the Instrument. Alternatively, the inter-dealer bond broker can choose to be an ATS and comply with the provisions of the Instrument and NI 23-101 applicable to a marketplace and an ATS. An inter-dealer bond broker that chooses to be an ATS will not be subject to Rule 36 or IIROC Rule 2100, but will be subject to all other IIROC requirements applicable to a dealer.
- (8) A dealer using a system that brings together multiple buyers and sellers using established, non-discretionary methods to matchSection 1.2 of the Instrument contains an interpretation of the definition of "marketplace". The Canadian securities regulatory authorities do not consider a system that only routes unmatched orders to a marketplace for execution to be a marketplace. If a dealer uses a system to match buy and sell orders or pair orders with contra-side orders outside of a marketplace and generates trade execution through the routing of both sides of a matchroute the matched or paired orders to a marketplace as a cross, would be considered by the Canadian securities regulatory authorities may consider the dealer to be operating a marketplace under paragraph (c) of the definition of "marketplace". The Canadian securities regulatory authorities encourage dealers that operate or plan to operate such a system to meet with the applicable securities regulatory authority to discuss the operation of the system and whether the dealer's system falls within the definition of "marketplace".

PART 3 CHARACTERISTICS OF EXCHANGES, QUOTATION AND TRADE REPORTING SYSTEMS AND ATSs

3.1 Exchange

- (1) Securities legislation of most jurisdictions does not define the term "exchange".

- (2) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities generally consider a marketplace, other than a quotation and trade reporting system, to be an exchange for purposes of securities legislation, if the marketplace
- (a) requires an issuer to enter into an agreement in order for the issuer's securities to trade on the marketplace, i.e., the marketplace provides a listing function;
 - (b) provides, directly, or through one or more marketplace participants, a guarantee of a two-sided market for a security on a continuous or reasonably continuous basis, i.e., the marketplace has one or more marketplace participants that guarantee that a bid and an ask will be posted for a security on a continuous or reasonably continuous basis. For example, this type of liquidity guarantee can be carried out on exchanges through traders acting as principal such as registered traders, specialists or market makers;
 - (c) sets requirements governing the conduct of marketplace participants, in addition to those requirements set by the marketplace in respect of the method of trading or algorithm used by those marketplace participants to execute trades on the system (see subsection (3)); or
 - (d) disciplines marketplace participants, in addition to discipline by exclusion from trading, i.e., the marketplace can levy fines or take enforcement action.
- (3) An ATS that requires a subscriber to agree to comply with the requirements of a regulation services provider as part of its contract with that subscriber is not setting "requirements governing the conduct of subscribers". In addition, marketplaces are not precluded from imposing credit conditions on subscribers or requiring subscribers to submit financial information to the marketplace.
- (4) The criteria in subsection 3.1(2) are not exclusive and there may be other instances in which the Canadian securities regulatory authorities will consider a marketplace to be an exchange.

3.2 Quotation and Trade Reporting System

- (1) Securities legislation in certain jurisdictions contains the concept of a quotation and trade reporting system. A quotation and trade reporting system is defined under securities legislation in those jurisdictions as a person or company, other than an exchange or registered dealer, that operates facilities that permit the dissemination of price quotations for the purchase and sale of securities and reports of completed transactions in securities for the exclusive use of registered dealers. A person or company that carries on business as a vendor of market data or a bulletin board with no execution facilities would not normally be considered to be a quotation and trade reporting system.
- (2) A quotation and trade reporting system is considered to have "quoted" a security if
- (a) the security has been subject to a listing or quoting process, and
 - (b) the issuer issuing the security or the dealer trading the security has entered into an agreement with the quotation and trade reporting system to list or quote the security.

3.3 Definition of an ATS

- (1) In order to be an ATS for the purposes of the Instrument, a marketplace cannot engage in certain activities or meet certain criteria such as
- (a) requiring listing agreements,
 - (b) having one or more marketplace participants that guarantee that a two-sided market will be posted for a security on a continuous or reasonably continuous basis,
 - (c) setting requirements governing the conduct of subscribers, in addition to those requirements set by the marketplace in respect of the method of trading or algorithm used by those subscribers to execute trades on the system, and
 - (d) disciplining subscribers.

A marketplace, other than a quotation and trade reporting system, that engages in any of these activities or meets these criteria would, in the view of the Canadian securities regulatory authorities, be an exchange and would have to be recognized as such in order to carry on business, unless exempted from this requirement by the securities regulatory authorities.

- (2) An ATS can establish trading algorithms that provide that a trade takes place if certain events occur. These algorithms are not considered to be "requirements governing the conduct of subscribers".
- (3) A marketplace that would otherwise meet the definition of an ATS in the Instrument may apply to the Canadian securities regulatory authorities for recognition as an exchange.

3.4 Requirements Applicable to ATSs

- (1) Part 6 of the Instrument applies only to an ATS that is not a recognized exchange or a member of a recognized exchange or an exchange recognized for the purposes of the Instrument and NI 23-101. If an ATS is recognized as an exchange, the provisions of the Instrument relating to marketplaces and recognized exchanges apply.
- (2) If the ATS is a member of an exchange, the rules, policies and other similar instruments of the exchange apply to the ATS.
- (3) Under ~~subsection~~paragraph 6.1(a) of the Instrument, an ATS that is not a member of a recognized exchange or an exchange recognized for the purposes of the Instrument and NI 23-101 must register as a dealer if it wishes to carry on business. Unless otherwise specified, an ATS registered as a dealer is subject to all of the requirements applicable to dealers under securities legislation, including the requirements imposed by the Instrument and NI 23-101. An ATS will be carrying on business in a local jurisdiction if it provides direct access to subscribers located in that jurisdiction.
- (4) If an ATS registered as a dealer in one jurisdiction in Canada provides access in another jurisdiction in Canada to subscribers who are not registered dealers under securities legislation, the ATS must be registered in that other jurisdiction. However, if all of the ATS's subscribers in the other jurisdiction are registered as dealers in that other jurisdiction, the securities regulatory authority in the other jurisdiction may consider granting the ATS an exemption from the requirement to register as a dealer under ~~subsection~~paragraph 6.1(a) and all other requirements in the Instrument and in NI 23-101 of the Instrument and from the registration requirements of securities legislation. In determining if the exemption is in the public interest, a securities regulatory authority will consider a number of factors, including whether the ATS is registered in another jurisdiction and whether the ATS deals only with registered dealers in that jurisdiction.
- (5) ~~Subsection~~Paragraph 6.1(b) of the Instrument prohibits an ATS to which the provisions of the Instrument apply from carrying on business unless it is a member of a self-regulatory entity. Membership in a self-regulatory entity is required for purposes of membership in the Canadian Investor Protection Fund, capital requirements and clearing and settlement procedures. At this time, the IIROC is the only entity that would come within the definition.
- (6) Any registration exemptions that may otherwise be applicable to a dealer under securities legislation are not available to an ATS, even though it is registered as a dealer (except as provided in the Instrument), because of the fact that it is also a marketplace and different considerations apply.
- (7) Subsection 6.7(1) of the Instrument requires an ATS to notify the securities regulatory authority if one of three thresholds is met or exceeded. Upon being informed that one of the thresholds is met or exceeded, the securities regulatory authority intends to review the ATS, and its structure and operations in order to consider whether the person or company operating the ATS should be considered to be an exchange for purposes of securities legislation or if additional terms and conditions should be placed on the registration of the ATS. The securities regulatory authority intends to conduct this review because each of these thresholds may be indicative of an ATS having significant market presence in a type of security, such that it would be more appropriate that the ATS be regulated as an exchange. If more than one Canadian securities regulatory authority is conducting this review, the reviewing jurisdictions intend to coordinate their review. The volume thresholds referred to in subsection 6.7(1) of the Instrument are based on the type of security. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities consider a type of security to refer to a distinctive category of security such as equity securities, debt securities or options.
- (8) Any marketplace that is required to provide notice under section 6.7 of the Instrument will determine the calculation based on publicly available information.
- (9) ~~Subsections 6.11(2) of the Instrument requires an ATS to obtain an acknowledgement from its subscribers. The acknowledgement may be obtained in a number of ways, including requesting the subscriber's signature or requesting that the subscriber initial an initial box or check a check-off box. This may be done electronically. The acknowledgement must be specific to the information required to be disclosed under the relevant subsection and must confirm that the subscriber has received the required disclosure. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities are of the view that it is the responsibility of the ATS to ensure that an acknowledgement is obtained from the subscriber in a timely manner.~~

PART 4 RECOGNITION AS AN EXCHANGE OR QUOTATION AND TRADE REPORTING SYSTEM**4.1 Recognition as an Exchange or Quotation and Trade Reporting System**

- (1) In determining whether to recognize an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities must determine whether it is in the public interest to do so.
- (2) In determining whether it is in the public interest to recognize an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities will look at a number of factors, including
 - (a) the manner in which the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system proposes to comply with the Instrument;
 - (b) whether the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system has fair and meaningful representation on its governing body, in the context of the nature and structure of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system;
 - (c) whether the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system has sufficient financial resources for the proper performance of its functions;
 - (d) whether the rules, policies and other similar instruments of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system ensure that its business is conducted in an orderly manner so as to afford protection to investors;
 - (e) whether the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system has policies and procedures to effectively identify and manage conflicts of interest arising from its operation or the services it provides;
 - (f) whether the requirements of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system relating to access to its services are fair and reasonable; and
 - (g) whether the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system's process for setting fees is fair, transparent and appropriate, and whether the fees are equitably allocated among the participants, issuers and other users of services, do not have the effect of creating barriers to access and at the same time ensure that the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system has sufficient financial resources for the proper performance of its functions.

4.2 Process

Although the basic requirements or criteria for recognition of an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system may be similar in various jurisdictions, the precise requirements and the process for seeking a recognition or an exemption from recognition in each jurisdiction is determined by that jurisdiction.

PART 5 ORDERS**5.1 Orders**

- (1) The term "order" is defined in section 1.1 of the Instrument as a firm indication by a person or company, acting as either principal or agent, of a willingness to buy or sell a security. By virtue of this definition, a marketplace that displays good faith, non-firm indications of interest, including, but not limited to, indications of interest to buy or sell a particular security without either prices or quantities associated with those indications, is not displaying "orders". However, if those prices or quantities are implied and determinable, for example, by knowing the features of the marketplace, the indications of interest may be considered an order.
- (2) The terminology used is not determinative of whether an indication of interest constitutes an order. Instead, whether or not an indication is "firm" will depend on what actually takes place between the buyer and seller. At a minimum, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities will consider an indication to be firm if it can be executed without further discussion between the person or company entering the indication and the counterparty (i.e. the indication is "actionable"). The Canadian securities regulatory authorities would consider an indication of interest to be actionable if it includes sufficient information to enable it to be executed without communicating with the marketplace participant that entered the order. Such information may include the symbol of the security, side (buy or sell), size, and price. The information may be explicitly stated, or it may be implicit and determinable based on the features of the marketplace. Even if the person or company must give its subsequent agreement to an execution, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities will still consider the indication to be firm if this subsequent agreement is always, or almost always, granted so that the agreement is largely a formality. For instance, an indication where there is a clear or prevailing presumption

that a trade will take place at the indicated or an implied price, based on understandings or past dealings, will be viewed as an order.

- (3) A firm indication of a willingness to buy or sell a security includes bid or offer quotations, market orders, limit orders and any other priced orders. For the purpose of sections 7.1, 7.3, 8.1 and 8.2 of the Instrument, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities do not consider special terms orders that are not immediately executable or that trade in special terms books, such as all-or-none, minimum fill or cash or delayed delivery, to be orders that must be provided to an information processor or, if there is no information processor, to an information vendor for consolidation.
- (4) The securities regulatory authority may consider granting an exemption from the pre-trade transparency requirements in sections 7.1, 7.3, 8.1 and/or 8.2 of the Instrument to a marketplace for orders that result from a request for quotes or facility that allows negotiation between two parties provided that
 - (a) order details are shown only to the negotiating parties,
 - (b) other than as provided by paragraph (a), no actionable indication of interest or order is displayed by either party or the marketplace, and
 - (c) each order entered on the marketplace meets the size threshold set by a regulation services provider as provided in subsection 7.1(2) of the Instrument.
- (5) The determination of whether an order has been placed does not turn on the level of automation used. Orders can be given over the telephone, as well as electronically.

PART 6 MARKETPLACE INFORMATION AND FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

6.1 Forms Filed by Marketplaces

- (1) The definition of marketplace includes exchanges, quotation and trade reporting systems and ATSs. The legal entity that is recognized as an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system, or registered as a dealer in the case of an ATS, owns and operates the market or trading facility. In some cases, the entity may own and operate more than one trading facility. In such cases the marketplace may file separate forms in respect of each trading facility, or it may choose to file one form covering all of the different trading facilities. If the latter alternative is chosen, the marketplace must clearly identify the facility to which the information or changes apply.
- (2) The forms filed by a marketplace under the Instrument will be kept confidential. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities are of the view that the forms contain proprietary financial, commercial and technical information and that the interests of the filers in non-disclosure outweigh the desirability of adhering to the principle that the forms be available for public inspection.
- (3) While initial Forms 21-101F1 and 21-101F2 and amendments thereto are kept confidential, certain Canadian securities regulatory authorities may publish a summary of the information included in the forms filed by a marketplace, or information related to significant changes to the forms of a marketplace, where the Canadian securities regulatory authorities are of the view that a certain degree of transparency for certain aspects of a marketplace would allow investors and industry participants to be better informed as to how securities trade on the marketplace.
- (4) Under subsection 3.2(1) of the Instrument, a marketplace is required to file an amendment to the information provided in Form 21-101F1 or Form 21-101F2, as applicable, at least 45 days prior to implementing a significant change. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities consider a significant change to be a change that could significantly impact a marketplace, marketplace participants, investors, or the Canadian capital markets. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities would consider significant changes to include:
 - (a) changes in the structure of the marketplace, including procedures governing how orders are entered, displayed (if applicable), executed, how they interact, are cleared and settled;
 - (b) new or changes to the services provided by the marketplace, including the hours of operation, ~~or the introduction of new services;~~
 - (c) new or changes to the means of access to the market or facility and its services;
 - (d) new or changes to ~~or~~ new order types;
 - (e) new or changes to ~~or~~ new types of securities traded on the marketplace;

- (f) new or changes to ~~or new~~ types of securities listed on exchanges or quoted on quotation and trade reporting systems;
 - (g) new or changes to ~~or new~~ types of marketplace participants;
 - (h) changes to the systems and technology used by the marketplace that support trading order entry, order routing, execution, trade reporting, trade comparison, data feeds, co-location and, if applicable, market surveillance and trade clearing, including those affecting capacity;
 - (i) changes to the governance of the marketplace, including the structure of its board of directors and changes in the board committees and their mandates;
 - (j) changes in control over marketplaces;
 - (k) changes in affiliates that provide services to or on behalf of the marketplace;
 - (l) new or changes in ~~and new~~ outsourcing arrangements for key marketplace services or systems;
 - (m) new or changes in ~~and new~~ custody arrangements; and
 - (n) changes in fees and the fee model of the marketplace.
- (5) These Significant changes would not include housekeeping or administrative changes to information in Form 21-101F1 or Form 21-101F2, such as that
- (a) would not have an impact on the marketplace's market structure or marketplace participants or investors, issuers or the capital markets; or
 - (b) are housekeeping or administrative changes
 - (i) changes in the routine processes, practice policies, practices, or administration of the marketplace,
 - (ii) changes due to standardization of terminology, or
 - (iii) corrections of spelling or typographical errors,
 - (iv) necessary changes to conform to applicable regulatory or other legal requirements, and
 - (v) minor system or technology changes that would not significantly impact the system or its capacity.

Such changes would be filed in accordance with the requirements outlined in subsection 3.2(3) of the Instrument.

- (56) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities generally consider a change in a marketplace's fees or fee structure to be a significant change. However, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities recognize that in the current, competitive multiple marketplace environment, which may at times require that frequent changes be made to the fees or fee structure of marketplaces, marketplaces may need to implement fee changes within tight timeframes. To facilitate this process, subsection 3.2(2) of the Instrument provides that marketplaces may provide information describing the change in fees or fee structure in a shorter timeframe, at least seven business days before the expected implementation date of the change in fees or fee structure.
- (67) For the changes referred to in subsection 3.2(3) of the Instrument, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities may review these filings to ascertain the appropriateness of the categorization of such filings. The marketplace will be notified in writing if there is disagreement with respect to the categorization of the filing.
- (78) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities will make best efforts to review amendments to Forms 21-101F1 and 21-101F2 within the timelines specified in subsections 3.2(1) and (2) of the Instrument. However, where the changes are complex, raise regulatory concerns, or when additional information is required, the period for review may exceed these timeframes. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities will review changes to the information in Forms 21-101F1 and 21-101F2 in accordance with staff practices in each jurisdiction.
- (89) Section 3.3 of the Instrument requires a marketplace to file Form 21-101F3 by the following dates: April 30 (for the quarter ending March 31), July 30 (for the quarter ending June 30), October 30 (for the quarter ending September 30) and January 30 (for the quarter ending December 31).

6.2 Filing of Financial Statements

Part 4 of the Instrument sets out the financial reporting requirements applicable to marketplaces. Subsections 4.1(2) and 4.2(2) respectively require an ATS to file audited financial statements initially, together with Form 21-101F2, and on an annual basis thereafter. These financial statements may be in the same form as those filed with IIROC. The annual audited financial statements may be filed with the Canadian securities regulatory authorities at the same time as they are filed with IIROC.

PART 7 MARKETPLACE REQUIREMENTS

7.1 Access Requirements

- (1) Section 5.1 of the Instrument sets out access requirements that apply to a marketplace. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities note that the requirements regarding access for marketplace participants do not restrict the marketplace from maintaining reasonable standards for access. The purpose of these access requirements is to ensure that rules, policies, procedures, and fees, as applicable, of the marketplace do not unreasonably create barriers to access to the services provided by the marketplace.
- (2) For the purposes of complying with the order protection requirements in Part 6 of NI 23-101, a marketplace should permit fair and efficient access to
 - (a) a marketplace participant that directly accesses the marketplace,
 - (b) a person or company that is indirectly accessing the marketplace through a marketplace participant, or
 - (c) another marketplace routing an order to the marketplace.

The reference to “a person or company” in paragraph (b) includes a system or facility that is operated by a person or company.

- (3) The reference to “services” in section 5.1 of the Instrument means all services that may be offered to a person or company and includes all services relating to order entry, trading, execution, routing and data and includes co-location.
- (4) Marketplaces that send indications of interest to a selected smart order router or other system should ~~consider~~ send the ~~extent to which such information should be sent to other smart order routers~~ or systems to meet the fair access requirements of the Instrument.
- (5) Marketplaces are responsible for ensuring that the fees they set are in compliance with section 5.1 of the Instrument. In assessing whether its fees unreasonably condition or limit access to its services, a marketplace should consider a number of factors, including
 - (a) the value of the security traded,
 - (b) the amount of the fee relative to the value of the security traded,
 - (c) the amount of fees charged by other marketplaces to execute trades in the market,
 - (d) with respect to market data fees, the amount of market data fees charged relative to the market share of the marketplace, and,
 - (e) with respect to order ~~execution~~ terms, including fees, whether the outcome of their application is consistent with the policy goals of order protection.

The Canadian securities regulatory authorities will consider these factors, among others, in determining whether the fees charged by a marketplace unreasonably condition or limit access to its services. With respect to trading fees, it is the view of the Canadian securities regulatory authorities that a trading fee equal to or greater than the minimum trading increment as defined in IIROC’s Universal Market Integrity Rules, as amended, would unreasonably condition or limit access to a marketplace’s services as it would be inconsistent with the policy goals of order protection. Trading fees below the minimum trading increment may also unreasonably condition or limit access to a marketplace’s services when taking into account factors including those listed above.

- 7.2 **Public Interest Rules** – Section 5.3 of the Instrument sets out the requirements applicable to the rules, policies and similar instruments adopted by recognized exchanges and recognized quotation and trade reporting systems. These

requirements acknowledge that recognized exchanges and quotation and trade reporting systems perform regulatory functions. The Instrument does not require the application of these requirements to an ATS's trading requirements. This is because, unlike exchanges, ATSs are not permitted to perform regulatory functions, other than setting requirements regarding conduct in respect of the trading by subscribers on the marketplace, i.e. requirements related to the method of trading or algorithms used by their subscribers to execute trades in the system. However, it is the expectation of the Canadian securities regulatory authority that the requirement in section 5.7 of the Instrument that marketplaces take reasonable steps to ensure they operate in a manner that does not interfere with the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, applies to an ATS's requirements. Such requirements may include those that deal with subscriber qualification, access to the marketplace, how orders are entered, interact, execute, clear and settle.

7.3 Compliance Rules – Section 5.4 of the Instrument requires a recognized exchange and recognized quotation and trade reporting system to have appropriate procedures to deal with violations of rules, policies or other similar instruments of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system. This section does not preclude enforcement action by any other person or company, including the Canadian securities regulatory authorities or the regulation services provider.

7.4 Filing of Rules – Section 5.5 of the Instrument requires a recognized exchange and recognized quotation and trade reporting system to file all rules, policies and other similar instruments and amendments as required by the securities regulatory authority. Initially, all rules, policies and other similar instruments will be reviewed before implementation by the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system. Subsequent to recognition, the securities regulatory authority may develop and implement a protocol that will set out the procedures to be followed with respect to the review and approval of rules, policies and other similar instruments and amendments.

7.5 Review of Rules – The Canadian securities regulatory authorities review the rules, policies and similar instruments of a recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system in accordance with the recognition order and rule protocol issued by the jurisdiction in which the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system is recognized. The rules of recognized exchanges and quotation and trade reporting systems are included in their rulebooks, and the applicable principles and requirements applicable to these rules are set out in section 5.3 of the Instrument. For an ATS, whose trading requirements, including any trading rules, policies or practices, are incorporated in Form 21-101F2, any changes would be filed in accordance with the filing requirements applicable to changes to information in Form 21-101F2 set out in subsections 3.2(1) and 3.2(3) of the Instrument and reviewed by the Canadian securities regulatory authorities in accordance with staff practices in each jurisdiction.

7.6 Fair and Orderly Markets—

(1) Section 5.7 of the Instrument establishes the requirement that a marketplace ~~operate~~ take reasonable steps to ensure it operates in a way that does not interfere with the maintenance of fair and orderly markets. This applies both to the operation of the marketplace itself and to the impact of the marketplace's operations on the Canadian market as a whole.

(2) This section does not impose a responsibility on the marketplace to oversee the conduct of its marketplace participants, unless the marketplace is an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system that has assumed responsibility for monitoring the conduct of its marketplace participants directly rather than through a regulation services provider. However, marketplaces are expected in the normal course to monitor order entry and trading activity for compliance with the marketplace's own operational policies and procedures. They should also alert the regulation services provider if they become aware that disorderly or disruptive order entry or trading may be occurring, or of possible violations of applicable regulatory requirements.

(3) Part of taking reasonable steps to ensure that a marketplace's operations do not interfere with fair and orderly markets necessitates ensuring that its operations support compliance with regulatory requirements including applicable rules of a regulation services provider. This does not mean that a marketplace must system-enforce all regulatory requirements. However, it should not operate in a manner that to the best of its knowledge would cause marketplace participants to breach regulatory requirements when trading on the marketplace.

7.7 Confidential Treatment of Trading Information

(1) Subsection 5.10 (2) of the Instrument provides that a marketplace shall not carry on business as a marketplace unless it has implemented reasonable safeguards and procedures to protect a marketplace participant's trading information. These include

- (a) limiting access to the trading information of marketplace participants, such as the identity of marketplace participants and their orders, to those employees of, or persons or companies retained by, the marketplace to operate the system or to be responsible for its compliance with securities legislation; and

- (b) having in place procedures to ensure that employees of the marketplace cannot use such information for trading in their own accounts.
- (2) The procedures referred to in subsection (1) should be clear and unambiguous and presented to all employees and agents of the marketplace, whether or not they have direct responsibility for the operation of the marketplace.
- (3) Nothing in section 5.10 of the Instrument prohibits a marketplace from complying with National Instrument 54-101 *Communication with Beneficial Owners of Securities of a Reporting Issuer*. This statement is necessary because an investment dealer that operates a marketplace may be an intermediary for the purposes of National Instrument 54-101, and may be required to disclose information under that Instrument.

7.8 Management of Conflicts of Interest—

- (1) Marketplaces are required under section 5.11 of the Instrument to maintain and ensure compliance with policies and procedures that identify and manage conflicts of interest arising from the operation of the marketplace or the services it provides. These may include conflicts, actual or perceived, related to the commercial interest of the marketplace, the interests of its owners or its operators, referral arrangements and the responsibilities and sound functioning of the marketplace. For an exchange and quotation and trade reporting system, they may also include potential conflicts between the operation of the marketplace and its regulatory responsibilities.
- (2) The marketplace's policies should also take into account conflicts for owners that are marketplace participants. These may include inducements to send order flow to the marketplace to obtain a larger ownership position or to use the marketplace to trade against their clients' order flow. These policies should be disclosed as provided in paragraph 10.1(e) of the Instrument.

- 7.9 Outsourcing** – Section 5.12 of the Instrument sets out the requirements that marketplaces that outsource any of their key services or systems to a service provider, which may include affiliates or associates of the marketplace, must meet. Generally, marketplaces are required to establish policies and procedures to evaluate and approve these outsourcing agreements. Such policies and procedures would include assessing the suitability of potential service providers and the ability of the marketplace to continue to comply with securities legislation in the event of the service provider's bankruptcy, insolvency or termination of business. Marketplaces are also required to monitor the ongoing performance of the service provider to which they outsourced key services, systems or facility/facilities. The requirements under section 5.12 of the Instrument apply regardless of whether the outsourcing arrangements are with third-party service providers, or with affiliates of the marketplaces.

PART 8 — REQUIREMENTS ONLY APPLICABLE TO ATSs

PART 8 — RISK DISCLOSURE TO MARKETPLACE PARTICIPANTS

- 8.1 Risk disclosure to non-registered subscribers** — Subsection **marketplace participants** – Subsections 5.9(2) and 6.11(2) of the Instrument requires an ATS require a marketplace to obtain an acknowledgement from its marketplace participants. The acknowledgement may be obtained in a number of ways, including requesting the signature or of the marketplace participant or requesting that the marketplace participant initial an initial box or check a check-off box. This may be done electronically. The acknowledgement must be specific to the information required to be disclosed under the relevant subsection and must confirm that the marketplace participant has received the required disclosure. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities are of the view that it is the responsibility of the marketplace to ensure that an acknowledgement is obtained from the marketplace participant in a timely manner.

- 8.2 [repealed]**

PART 9 INFORMATION TRANSPARENCY REQUIREMENTS FOR EXCHANGE-TRADED SECURITIES

9.1 Information Transparency Requirements for Exchange-Traded Securities

- (1) Subsection 7.1(1) of the Instrument requires a marketplace that displays orders of exchange-traded securities to any person or company to provide accurate and timely information regarding those orders to an information processor as required by the information processor or, if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities consider that a marketplace that sends information about orders of exchange-traded securities, including indications of interest that meet the definition of an order, to a smart order router is “displaying” that information. The marketplace would be subject to the transparency requirements of subsection 7.1(1) of the Instrument. The transparency requirements of Subsections subsection 7.1(1) of the Instrument do not apply to a marketplace that displays orders of exchange-traded securities to its employees or to persons or companies retained by the marketplace to assist in the operation of the marketplace, as long as these orders meet a minimum size threshold set by the regulation services provider. In other

words, the only orders that are exempt from the transparency requirements are those meeting the minimum size threshold. Section 7.2 requires a marketplace to provide accurate and timely information regarding trades of exchange-traded securities that it executes to an information processor as required by the information processor or, if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider. Some marketplaces, such as exchanges, may be regulation services providers and will establish standards for the information vendors they use to display order and trade information to ensure that the information displayed by the information vendors is timely, accurate and promotes market integrity. If the marketplace has entered into a contract with a regulation services provider under NI 23-101, the marketplace must provide information to the regulation services provider and an information vendor that meets the standards set by that regulation services provider.

- (2) In complying with sections 7.1 and 7.2 of the Instrument, a marketplace should not make the required order and trade information available to any other person or company on a more timely basis than it makes that information available to the information processor or information vendor. In addition, any information provided by a marketplace to an information processor or information vendor must include identification of the marketplace and should contain all relevant information including details as to volume, symbol, price and time of the order or trade.
- (3) [Repealed]
- (4) [Repealed]
- (5) It is expected that if there are multiple regulation service providers, the standards of the various regulation service providers must be consistent. In order to maintain market integrity for securities trading in different marketplaces, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities will, through their oversight of the regulation service providers, review and monitor the standards established by all regulation service providers so that business content, service level standards, and other relevant standards are substantially similar for all regulation service providers.

9.2 [Repealed]

PART 10 INFORMATION TRANSPARENCY REQUIREMENTS FOR UNLISTED DEBT SECURITIES

10.1 Information Transparency Requirements for Unlisted Debt Securities

- (1) The requirement to provide transparency of information regarding orders and trades of government debt securities in section 8.1 of the Instrument does not apply until January 1, 2015. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities will continue to review the transparency requirements, in order to determine if the transparency requirements summarized in subsections (2) and (3) below should be amended.
- (2) The requirements of the information processor for government debt securities are as follows:
 - (a) Marketplaces trading government debt securities and inter-dealer bond brokers are required to provide in real time quotation information displayed on the marketplace for all bids and offers with respect to unlisted debt securities designated by the information processor, including details as to type, issuer, coupon and maturity of security, best bid price, best ask price and total disclosed volume at such prices; and
 - (b) Marketplaces trading government debt securities and inter-dealer bond brokers are required to provide in real time details of trades of all government debt securities designated by the information processor, including details as to the type, issuer, series, coupon and maturity, price and time of the trade and the volume traded.
- (3) The requirements of the information processor for corporate debt securities are as follows:
 - (a) Marketplaces trading corporate debt securities, inter-dealer bond brokers and dealers trading corporate debt securities outside of a marketplace are required to provide details of trades of all corporate debt securities designated by the information processor, including details as to the type of counterparty, issuer, type of security, class, series, coupon and maturity, price and time of the trade and, subject to the caps set out below, the volume traded, no later than one hour from the time of the trade or such shorter period of time determined by the information processor. If the total par value of a trade of an investment grade corporate debt security is greater than \$2 million, the trade details provided to the information processor are to be reported as "\$2 million+". If the total par value of a trade of a non-investment grade corporate debt security is greater than \$200,000, the trade details provided to the information processor are to be reported as "\$200,000+".
 - (b) Although subsection 8.2(1) of the Instrument requires marketplaces to provide information regarding orders of corporate debt securities, the information processor has not required this information to be provided.

- (c) A marketplace, an inter-dealer bond broker or a dealer will satisfy the requirements in subsections 8.2(1), 8.2(3), 8.2(4) and 8.2(5) of the Instrument by providing accurate and timely information to an information vendor that meets the standards set by the regulation services provider for the fixed income markets.
- (4) The marketplace upon which the trade is executed will not be shown, unless the marketplace determines that it wants its name to be shown.
- (5) The information processor is required to use transparent criteria and a transparent process to select government debt securities and designated corporate debt securities. The information processor is also required to make the criteria and the process publicly available.
- (6) An "investment grade corporate debt security" is a corporate debt security that is rated by one of the listed rating organizations at or above one of the following rating categories or a rating category that preceded or replaces a category listed below:

Rating Organization	Long Term Debt	Short Term
Fitch, Inc.	BBB	F3
Dominion Bond Rating Service Limited	BBB	R-2
Moody's Investors Service, Inc.	Baa	Prime-3
Standard & Poors Corporation	BBB	A-3

- (7) A "non-investment grade corporate debt security" is a corporate debt security that is not an investment grade corporate debt security.
- (8) The information processor will publish the list of designated government debt securities and designated corporate debt securities. The information processor will give reasonable notice of any change to the list.
- (9) The information processor may request changes to the transparency requirements by filing an amendment to Form 21-101F5 with the Canadian securities regulatory authorities pursuant to subsection 14.2(1) of the Instrument. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities will review the amendment to Form 21-101F5 to determine whether the proposed changes are contrary to the public interest, to ensure fairness and to ensure that there is an appropriate balance between the standards of transparency and market quality (defined in terms of market liquidity and efficiency) in each area of the market. The proposed changes to the transparency requirements will also be subject to consultation with market participants.
- 10.2 Availability of Information** – In complying with the requirements in sections 8.1 and 8.2 of the Instrument to provide accurate and timely order and trade information to an information processor or an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider, a marketplace, an inter-dealer bond broker or dealer should not make the required order and trade information available to any other person or company on a more timely basis than it makes that information available to the information processor or information vendor.
- 10.3 Consolidated Feed** – Section 8.3 of the Instrument requires the information processor to produce a consolidated feed in real-time showing the information provided to the information processor.

PART 11 MARKET INTEGRATION

- 11.1 [Repealed]
- 11.2 [Repealed]
- 11.3 [Repealed]
- 11.4 [Repealed]

- 11.5 Market Integration** – Although the Canadian securities regulatory authorities have removed the concept of a market integrator, we continue to be of the view that market integration is important to our marketplaces. We expect to achieve market integration by focusing on compliance with fair access and best execution requirements. We will continue to monitor developments to ensure that the lack of a market integrator does not unduly affect the market.

PART 12 TRANSPARENCY OF MARKETPLACE OPERATIONS

12.1 Transparency of Marketplace Operations

- (1) Section 10.1 of the Instrument requires that marketplaces make publicly available certain information pertaining to their operations and services. While section 10.1 sets out the minimum disclosure requirements, marketplaces may wish to make publicly available other information, as appropriate. Where this information is included in a marketplace's rules, regulations, policies and procedures or practices that are publicly available, the marketplace need not duplicate this disclosure.
- (2) ~~Subsection Paragraph~~ 10.1(a) requires marketplaces to disclose publicly ~~their fee schedule~~all fees, including listing, trading, ~~co-location~~, data and routing fees charged by the marketplace. ~~The trading fees should provide the minimum and maximum fees payable for certain representative transactions. It, an affiliate or by a third party to which services have directly or indirectly been outsourced or which directly or indirectly provides those services. This means that a marketplace is expected to publish and make readily available the schedule(s) of fees charged to any and all users of these services, including the basis for charging each fee (e.g., a per share basis for trading fees, a per subscriber basis for data fees, etc.) and would also include any fee rebate or discount and the basis for earning the rebate or discount. With respect to trading fees, it is not the intention of the Canadian securities regulatory authorities that a commission fee charged by a dealer for dealer services be disclosed in this context. Each marketplace is required to publicly post a schedule of all trading fees that are applicable to outside marketplace participants that are accessing an order and executing a trade displayed through an information processor or information vendor. The requirement to disclose trading fees does not require a combined price calculation by each marketplace.~~
- (3) ~~Subsection Paragraph~~ 10.1(b) requires marketplaces to disclose information on how orders are entered, interact and execute. This would include a description of ~~how orders are prioritized for~~the priority of execution for all order types and the types of crosses that may be executed on the marketplace. A marketplace should also disclose whether it sends information regarding indications of interest or order information to a smart order router.
- (4) ~~Subsection Paragraph~~ 10.1(e) requires a marketplace to disclose its conflict of interest policies and procedures. For conflicts arising from the ownership of a marketplace by marketplace participants, the marketplace should include in its marketplace participant agreements a requirement that marketplace participants disclose that ownership to their clients at least quarterly. This is consistent with the marketplace participant's existing obligations to disclose conflicts of interest under National Instrument 31-103 Registration Requirements, Exemptions and Ongoing Registrant Requirements. A marketplace should disclose if a marketplace or affiliated entity of a marketplace intends to trade for its own account on the marketplace against or in competition with client orders.
- (5) Paragraph 10.1(f) requires marketplaces to disclose a description of any arrangements where the marketplace refers its participants to the services of a third-party provider where the marketplace receives some benefit (fee rebate, payment, etc.) if the marketplace participant uses the services of the third-party service provider, and has a potential ~~conflicts~~conflict of interest.
- (5)6) ~~Subsection Paragraph~~ 10.1(g) requires marketplaces that offer routing services to disclose a description of how routing decisions are made. The subsection applies whether routing is done by a marketplace-owned smart order router, by an affiliate of a marketplace, or by a third-party to which routing was outsourced.
- (6)7) ~~Subsection Paragraph~~ 10.1(h) applies to marketplaces that disseminate indications of interest or any information in order to attract order flow. The Instrument requires that these marketplaces make publicly available information regarding their practices regarding the dissemination of information. This would include a description of the type of information included in the indication of interest displayed, and the types of recipients of such information. For example, a marketplace would describe whether the recipients of an indication of interest are the general public, all of its subscribers, particular categories of subscribers or smart order routers operated by their subscribers or by third party vendors.

PART 13 RECORDKEEPING REQUIREMENTS FOR MARKETPLACES

- 13.1 Recordkeeping Requirements for Marketplaces** – Part 11 of the Instrument requires a marketplace to maintain certain records. Generally, under provisions of securities legislation, the securities regulatory authorities can require a marketplace to deliver to them any of the records required to be kept by them under securities legislation, including the records required to be maintained under Part 11.

- 13.2 Synchronization of Clocks** – Subsections 11.5(1) and (2) of the Instrument require the synchronization of clocks with a regulation services provider that monitors the trading of the relevant securities on marketplaces, and by, as appropriate, inter-dealer bond brokers or dealers. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities are of the view that synchronization requires continual synchronization using an appropriate national time standard as chosen by a regulation services provider. Even if a marketplace has not retained a regulation services provider, its clocks should be synchronized with any regulation services provider monitoring trading in the particular securities traded on that marketplace. Each regulation services provider will monitor the information that it receives from all marketplaces, dealers and, if appropriate, inter-dealer bond brokers, to ensure that the clocks are appropriately synchronized. If there is more than one regulation services provider, in meeting their obligation to coordinate monitoring and enforcement under section 7.5 of NI 23-101, regulation services providers are required to agree on one standard against which synchronization will occur. In the event there is no regulation services provider, a recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system are also required to coordinate with other recognized exchanges or recognized quotation and trade reporting systems regarding the synchronization of clocks.

PART 14 MARKETPLACE SYSTEMS AND BUSINESS CONTINUITY PLANNING

- 14.1 Systems Requirements** – This section applies to all the systems of a particular marketplace that are identified in the introduction to section 12.1 of the Instrument.

- (1) Paragraph 12.1(a) of the Instrument requires the marketplace to develop and maintain an adequate system of internal control over the systems specified. As well, the marketplace is required to develop and maintain adequate general computer controls. These are the controls which are implemented to support information technology planning, acquisition, development and maintenance, computer operations, information systems support, and security. Recognized guides as to what constitutes adequate information technology controls include *Information Technology Control Guidelines* from the Canadian Institute of Chartered Accountants (CICA) and *COBIT* from the IT Governance Institute.
- (2) Paragraph 12.1(b) of the Instrument requires a marketplace to meet certain systems capacity, performance and disaster recovery standards. These standards are consistent with prudent business practice. The activities and tests required in this paragraph are to be carried out at least once a year. In practice, continuing changes in technology, risk management requirements and competitive pressures will often result in these activities being carried out or tested more frequently.
- (3) Subsection 12.2(1) of the Instrument requires a marketplace to engage a qualified party to conduct an annual independent assessment of the internal controls referred to in paragraph 12.1(a) of the Instrument. A qualified party is a person or company or a group of persons or companies with relevant experience in both information technology and in the evaluation of related internal controls in a complex information technology environment, such as external auditors or third party information system consultants. Before engaging a qualified party, a marketplace should discuss its choice with the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority.
- (4) Paragraph 12.1(c) of the Instrument requires the marketplace to notify the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority of any material systems failure. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities consider a failure, malfunction or delay to be "material" if the marketplace would in the normal course of operations escalate the matter to or inform its senior management ultimately accountable for technology. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities also expect that, as part of this notification, the marketplace will provide updates on the status of the failure, the resumption of service and the results of its internal review of the failure.
- (5) Under section 15.1 of the Instrument, a regulator or the securities regulatory authority may consider granting a marketplace an exemption from the requirements to engage a qualified party to conduct an annual independent systems review and prepare a report under subsection 12.2(1) of the Instrument provided that the marketplace prepare a control self-assessment and file this self-assessment with the regulator or in Québec, the securities regulatory authority. The scope of the self-assessment would be similar to the scope that would have applied if the marketplace underwent an independent systems review. Reporting of the self-assessment results and the timeframe for reporting would be consistent with that established for an independent systems review.

In determining if the exemption is in the public interest and the length of the exemption, the regulator or securities regulatory authority may consider a number of factors including: the market share of the marketplace, the timing of the last independent systems review, changes to systems or staff of the marketplace and whether the marketplace has experienced material systems failures, malfunction or delays.

14.2 Availability of Technology Specifications and Testing Facilities

- (1) Subsection 12.3(1) of the Instrument requires marketplaces to make their technology requirements regarding interfacing with or accessing the marketplace publicly available in their final form for at least three months. If there are material changes to these requirements after they are made publicly available and before operations begin, the revised requirements should be made publicly available for a new three month period prior to operations. The subsection also requires that an operating marketplace make its technology specifications publicly available for at least three months before implementing a material change to its technology requirements.
- (2) Subsection 12.3(2) of the Instrument requires marketplaces to provide testing facilities for interfacing with or accessing the marketplace for at least two months immediately prior to operations once the technology requirements have been made publicly available. Should the marketplace make its specifications publicly available for longer than three months, it may make the testing available during that period or thereafter as long as it is at least two months prior to operations. If the marketplace, once it has begun operations, proposes material changes to its technology systems, it is required to make testing facilities publicly available for at least two months before implementing the material systems change.
- (3) Subsection 12.3(4) of the Instrument provides that if a marketplace must make a change to its technology requirements regarding interfacing with or accessing the marketplace to immediately address a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems or equipment, it must immediately notify the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, and, if applicable, its regulation services provider. We expect the amended technology requirements to be made publicly available as soon as practicable, either while the changes are being made or immediately after.

14.3 Business Continuity Planning

Section 12.4 of the Instrument requires that marketplaces develop and maintain reasonable business continuity plans, including disaster recovery plans. Business continuity planning should encompass all policies and procedures to ensure uninterrupted provision of key services regardless of the cause of potential disruption. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities expect that, in order for a marketplace to have a reasonable business continuity plan, including a disaster recovery plan, it test it on a periodic basis, and at least annually and it should participate in industry-wide tests.

PART 15 CLEARING AND SETTLEMENT

- 15.1 Clearing and Settlement** – Subsection 13.1(1) of the Instrument requires that all trades executed through a marketplace shall be reported and settled through a clearing agency. Subsections 13.1(2) and (3) of the Instrument require that an ATS and its subscriber enter into an agreement that specifies which entity will report and settle the trades of securities. If the subscriber is registered as a dealer under securities legislation, either the ATS, the subscriber or an agent for the subscriber that is a member of a clearing agency may report and settle trades. If the subscriber is not registered as a dealer under securities legislation, either the ATS or an agent for the subscriber that is a clearing member of a clearing agency may report and settle trades. The ATS is responsible for ensuring that an agreement with the subscriber is in place before any trade is executed for the subscriber. If the agreement is not in place at the time of the execution of the trade, the ATS is responsible for clearing and settling that trade if a default occurs.

PART 16 INFORMATION PROCESSOR

16.1 Information Processor

- (1) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities believe that it is important for those who trade to have access to accurate information on the prices at which trades in particular securities are taking place (i.e., last sale reports) and the prices at which others have expressed their willingness to buy or sell (i.e., orders).
- (2) An information processor is required under subsection 14.4(2) of the Instrument to provide timely, accurate, reliable and fair collection, processing, distribution and publication of information for orders for, and trades in, securities. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities expect that in meeting this requirement, an information processor will ensure that all marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers and dealers that are required to provide information are given access to the information processor on fair and reasonable terms. In addition, it is expected that an information processor will not give preference to the information of any marketplace, inter-dealer bond broker or dealer when collecting, processing, distributing or publishing that information.
- (3) An information processor is required under subsection 14.4(5) of the Instrument to provide prompt and accurate order and trade information, and to not unreasonably restrict fair access to the information. As part of the obligation relating to fair access, an information processor is expected to make the disseminated and published information available on terms that are reasonable and not discriminatory. For example, an information processor will not provide order and

trade information to any single person or company or group of persons or companies on a more timely basis than is afforded to others, and will not show preference to any single person or company or group of persons or companies in relation to pricing.

16.2 Selection of an Information Processor

- (1) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities will review Form 21-101F5 to determine whether it is contrary to the public interest for the person or company who filed the form to act as an information processor. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities will look at a number of factors when reviewing the form filed, including,
 - (a) the performance capability, standards and procedures for the collection, processing, distribution, and publication of information with respect to orders for, and trades in, securities;
 - (b) whether all marketplaces may obtain access to the information processor on fair and reasonable terms;
 - (c) personnel qualifications;
 - (d) whether the information processor has sufficient financial resources for the proper performance of its functions;
 - (e) the existence of another entity performing the proposed function for the same type of security;
 - (f) the systems report referred to in subsection 14.5(c) of the Instrument.
- (2) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities request that the forms and exhibits be filed in electronic format, where possible.
- (3) The forms filed by an information processor under the Instrument will be kept confidential. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities are of the view that they contain intimate financial, commercial and technical information and that the interests of the filers in non-disclosure outweigh the desirability of adhering to the principle that all forms be available for public inspection.

16.3 Change to Information – Under subsection 14.2(1) of the Instrument, an information processor is required to file an amendment to the information provided in Form 21-101F5 at least 45 days before implementing a significant change involving a matter set out in Form 21-101F5, in the manner set out in Form 21-101F5. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities would consider significant changes to include:

- (a) changes to the governance of the information processor, including the structure of its board of directors and changes in the board committees and their mandates;₂
- (b) changes in control over the information processor;₂
- (c) changes affecting the independence of the information processor, including independence from the marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers and dealers that provide their data to meet the requirements of the Instrument;₂
- (d) changes to the services or functions performed by the information processor;₂
- (e) changes to the data products offered by the information processor;₂
- (f) changes to the fees and fee structure related to the services provided by the information processor;₂
- (g) changes to the revenue sharing model for revenues from fees related to services provided by the information processor;₂
- (h) changes to the systems and technology used by the information processor, including those affecting its capacity;₂
- (i) new arrangements or changes to arrangements to outsource the operation of any aspect of the services of the information processor;₂
- (j) changes to the means of access to the services of the information processor;₂ and

- (k) where the information processor is responsible for making a determination of the data which must be reported, including the securities for which information must be reported in accordance with the Instrument, changes in the criteria and process for selection and communication of these securities.

These would not include housekeeping or administrative changes to the information included in Form 21-101F5, such as changes in the routine processes, practice or administration of the information processor, changes due to standardization of terminology, or minor system or technology changes that do not significantly impact the system of the information processor or its capacity. Such changes would be filed in accordance with the requirements outlined in subsection 14.2(2) of the Instrument.

- 16.4 System Requirements** – The guidance in section 14.1 of this Companion Policy applies to the systems requirements for an information processor.

NATIONAL INSTRUMENT 21-101 MARKETPLACE OPERATION

PART 1 DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATION

1.1 Definitions – In this Instrument

"accounting principles" means accounting principles as defined in National Instrument 52-107 *Acceptable Accounting Principles and Auditing Standards*;

"alternative trading system",

- (a) in every jurisdiction other than Ontario, means a marketplace that
 - (i) is not a recognized quotation and trade reporting system or a recognized exchange, and
 - (ii) does not
 - (A) require an issuer to enter into an agreement to have its securities traded on the marketplace,
 - (B) provide, directly, or through one or more subscribers, a guarantee of a two-sided market for a security on a continuous or reasonably continuous basis,
 - (C) set requirements governing the conduct of subscribers, other than conduct in respect of the trading by those subscribers on the marketplace, and
 - (D) discipline subscribers other than by exclusion from participation in the marketplace, and
- (b) in Ontario has the meaning set out in subsection 1(1) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario);

"ATS" means an alternative trading system;

"corporate debt security" means a debt security issued in Canada by a company or corporation that is not listed on a recognized exchange or quoted on a recognized quotation and trade reporting system or listed on an exchange or quoted on a quotation and trade reporting system that has been recognized for the purposes of this Instrument and NI 23-101, and does not include a government debt security;

"exchange-traded security" means a security that is listed on a recognized exchange or is quoted on a recognized quotation and trade reporting system or is listed on an exchange or quoted on a quotation and trade reporting system that is recognized for the purposes of this Instrument and NI 23-101;

"foreign exchange-traded security" means a security that is listed on an exchange, or quoted on a quotation and trade reporting system, outside of Canada that is regulated by an ordinary member of the International Organization of Securities Commissions and is not listed on an exchange or quoted on a quotation and trade reporting system in Canada;

"government debt security" means

- (a) a debt security issued or guaranteed by the government of Canada, or any province or territory of Canada,
- (b) a debt security issued or guaranteed by any municipal corporation or municipal body in Canada, or secured by or payable out of rates or taxes levied under the law of a jurisdiction of Canada on property in the jurisdiction and to be collected by or through the municipality in which the property is situated,
- (c) a debt security issued or guaranteed by a crown corporation or public body,
- (d) in Ontario, a debt security of any school board in Ontario or of a corporation established under section 248(1) of the *Education Act* (Ontario), or
- (e) in Québec, a debt security of the Comité de gestion de la taxe scolaire de l'île de Montréal

that is not listed on a recognized exchange or quoted on a recognized quotation and trade reporting system or listed on an exchange or quoted on a quotation and trade reporting system that has been recognized for the purposes of this Instrument and NI 23-101;

"IIROC" means the Investment Industry Regulatory Organization of Canada;

"information processor" means any person or company that receives and provides information under this Instrument and has filed Form 21-101F5;

"inter-dealer bond broker" means a person or company that is approved by IIROC under IIROC Rule 36 Inter-Dealer Bond Brokerage Systems, as amended, and is subject to IIROC Rule 36 and IIROC Rule 2100 Inter-Dealer Bond Brokerage Systems, as amended;

"market integrator" [repealed]

"marketplace",

- (a) in every jurisdiction other than Ontario, means
 - (i) an exchange,
 - (ii) a quotation and trade reporting system,
 - (iii) a person or company not included in clause (i) or (ii) that
 - (A) constitutes, maintains or provides a market or facility for bringing together buyers and sellers of securities,
 - (B) brings together the orders for securities of multiple buyers and sellers, and
 - (C) uses established, non-discretionary methods under which the orders interact with each other, and the buyers and sellers entering the orders agree to the terms of a trade, or
 - (iv) a dealer that executes a trade of an exchange-traded security outside of a marketplace, but does not include an inter-dealer bond broker; and
- (b) in Ontario has the meaning set out in subsection 1(1) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario);

"marketplace participant" means a member of an exchange, a user of a quotation and trade reporting system, or a subscriber of an ATS;

"member" means, for a recognized exchange, a person or company

- (a) holding at least one seat on the exchange, or
- (b) that has been granted direct trading access rights by the exchange and is subject to regulatory oversight by the exchange,

and the person or company's representatives;

"NI 23-101" means National Instrument 23-101 Trading Rules;

"order" means a firm indication by a person or company, acting as either principal or agent, of a willingness to buy or sell a security;

"private enterprise" means a private enterprise as defined in Part 3 of National Instrument 52-107 *Acceptable Accounting Principles and Auditing Standards*;

"publicly accountable enterprise" means a publicly accountable enterprise as defined in Part 3 of National Instrument 52-107 *Acceptable Accounting Principles and Auditing Standards*;

"recognized exchange" means

- (a) in Ontario, a recognized exchange as defined in subsection 1(1) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario),
- (b) in Québec, an exchange recognized by the securities regulatory authority under securities or derivatives legislation as an exchange or self-regulatory organization, and

- (c) in every other jurisdiction, an exchange recognized by the securities regulatory authority as an exchange, self-regulatory organization or self-regulatory body;

"recognized quotation and trade reporting system" means

- (a) in every jurisdiction other than British Columbia, Ontario and Québec, a quotation and trade reporting system recognized by the securities regulatory authority under securities legislation to carry on business as a quotation and trade reporting system,
- (b) in British Columbia, a quotation and trade reporting system recognized by the securities regulatory authority under securities legislation as a quotation and trade reporting system or as an exchange,
- (b.1) in Ontario, a recognized quotation and trade reporting system as defined in subsection 1(1) of the *Securities Act* (Ontario), and
- (c) in Québec, a quotation and trade reporting system recognized by the securities regulatory authority under securities or derivatives legislation as an exchange or a self-regulatory organization;

"regulation services provider" means a person or company that provides regulation services and is

- (a) a recognized exchange,
- (b) a recognized quotation and trade reporting system, or
- (c) a recognized self-regulatory entity;

"self-regulatory entity" means a self-regulatory body or self-regulatory organization that

- (a) is not an exchange, and
- (b) is recognized as a self-regulatory body or self-regulatory organization by the securities regulatory authority;

"subscriber" means, for an ATS, a person or company that has entered into a contractual agreement with the ATS to access the ATS for the purpose of effecting trades or submitting, disseminating or displaying orders on the ATS, and the person or company's representatives;

"trading fee" means the fee that a marketplace charges for execution of a trade on that marketplace;

"trading volume" means the number of securities traded;

"unlisted debt security" means a government debt security or corporate debt security; and

"user" means, for a recognized quotation and trade reporting system, a person or company that quotes orders or reports trades on the recognized quotation and trade reporting system, and the person or company's representatives.

1.2 Interpretation – Marketplace – For the purpose of the definition of "marketplace" in section 1.1, a person or company is not considered to constitute, maintain or provide a market or facilities for bringing together buyers and sellers of securities, solely because the person or company routes orders to a marketplace or a dealer for execution.

1.3 Interpretation – Affiliated Entity, Controlled Entity and Subsidiary Entity

- (1) In this Instrument, a person or company is considered to be an affiliated entity of another person or company if one is a subsidiary entity of the other or if both are subsidiary entities of the same person or company, or if each of them is a controlled entity of the same person or company.
- (2) In this Instrument, a person or company is considered to be controlled by a person or company if
 - (a) in the case of a person or company,
 - (i) voting securities of the first-mentioned person or company carrying more than 50 percent of the votes for the election of directors are held, otherwise than by way of security only, by or for the benefit of the other person or company, and

- (ii) the votes carried by the securities are entitled, if exercised, to elect a majority of the directors of the first-mentioned person or company;
- (b) in the case of a partnership that does not have directors, other than a limited partnership, the second-mentioned person or company holds more than 50 percent of the interests in the partnership; or
- (c) in the case of a limited partnership, the general partner is the second-mentioned person or company.
- (3) In this Instrument, a person or company is considered to be a subsidiary entity of another person or company if
 - (a) it is a controlled entity of,
 - (i) that other,
 - (ii) that other and one or more persons or companies each of which is a controlled entity of that other, or
 - (iii) two or more persons or companies, each of which is a controlled entity of that other; or
 - (b) it is a subsidiary entity of a person or company that is the other's subsidiary entity.

1.4 Interpretation – Security

- (1) In Alberta and British Columbia, the term "security", when used in this Instrument, includes an option that is an exchange contract but does not include a futures contract.
- (2) In Ontario, the term "security", when used in this Instrument, does not include a commodity futures contract or a commodity futures option that is not traded on a commodity futures exchange registered with or recognized by the Commission under the *Commodity Futures Act* or the form of which is not accepted by the Director under the *Commodity Futures Act*.
- (3) In Québec, the term "security", when used in this Instrument, includes a standardized derivative as this notion is defined in the *Derivatives Act*.

1.5 Interpretation – NI 23-101

Terms defined or interpreted in NI 23-101 and used in this Instrument have the respective meanings ascribed to them in NI 23-101.

PART 2 APPLICATION

- 2.1 Application** – This Instrument does not apply to a marketplace that is a member of a recognized exchange or a member of an exchange that has been recognized for the purposes of this Instrument and NI 23-101.

PART 3 MARKETPLACE INFORMATION

3.1 Initial Filing of Information

- (1) A person or company must file as part of its application for recognition as an exchange or a quotation and trade reporting system Form 21-101F1.
- (2) A person or company must not carry on business as an ATS unless it has filed Form 21-101F2 at least 45 days before the ATS begins to carry on business as an ATS.

3.2 Change in Information

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), a marketplace must not implement a significant change to a matter set out in Form 21-101F1 or in Form 21-101F2 unless the marketplace has filed an amendment to the information provided in Form 21-101F1 or in Form 21-101F2 in the manner set out in the Form at least 45 days before implementing the change.
- (2) A marketplace must file an amendment to the information provided in Exhibit L – Fees of Form 21-101F1 or Exhibit L – Fees of Form 21-101F2, as applicable, at least seven business days before implementing a change to the information provided in Exhibit L – Fees.

- (3) For any change to a matter set out in Form 21-101F1 or Form 21-101F2 other than a change referred to in subsection (1) or (2), a marketplace must file an amendment to the information provided in the Form by the earlier of
 - (a) the close of business of the marketplace on the 10th day after the end of the month in which the change was made, and
 - (b) if applicable, the time the marketplace discloses the change publicly.

3.3 Reporting Requirements

A marketplace must file Form 21-101F3 within 30 days after the end of each calendar quarter during any part of which the marketplace has carried on business.

3.4 Ceasing to Carry on Business as an ATS

- (1) An ATS that intends to cease carrying on business as an ATS must file a report on Form 21-101F4 at least 30 days before ceasing to carry on that business.
- (2) An ATS that involuntarily ceases to carry on business as an ATS must file a report on Form 21-101F4 as soon as practicable after it ceases to carry on that business.

3.5 Forms Filed in Electronic Form

A person or company that is required to file a form or exhibit under this Instrument must file that form or exhibit in electronic form.

PART 4 MARKETPLACE FILING OF AUDITED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

4.1 Filing of Initial Audited Financial Statements

- (1) A person or company must file as part of its application for recognition as an exchange or a quotation and trade reporting system, together with Form 21-101F1, audited financial statements for its latest financial year that
 - (a) are prepared in accordance with Canadian GAAP applicable to publicly accountable enterprises or IFRS,
 - (b) include notes to the financial statements that identify the accounting principles used to prepare the financial statements, and
 - (c) are audited in accordance with Canadian GAAS or International Standards on Auditing and are accompanied by an auditor's report.
- (2) A person or company must not carry on business as an ATS unless it has filed, together with Form 21-101F2, audited financial statements for its latest financial year.

4.2 Filing of Annual Audited Financial Statements

- (1) A recognized exchange and a recognized quotation and trade reporting system must file annual audited financial statements within 90 days after the end of its financial year in accordance with the requirements outlined in subsection 4.1(1).
- (2) An ATS must file annual audited financial statements.

PART 5 MARKETPLACE REQUIREMENTS

5.1 Access Requirements

- (1) A marketplace must not unreasonably prohibit, condition or limit access by a person or company to services offered by it.
- (2) A marketplace must
 - (a) establish written standards for granting access to each of its services; and

- (b) keep records of
 - (i) each grant of access including the reasons for granting access to an applicant, and
 - (ii) each denial or limitation of access, including the reasons for denying or limiting access to an applicant.
- (3) A marketplace must not
 - (a) permit unreasonable discrimination among clients, issuers and marketplace participants; or
 - (b) impose any burden on competition that is not reasonably necessary and appropriate.

5.2 No Restrictions on Trading on Another Marketplace – A marketplace shall not prohibit, condition, or otherwise limit, directly or indirectly, a marketplace participant from effecting a transaction on any marketplace.

5.3 Public Interest Rules

- (1) Rules, policies and other similar instruments adopted by a recognized exchange or a recognized quotation and trade reporting system
 - (a) shall not be contrary to the public interest; and
 - (b) shall be designed to
 - (i) ensure compliance with securities legislation,
 - (ii) prevent fraudulent and manipulative acts and practices,
 - (iii) promote just and equitable principles of trade, and
 - (iv) foster co-operation and co-ordination with persons or companies engaged in regulating, clearing, settling, processing information with respect to, and facilitating, transactions in securities.

(2) **[repealed]**

5.4 Compliance Rules – A recognized exchange or a recognized quotation and trade reporting system shall have rules or other similar instruments that

- (a) require compliance with securities legislation; and
- (b) provide appropriate sanctions for violations of the rules or other similar instruments of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system.

5.5 Filing of Rules – A recognized exchange or a recognized quotation and trade reporting system shall file all rules, policies and other similar instruments, and all amendments thereto.

5.6 [repealed]

5.7 Fair and Orderly Markets – A marketplace must take all reasonable steps to ensure that its operations do not interfere with fair and orderly markets.

5.8 Discriminatory Terms – A marketplace must not impose terms that have the effect of discriminating between orders that are routed to the marketplace and orders that are entered on that marketplace for execution.

5.9 Risk Disclosure for Trades in Foreign Exchange-Traded Securities

- (1) A marketplace that is trading foreign exchange-traded securities must provide each marketplace participant with disclosure in substantially the following words:

“The securities traded by or through the marketplace are not listed on an exchange in Canada and may not be securities of a reporting issuer in Canada. As a result, there is no assurance that information concerning the issuer is

available or, if the information is available, that it meets Canadian disclosure requirements.”

- (2) Before the first order for a foreign exchange-traded security is entered onto the marketplace by a marketplace participant, the marketplace must obtain an acknowledgement from the marketplace participant that the marketplace participant has received the disclosure required in subsection (1).

5.10 Confidential Treatment of Trading Information

- (1) A marketplace must not release a marketplace participant's order or trade information to a person or company other than the marketplace participant, a securities regulatory authority or a regulation services provider unless
- (a) the marketplace participant has consented in writing to the release of the information;
 - (b) the release of the information is required by this Instrument or under applicable law; or
 - (c) the information has been publicly disclosed by another person or company, and the disclosure was lawful.
- (2) A marketplace must not carry on business unless it has implemented reasonable safeguards and procedures to protect a marketplace participant's order or trade information, including
- (a) limiting access to order or trade information of marketplace participants to
 - (i) employees of the marketplace, or
 - (ii) persons or companies retained by the marketplace to operate the system or to be responsible for compliance by the marketplace with securities legislation; and
 - (b) implementing standards controlling trading by employees of the marketplace for their own accounts.
- (3) A marketplace must not carry on business as a marketplace unless it has implemented adequate oversight procedures to ensure that the safeguards and procedures established under subsection (2) are followed.

5.11 Management of Conflicts of Interest

A marketplace must establish, maintain and ensure compliance with policies and procedures that identify and manage any conflicts of interest arising from the operation of the marketplace or the services it provides.

5.12 Outsourcing

If a marketplace outsources any of its key services or systems to a service provider, which includes affiliates or associates of the marketplace, the marketplace must:

- (a) establish and maintain policies and procedures for the selection of service providers to which key services and systems may be outsourced and for the evaluation and approval of such outsourcing arrangements,
- (b) identify any conflicts of interest between the marketplace and the service provider to which key services and systems are outsourced, and establish and maintain policies and procedures to mitigate and manage such conflicts of interest,
- (c) enter into a contract with the service provider to which key services and systems are outsourced that is appropriate for the materiality and nature of the outsourced activities and that provides for adequate termination procedures,
- (d) maintain access to the books and records of the service providers relating to the outsourced activities,
- (e) ensure that the securities regulatory authorities have access to all data, information and systems maintained by the service provider on behalf of the marketplace, for the purposes of determining the marketplace's compliance with securities legislation,
- (f) take appropriate measures to determine that service providers to which key services or systems are outsourced establish, maintain and periodically test an appropriate business continuity plan, including a disaster recovery plan,
- (g) take appropriate measures to ensure that the service providers protect the marketplace participants' proprietary, order, trade or any other confidential information, and

- (h) establish processes and procedures to regularly review the performance of the service provider under any such outsourcing arrangement.

PART 6 REQUIREMENTS APPLICABLE ONLY TO ATSs

6.1 Registration – An ATS shall not carry on business as an ATS unless

- (a) it is registered as a dealer;
- (b) it is a member of a self-regulatory entity; and
- (c) it complies with the provisions of this Instrument and NI 23-101.

6.2 Registration Exemption Not Available – Except as provided in this Instrument, the registration exemptions applicable to dealers under securities legislation are not available to an ATS.

6.3 Securities Permitted to be Traded on an ATS – An ATS shall not execute trades in securities other than

- (a) exchange-traded securities;
- (b) corporate debt securities;
- (c) government debt securities; or
- (d) foreign exchange-traded securities.

6.4 [repealed]

6.5 [repealed]

6.6 [repealed]

6.7 Notification of Threshold

- (1) An ATS must notify the securities regulatory authority in writing if,
- (a) during at least two of the preceding three months of operation, the total dollar value of the trading volume on the ATS for a month in any type of security is equal to or greater than 10 percent of the total dollar value of the trading volume for the month in that type of security on all marketplaces in Canada;
 - (b) during at least two of the preceding three months of operation, the total trading volume on the ATS for a month in any type of security is equal to or greater than 10 percent of the total trading volume for the month in that type of security on all marketplaces in Canada; or
 - (c) during at least two of the preceding three months of operation, the number of trades on the ATS for a month in any type of security is equal to or greater than 10 percent of the number of trades for the month in that type of security on all marketplaces in Canada.
- (2) An ATS must provide the notice referred to in subsection (1) within 30 days after the threshold referred to in subsection (1) is met or exceeded.

6.8 [repealed]

6.9 Name – An ATS shall not use in its name the word "exchange", the words "stock market", the word "bourse" or any derivations of those terms.

6.10 [repealed]

6.11 Risk Disclosure to Non-Registered Subscribers

- (1) When opening an account for a subscriber that is not registered as a dealer under securities legislation, an ATS shall provide that subscriber with disclosure in substantially the following words:

Although the ATS is registered as a dealer under securities legislation, it is a marketplace and therefore does not ensure best execution for its subscribers.

- (2) Before the first order submitted by a subscriber that is not registered as a dealer under securities legislation is entered onto the ATS by the subscriber, the ATS shall obtain an acknowledgement from that subscriber that the subscriber has received the disclosure required in subsection (1).

6.12 [repealed]

6.13 [repealed]

PART 7 INFORMATION TRANSPARENCY REQUIREMENTS FOR MARKETPLACES DEALING IN EXCHANGE-TRADED SECURITIES AND FOREIGN EXCHANGE-TRADED SECURITIES

7.1 Pre-Trade Information Transparency – Exchange-Traded Securities

- (1) A marketplace that displays orders of exchange-traded securities to a person or company shall provide accurate and timely information regarding orders for the exchange-traded securities displayed by the marketplace to an information processor as required by the information processor or, if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply if the marketplace only displays orders to its employees or to persons or companies retained by the marketplace to assist in the operation of the marketplace and if the orders posted on the marketplace meet the size threshold set by a regulation services provider.

7.2 Post-Trade Information Transparency – Exchange-Traded Securities – A marketplace shall provide accurate and timely information regarding trades for exchange-traded securities executed on the marketplace to an information processor as required by the information processor or, if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider.

7.3 Pre-Trade Information Transparency – Foreign Exchange-Traded Securities

- (1) A marketplace that displays orders of foreign exchange-traded securities to a person or company shall provide accurate and timely information regarding orders for the foreign exchange-traded securities displayed by the marketplace to an information vendor.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply if the marketplace only displays orders to its employees or to persons or companies retained by the marketplace to assist in the operation of the marketplace and if the orders posted on the marketplace meet the size threshold set by a regulation services provider.

7.4 Post-Trade Information Transparency – Foreign Exchange-Traded Securities – A marketplace shall provide accurate and timely information regarding trades for foreign exchange-traded securities executed on the marketplace to an information vendor.

7.5 Consolidated Feed – Exchange-Traded Securities – An information processor shall produce an accurate consolidated feed in real-time showing the information provided to the information processor under sections 7.1 and 7.2.

7.6 Compliance with Requirements of an Information Processor – A marketplace that is subject to this Part shall comply with the reasonable requirements of the information processor to which it is required to provide information under this Part.

PART 8 INFORMATION TRANSPARENCY REQUIREMENTS FOR MARKETPLACES DEALING IN UNLISTED DEBT SECURITIES, INTER-DEALER BOND BROKERS AND DEALERS

8.1 Pre-Trade and Post-Trade Information Transparency Requirements – Government Debt Securities

- (1) A marketplace that displays orders of government debt securities to a person or company shall provide to an information processor accurate and timely information regarding orders for government debt securities displayed by the marketplace as required by the information processor.

- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply if the marketplace only displays orders to its employees or to persons or companies retained by the marketplace to assist in the operation of the marketplace.
- (3) A marketplace shall provide to an information processor accurate and timely information regarding details of trades of government debt securities executed on the marketplace as required by the information processor.
- (4) An inter-dealer bond broker shall provide to an information processor accurate and timely information regarding orders for government debt securities executed through the inter-dealer bond broker as required by the information processor.
- (5) An inter-dealer bond broker shall provide to an information processor accurate and timely information regarding details of trades of government debt securities executed through the interdealer bond broker as required by the information processor.

8.2 Pre-Trade and Post-Trade Information Transparency Requirements – Corporate Debt Securities

- (1) A marketplace that displays orders of corporate debt securities to a person or company shall provide accurate and timely information regarding orders for designated corporate debt securities displayed by the marketplace to an information processor, as required by the information processor, or if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider, as required by the regulation services provider.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply if the marketplace only displays orders to its employees or to persons or companies retained by the marketplace to assist in the operation of the marketplace.
- (3) A marketplace shall provide accurate and timely information regarding details of trades of designated corporate debt securities executed on the marketplace to an information processor, as required by the information processor, or if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider, as required by the regulation services provider.
- (4) An inter-dealer bond broker shall provide accurate and timely information regarding details of trades of designated corporate debt securities executed through the inter-dealer bond broker to an information processor, as required by the information processor, or if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider, as required by the regulation services provider.
- (5) A dealer executing trades of corporate debt securities outside of a marketplace shall provide accurate and timely information regarding details of trades of designated corporate debt securities traded by or through the dealer to an information processor, as required by the information processor, or if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider, as required by the regulation services provider.

8.3 Consolidated Feed – Unlisted Debt Securities – An information processor shall produce an accurate consolidated feed in real-time showing the information provided to the information processor under sections 8.1 and 8.2.

8.4 Compliance with Requirements of an Information Processor – A marketplace, interdealer bond broker or dealer that is subject to this Part shall comply with the reasonable requirements of the information processor to which it is required to provide information under this Part.

8.5 [repealed]

8.6 Exemption for Government Debt Securities – Section 8.1 does not apply until January 1, 2015.

PART 9 [repealed]

PART 10 TRANSPARENCY OF MARKETPLACE OPERATIONS

10.1 Disclosure by Marketplaces – A marketplace must publicly disclose on its website information reasonably necessary to enable a person or company to understand the marketplace's operations or services it provides, including but not limited to information related to:

- (a) all fees, including any listing, trading, data, co-location and routing fees charged by the marketplace, an affiliate or by a party to which services have directly or indirectly been outsourced or which directly or indirectly provides those services;
- (b) how orders are entered, interact and execute;
- (c) all order types;
- (d) access requirements;
- (e) the policies and procedures that identify and manage any conflicts of interest arising from the operation of the marketplace or the services it provides;
- (f) any referral arrangements between the marketplace and service providers;
- (g) where routing is offered, how routing decisions are made; and
- (h) when indications of interest are disseminated, the information disseminated and the types of recipients of such indications of interest.

10.2 [repealed]**10.3 [repealed]****PART 11 RECORDKEEPING REQUIREMENTS FOR MARKETPLACES**

11.1 Business Records – A marketplace shall keep such books, records and other documents as are reasonably necessary for the proper recording of its business in electronic form.

11.2 Other Records

- (1) As part of the records required to be maintained under section 11.1, a marketplace shall include the following information in electronic form:
 - (a) a record of all marketplace participants who have been granted access to trading in the marketplace;
 - (b) daily trading summaries for the marketplace including
 - (i) a list of securities traded,
 - (ii) transaction volumes
 - (A) for securities other than debt securities, expressed as the number of issues traded, number of trades, total unit volume and total dollar value of trades and, if the price of the securities traded is quoted in a currency other than Canadian dollars, the total value in that other currency, and
 - (B) for debt securities, expressed as the number of trades and total dollar value traded and, if the price of the securities traded is quoted in a currency other than Canadian dollars, the total value in that other currency,
 - (c) a record of each order which must include
 - (i) the order identifier assigned to the order by the marketplace,
 - (ii) the marketplace participant identifier assigned to the marketplace participant transmitting the order,
 - (iii) the identifier assigned to the marketplace where the order is received or originated,
 - (iv) each unique client identifier assigned to a client accessing the marketplace using direct electronic access,
 - (v) the type, issuer, class, series and symbol of the security,

- (vi) the number of securities to which the order applies,
 - (vii) the strike date and strike price, if applicable,
 - (viii) whether the order is a buy or sell order,
 - (ix) whether the order is a short sale order, if applicable,
 - (x) whether the order is a market order, limit order or other type of order, and if the order is not a market order, the price at which the order is to trade,
 - (xi) the date and time the order is first originated or received by the marketplace,
 - (xii) whether the account is a retail, wholesale, employee, proprietary or any other type of account,
 - (xiii) the date and time the order expires,
 - (xiv) whether the order is an intentional cross,
 - (xv) whether the order is a jitney and if so, the identifier of the underlying broker,
 - (xvi) the currency of the order,
 - (xvii) whether the order is routed to another marketplace for execution, and the date, time and name of the marketplace to which the order was routed, and
 - (xviii) whether the order is a directed-action order, and whether the marketplace marked the order as a directed-action order or received the order marked as a directed-action order; and
- (d) in addition to the record maintained in accordance with paragraph (c), all execution report details of orders, including
- (i) the identifier assigned to the marketplace where the order was executed,
 - (ii) whether the order was fully or partially executed,
 - (iii) the number of securities bought or sold,
 - (iv) the date and time of the execution of the order,
 - (v) the price at which the order was executed,
 - (vi) the identifier assigned to the marketplace participant on each side of the trade,
 - (vii) whether the transaction was a cross,
 - (viii) time-sequenced records of all messages sent to or received from an information processor, an information vendor or a marketplace,
 - (ix) the marketplace trading fee for each trade, and
 - (x) each unique client identifier assigned to a client accessing the marketplace using direct electronic access.

11.2.1 Transmission in Electronic Form – A marketplace shall transmit

- (a) to a regulation services provider, if it has entered into an agreement with a regulation services provider in accordance with NI 23-101, the information required by the regulation services provider, within ten business days, in electronic form; and
- (b) to the securities regulatory authority the information required by the securities regulatory authority under securities legislation, within ten business days, in electronic form.

11.3 Record Preservation Requirements

- (1) For a period of not less than seven years from the creation of a record referred to in this section, and for the first two years in a readily accessible location, a marketplace shall keep
 - (a) all records required to be made under sections 11.1 and 11.2;
 - (b) at least one copy of its standards for granting access to trading, if any, all records relevant to its decision to grant, deny or limit access to a person or company and, if applicable, all other records made or received by the marketplace in the course of complying with section 5.1;
 - (c) at least one copy of all records made or received by the marketplace in the course of complying with section 12.1 and 12.4, including all correspondence, memoranda, papers, books, notices, accounts, reports, test scripts, test results, and other similar records;
 - (d) all written notices provided by the marketplace to marketplace participants generally, including notices addressing hours of system operations, system malfunctions, changes to system procedures, maintenance of hardware and software, instructions pertaining to access to the marketplace and denials of, or limitation to, access to the marketplace;
 - (e) the acknowledgement obtained under subsection 5.9(2) or 6.11(2);
 - (f) a copy of any agreement referred to in section 8.4 of NI 23-101; and
 - (g) a copy of any agreement referred to in subsections 13.1(2) and 13.1(3).
- (2) During the period in which a marketplace is in existence, the marketplace shall keep
 - (a) all organizational documents, minute books and stock certificate books;
 - (b) copies of all forms filed under Part 3; and
 - (c) in the case of an ATS, copies of all notices given under section 6.7.

11.4 [repealed]**11.5 Synchronization of Clocks**

- (1) A marketplace trading exchange-traded securities or foreign exchange-traded securities, an information processor receiving information about those securities, and a dealer trading those securities shall synchronize the clocks used for recording or monitoring the time and date of any event that must be recorded under this Part and under NI 23-101 with the clock used by a regulation services provider monitoring the activities of marketplaces and marketplace participants trading those securities.
- (2) A marketplace trading corporate debt securities or government debt securities, an information processor receiving information about those securities, a dealer trading those securities, and an inter-dealer bond broker trading those securities shall synchronize the clocks used for recording or monitoring the time and date of any event that must be recorded under this Part and under NI 23-101 with the clock used by a regulation services provider monitoring the activities of marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers or dealers trading those securities.

PART 12 MARKETPLACE SYSTEMS AND BUSINESS CONTINUITY PLANNING**12.1 System Requirements** – For each of its systems that support order entry, order routing, execution, trade reporting, trade comparison, data feeds, market surveillance and trade clearing, a marketplace shall

- (a) develop and maintain
 - (i) an adequate system of internal control over those systems; and
 - (ii) adequate information technology general controls, including without limitation, controls relating to information systems operations, information security, change management, problem management, network support and system software support;

- (b) in accordance with prudent business practice, on a reasonably frequent basis and, in any event, at least annually,
 - (i) make reasonable current and future capacity estimates;
 - (ii) conduct capacity stress tests to determine the ability of those systems to process transactions in an accurate, timely and efficient manner; and
- (c) promptly notify the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority and, if applicable, its regulation services provider, of any material systems failure, malfunction or delay.

12.2 System Reviews

- (1) For each of its systems that support order entry, order routing, execution, trade reporting, trade comparison, data feeds, market surveillance and trade clearing, a marketplace shall annually engage a qualified party to conduct an independent systems review and prepare a report in accordance with established audit standards to ensure that it is in compliance with paragraph 12.1(a) and section 12.4.
- (2) A marketplace shall provide the report resulting from the review conducted under subsection (1) to
 - (a) its board of directors, or audit committee, promptly upon the report's completion, and
 - (b) to the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, within 30 days of providing the report to its board of directors or the audit committee.

12.3 Availability of Technology Requirements and Testing Facilities

- (1) A marketplace shall make publicly available all technology requirements regarding interfacing with or accessing the marketplace in their final form,
 - (a) if operations have not begun, for at least three months immediately before operations begin; and
 - (b) if operations have begun, for at least three months before implementing a material change to its technology requirements.
- (2) After complying with subsection (1), a marketplace shall make available testing facilities for interfacing with or accessing the marketplace,
 - (a) if operations have not begun, for at least two months immediately before operations begin; and
 - (b) if operations have begun, for at least two months before implementing a material change to its technology requirements.
- (3) A marketplace shall not begin operations until it has complied with paragraphs (1)(a) and (2)(a).
- (4) Paragraphs 12.3(1)(b) and (2)(b) do not apply to a marketplace if the change must be made immediately to address a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems or equipment if
 - (a) the marketplace immediately notifies the regulator, or in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, and, if applicable, its regulation services provider of its intention to make the change; and
 - (b) the marketplace publishes the changed technology requirements as soon as practicable.

12.4 Business Continuity Planning

- (1) A marketplace must develop and maintain reasonable business continuity plans, including disaster recovery plans.
- (2) A marketplace must test its business continuity plans, including disaster recovery plans, on a reasonably frequent basis and, in any event, at least annually.

PART 13 CLEARING AND SETTLEMENT**13.1 Clearing and Settlement**

- (1) All trades executed on a marketplace shall be reported to and settled through a clearing agency.
- (2) For a trade executed through an ATS by a subscriber that is registered as a dealer under securities legislation, the ATS and its subscriber shall enter into an agreement that specifies whether the trade shall be reported and settled by
 - (a) the ATS;
 - (b) the subscriber; or
 - (c) an agent for the subscriber that is a clearing member of a clearing agency.
- (3) For a trade executed through an ATS by a subscriber that is not registered as a dealer under securities legislation, an ATS and its subscriber shall enter into an agreement that specifies whether the trade shall be reported and settled by
 - (a) the ATS; or
 - (b) an agent for the subscriber that is a clearing member of a clearing agency.

PART 14 REQUIREMENTS FOR AN INFORMATION PROCESSOR**14.1 Filing Requirements for an Information Processor**

- (1) A person or company that intends to carry on business as an information processor shall file Form 21-101F5 at least 90 days before the information processor begins to carry on business as an information processor.
- (2) [repealed]

14.2 Change in Information

- (1) At least 45 days before implementing a significant change involving a matter set out in Form 21-101F5, an information processor shall file an amendment to the information provided in Form 21-101F5 in the manner set out in Form 21-101F5.
- (2) If an information processor implements a change involving a matter set out in Form 21-101F5, other than a change referred to in subsection (1), the information processor shall, within 30 days after the end of the calendar quarter in which the change takes place, file an amendment to the information provided in Form 21-101F5 in the manner set out in Form 21-101F5.

14.3 Ceasing to Carry on Business as an Information Processor

- (1) If an information processor intends to cease carrying on business as an information processor, the information processor shall file a report on Form 21-101F6 at least 30 days before ceasing to carry on that business.
- (2) If an information processor involuntarily ceases to carry on business as an information processor, the information processor shall file a report on Form 21-101F6 as soon as practicable after it ceases to carry on that business.

14.4 Requirements Applicable to an Information Processor

- (1) An information processor shall enter into an agreement with each marketplace, inter-dealer bond broker and dealer that is required to provide information to the information processor that the marketplace, inter-dealer bond broker or dealer will
 - (a) provide information to the information processor in accordance with Part 7 or 8, as applicable; and
 - (b) comply with any other reasonable requirements set by the information processor.

- (2) An information processor shall provide timely, accurate, reliable and fair collection, processing, distribution and publication of information for orders for, and trades in, securities.
- (3) An information processor shall keep such books, records and other documents as are reasonably necessary for the proper recording of its business.
- (4) An information processor shall establish in a timely manner an electronic connection to a marketplace, inter-dealer bond broker or dealer that is required to provide information to the information processor.
- (5) An information processor shall provide prompt and accurate order and trade information and shall not unreasonably restrict fair access to such information.
- (6) An information processor must file annual audited financial statements within 90 days after the end of its financial year that
 - (a) are prepared in accordance with Canadian GAAP applicable to publicly accountable enterprises, Canadian GAAP applicable to private enterprises or IFRS,
 - (b) include notes to the financial statements that identify the accounting principles used to prepare the financial statements, and
 - (c) are audited in accordance with Canadian GAAS or International Standards on Auditing and are accompanied by an auditor's report.
- (7) An information processor must file its financial budget within 30 days after the start of a financial year.
- (8) An information processor must file, within 30 days after the end of each calendar quarter, the process and criteria for the selection of government debt securities, as applicable, and designated corporate debt securities and the list of government debt securities, as applicable, and designated corporate debt securities.
- (9) An information processor must file, within 30 days after the end of each calendar year, the process to communicate the designated securities to the marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers and dealers providing the information required by the Instrument, including where the list of designated securities can be found.

14.5 System Requirements – An information processor shall,

- (a) develop and maintain
 - (i) an adequate system of internal controls over its critical systems; and
 - (ii) adequate information technology general controls, including, without limitation, controls relating to information systems operations, information security, change management, problem management, network support, and system software support;
- (b) in accordance with prudent business practice, on a reasonably frequent basis and in any event, at least annually,
 - (i) make reasonable current and future capacity estimates for each of its systems; and
 - (ii) conduct capacity stress tests of its critical systems to determine the ability of those systems to process information in an accurate, timely and efficient manner;
- (c) annually engage a qualified party to conduct an independent systems review and prepare a report in accordance with established audit standards to ensure that it is in compliance with paragraph (a) and section 14.6;
- (d) provide the report resulting from the review conducted under paragraph (c) to
 - (i) its board of directors or the audit committee promptly upon the report's completion, and
 - (ii) the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, within 30 days of providing it to the board of directors or the audit committee; and

- (e) promptly notify the following of any failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems or equipment
 - (i) the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority; and
 - (ii) any regulation services provider, recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system monitoring trading of the securities about which information is provided to the information processor.

14.6 Business Continuity Planning

- (1) An information processor must develop and maintain reasonable business continuity plans, including disaster recovery plans.
- (2) An information processor must test its business continuity plans, including disaster recovery plans, on a reasonably frequent basis and, in any event, at least annually.

14.7 Confidential Treatment of Trading Information

An information processor must not release order and trade information to a person or company other than the marketplace, inter-dealer bond broker or dealer that provided this information in accordance with this Instrument, or other than a securities regulatory authority, unless:

- (a) the release of that information is required by this Instrument or under applicable law; or
- (b) the information processor received prior approval from the securities regulatory authority.

14.8 Transparency of Operations of an Information Processor

An information processor must publicly disclose on its website information reasonably necessary to enable a person or company to understand the information processor's operations or services it provides including, but not limited to:

- (a) all fees charged by the information processor for the consolidated data;
- (b) a description of the process and criteria for the selection of government debt securities, as applicable, and designated corporate debt securities and the list of government debt securities, as applicable, and designated corporate debt securities;
- (c) access requirements; and
- (d) the policies and procedures to manage conflicts of interest that may arise in the operation of the information processor.

PART 15 EXEMPTION

15.1 Exemption

- (1) The regulator or the securities regulatory authority may grant an exemption from this Instrument, in whole or in part, subject to such conditions or restrictions as may be imposed in the exemption.
- (2) Despite subsection (1), in Ontario, only the regulator may grant such an exemption.

**FORM 21-101F1
INFORMATION STATEMENT
EXCHANGE OR QUOTATION AND TRADE REPORTING SYSTEM**

Filer: ☐ **EXCHANGE** ☐ **QUOTATION AND TRADE REPORTING SYSTEM**

Type of Filing: ☐ **INITIAL** ☐ **AMENDMENT**

1. Full name of exchange or quotation and trade reporting system:
2. Name(s) under which business is conducted, or name of market or facility, if different from item 1:
3. If this filing makes a name change on behalf of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system in respect of the name set out in item 1 or item 2, enter the previous name and the new name:

 Previous name:

 New name:
4. Head office

 Address:

 Telephone:

 Facsimile:
5. Mailing address (if different):
6. Other offices

 Address:

 Telephone:

 Facsimile:
7. Website address:
8. Contact employee

 Name and title:

 Telephone number:

 Facsimile:

 E-mail address:
9. Counsel

 Firm name:

 Contact name:

 Telephone number:

 Facsimile:

 E-mail address:

10. Market Regulation is being conducted by:
- ☐ the exchange
 - ☐ the quotation and trade reporting system
 - ☐ regulation services provider other than the filer (see Exhibit M)

EXHIBITS

File all Exhibits with the Filing. For each Exhibit, include the name of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system, the date of filing of the Exhibit and the date as of which the information is accurate (if different from the date of the filing). If any Exhibit required is inapplicable, a statement to that effect shall be furnished instead of such Exhibit.

Except as provided below, if the filer, recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system files an amendment to the information provided in its Filing and the information relates to an Exhibit filed with the Filing or a subsequent amendment, the filer, recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system, must, in order to comply with subsections 3.2(1), 3.2(2) or 3.2(3) of National Instrument 21-101, provide a description of the change, the expected date of the implementation of the change, and file a complete and updated Exhibit. The filer must provide a clean and a blacklined version showing changes from the previous filing.

If the filer, recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system has otherwise filed the information required by the previous paragraph pursuant to section 5.5 of National Instrument 21-101, it is not required to file the information again as an amendment to an Exhibit. However, if supplementary material relating to a filed rule is contained in an Exhibit, an amendment to the Exhibit must also be filed.

Exhibit A – Corporate Governance

1. Legal status:
 - ☐ Corporation
 - ☐ Partnership
 - ☐ Sole Proprietorship
 - ☐ Other (specify):
2. Except where the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system is a sole proprietorship, indicate the following:
 1. Date (DD/MM/YYYY) of formation.
 2. Place of formation.
 3. Statute under which exchange or quotation and trade reporting system was organized.
3. Provide a copy of the constating documents (including corporate by-laws), shareholder agreements, partnership agreements and other similar documents, and all subsequent amendments.
4. Provide the policies and procedures to address potential conflicts of interest arising from the operation of the marketplace or the services it provides, including those related to the commercial interest of the marketplace, the interests of its owners and its operators, the responsibilities and sound functioning of the marketplace, and those between the operations of the marketplace and its regulatory responsibilities.

Exhibit B – Ownership

A list of the registered or beneficial holders of securities of, partnership interests in, or other ownership interests in, the exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system. For each of the persons listed in the Exhibit, please provide the following:

1. Name.
2. Principal business or occupation and title.

3. Ownership interest.
4. Nature of the ownership interest, including a description of the type of security, partnership interest or other ownership interest.
5. Whether the person has control (as interpreted in subsection 1.3(2) of National Instrument 21-101 *Marketplace Operation*).

In the case of an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system that is publicly traded, if the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system is a corporation, please only provide a list of each shareholder that directly owns five percent or more of a class of a voting security of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system.

Exhibit C – Organization

1. A list of partners, officers, governors, and members of the board of directors and any standing committees of the board, or persons performing similar functions, who presently hold or have held their offices or positions during the previous year, indicating the following for each:
 1. Name.
 2. Principal business or occupation and title.
 3. Dates of commencement and expiry of present term of office or position.
 4. Type of business in which each is primarily engaged and current employer.
 5. Type of business in which each was primarily engaged in the preceding five years, if different from that set out in item 4.
 6. Whether the person is considered to be an independent director.
2. A list of the committees of the board, including their mandates.

Exhibit D – Affiliates

1. For each affiliated entity of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system provide the name, head office address and describe the principal business of the affiliate.
2. For each affiliated entity of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system
 - (i) to which the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system has outsourced any of its key services or systems affecting the market or facility described in Exhibit E – Operations of the Marketplace, including order entry, trading, execution, routing and data, or
 - (ii) with which the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system has any other material business relationship, including loans, cross-guarantees, etc.,

provide the following information:

1. Name and address of the affiliate.
2. The name and title of the directors and officers, or persons performing similar functions, of the affiliate.
3. A description of the nature and extent of the contractual and other agreements with the exchange and quotation and trade reporting system, and the roles and responsibilities of the affiliate under the arrangement.
4. A copy of each material contract relating to any outsourced functions or other material relationship.
5. Copies of constating documents (including corporate by-laws), shareholder agreements, partnership agreements and other similar documents.

6. For the latest financial year of the affiliated entity, financial statements, which may be unaudited, prepared in accordance with:
 - a. Canadian GAAP applicable to publicly accountable enterprises; or
 - b. Canadian GAAP applicable to private enterprises; or
 - c. IFRS.

Where the affiliated entity is incorporated or organized under the laws of a foreign jurisdiction, such financial statements may also be prepared in accordance with:

- a. U.S. GAAP; or
- b. accounting principles of a designated foreign jurisdiction as defined under National Instrument 52-107 *Acceptable Accounting Principles and Auditing Standards*.

Exhibit E – Operations of the Marketplace

Describe in detail the manner of operation of the market or facility and its associated functions. This should include, but not be limited to, a description of the following:

1. The structure of the market (e.g., call market, auction market, dealer market).
2. Means of access to the market or facility and services, including a description of any co-location arrangements.
3. The hours of operation.
4. A description of the services offered by the marketplace including, but not limited to, order entry, co-location, trading, execution, routing and data.
5. A list of the types of orders offered, including, but not limited to, a description of the features and characteristics of orders.
6. Procedures regarding the entry, display and execution of orders. If indications of interest are used, please describe the information they include and list the types of recipients.
7. Description of how orders interact, including, but not limited to, the priority of execution for all order types.
8. Description of order routing procedures.
9. Description of order and trade reporting procedures.
10. Description of procedures for clearance and settlement of transactions.
11. The safeguards and procedures of the marketplace to protect trading information of marketplace participants.
12. Training provided to participants and a copy of any materials provided both with respect to systems of the marketplace, the requirements of the marketplace, and the rules of the regulation services providers, if applicable.
13. Steps taken to ensure that marketplace participants have knowledge of and comply with the requirements of the marketplace.

The filer must provide all policies, procedures and trading manuals related to the operation of the marketplace and, if applicable, the order router.

Exhibit F – Outsourcing

Where the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system has outsourced the operation of key services or systems affecting the market or facility described in Exhibit E – Operations of the Marketplace to an arms-length third party, including any function

associated with the routing, trading, execution, data, clearing and settlement and, if applicable, surveillance, provide the following information:

1. Name and address of person or company to which the function has been outsourced.
2. A description of the nature and extent of the contractual or other agreement with the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system and the roles and responsibilities of the arms-length party under the arrangement.
3. A copy of each material contract relating to any outsourced function.

Exhibit G – Systems and Contingency Planning

For each of the systems that support order entry, order routing, execution, trade reporting, trade comparison, data feed, market surveillance, and trade clearing, describe:

1. Current and future capacity estimates.
2. Procedures for reviewing system capacity.
3. Procedures for reviewing system security.
4. Procedures to conduct stress tests.
5. A description of the filer's business continuity and disaster recovery plans, including any relevant documentation.
6. Procedures to test business continuity and disaster recovery plans.

Exhibit H – Custody of Assets

1. If the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system proposes to hold funds or securities of a marketplace participant on a regular basis, a description of the controls that will be implemented to ensure the safety of the funds or securities.
2. If any other person or company, other than the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system, will hold or safeguard funds or securities of a marketplace participant on a regular basis, provide the name of the person or company and a description of the controls that will be implemented to ensure the safety of the funds or securities.

Exhibit I – Securities

1. List the types of securities listed on the exchange or quoted on the quotation and trade reporting system. If this is an initial filing, list the types of securities the Filer expects to list or quote.
2. List the types of any other securities that are traded on the marketplace or quoted on the quotation and trade reporting system, indicating the exchange(s) on which such securities are listed. If this is an initial filing, list the types of securities the Filer expects to trade.

Exhibit J – Access to Services

1. A complete set of all forms, agreements or other materials pertaining to access to the services of the marketplace described in Exhibit E.4, including trading on the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system.
2. Describe the classes of marketplace participants.
3. Describe the exchange or quotation and trade reporting service's criteria for access to the services of the marketplace.
4. Describe any differences in access to the services offered by the marketplace to different groups or classes of marketplace participants.
5. Describe conditions under which marketplace participants may be subject to suspension or termination with regard to access to the services of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system.
6. Describe any procedures that will be involved in the suspension or termination of a marketplace participant.

7. Describe the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system's arrangements for permitting clients of marketplace participants to have access to the marketplace. Provide a copy of any agreements or documentation relating to these arrangements.

Exhibit K – Marketplace Participants

Provide an alphabetical list of all marketplace participants, including the following information:

1. Name.
2. Date of becoming a marketplace participant.
3. Describe the type of trading activities engaged in by the marketplace participant (e.g., agency trading, proprietary trading, registered trading, market making).
4. The class of participation or other access.
5. Provide a list of all persons or entities that were denied or limited access to the marketplace, indicating for each:
 - (i) whether they were denied or limited access;
 - (ii) the date the marketplace took such action;
 - (iii) the effective date of such action; and
 - (iv) the nature and reason for any denial or limitation of access.

Exhibit L – Fees

A description of the fee model and all fees charged by the marketplace, or by a party to which services have been directly or indirectly outsourced, including, but not limited to, fees relating to connecting to the market or facility, access, data, regulation (if applicable), trading, routing, and co-location, how such fees are set, and any fee rebates or discounts and how the rebates and discounts are set.

Exhibit M – Regulation

Market Regulation is being conducted by:

☐ the exchange or QTRS

1. Provide a description of the regulation performed by the exchange or QTRS, including the structure of the department performing regulation, how the department is funded, policies and procedures in place to ensure confidentiality and the management of conflicts of interest, and policies and procedures relating to conducting an investigation.
2. If more than one entity is performing regulation services for a type of security and the filer is conducting market regulation for itself and its members, provide the contract between the filer and the regulation services provider providing for co-ordinated monitoring and enforcement under section 7.5 of National Instrument 23-101 Trading Rules.

☐ a regulation services provider other than the filer (provide a copy of the contract between the filer and the regulation services provider.)

Exhibit N – Acknowledgement

The form of acknowledgement required by subsection 5.9(2) of National Instrument 21-101.

CERTIFICATE OF EXCHANGE OR QUOTATION AND TRADE REPORTING SYSTEM

The undersigned certifies that the information given in this report is true and correct.

DATED at _____ this _____ day of _____ 20____

(Name of exchange or quotation and trade reporting system)

(Name of director, officer or partner – please type or print)

(Signature of director, officer or partner)

(Official capacity – please type or print)

**FORM 21-101F2
INITIAL OPERATION REPORT
ALTERNATIVE TRADING SYSTEM**

TYPE OF FILING:☐**INITIAL OPERATION REPORT**☐**AMENDMENT**

Identification:

1. Full name of alternative trading system:

2. Name(s) under which business is conducted, if different from item 1:

3. If this filing makes a name change on behalf of the alternative trading system in respect of the name set out in Item 1 or Item 2, enter the previous name and the new name.

Previous name:

New name:
4. Head office

Address:

Telephone:

Facsimile:
5. Mailing address (if different):
6. Other offices

Address:

Telephone:

Facsimile:
7. Website address:
8. Contact employee

Name and title:

Telephone number:

Facsimile:

E-mail address:
9. Counsel

Firm name:

Contact name:

Telephone number:

Facsimile:

E-mail address:

10. The ATS is

☐ a member of _____ (name of the recognized self-regulatory entity)

☐ a registered dealer

11. If this is an initial operation report, the date the alternative trading system expects to commence operation:

12. The ATS has contracted with [regulation services provider] to perform market regulation for the ATS and its subscribers.

EXHIBITS

File all Exhibits with the Initial Operation Report. For each Exhibit, include the name of the ATS, the date of filing of the Exhibit and the date as of which the information is accurate (if different from the date of the filing). If any Exhibit required is inapplicable, a statement to that effect shall be furnished instead of such Exhibit.

If the ATS files an amendment to the information provided in its Initial Operation Report and the information relates to an Exhibit filed with the Initial Operation Report or a subsequent amendment, the ATS must, in order to comply with subsection 3.2(1), 3.2(2) or 3.2(3) of National Instrument 21-101, provide a description of the change, the expected date of the implementation of the change, and file a complete and updated Exhibit. The ATS must provide a clean and blacklined version showing changes from the previous filing.

Exhibit A – Corporate Governance

1. Legal status:

☐ Corporation

☐ Partnership

☐ Sole Proprietorship

☐ Other (specify):

2. Except where the ATS is a sole proprietorship, indicate the following:

1. Date (DD/MM/YYYY) of formation.

2. Place of formation.

3. Statute under which the ATS was organized.

3. Provide a copy of the constating documents (including corporate by-laws), shareholder agreements, partnership agreements and other similar documents, and all subsequent amendments.

4. Provide the policies and procedures to address conflicts of interest arising from the operation of the marketplace or the services it provides, including those related to the commercial interest of the marketplace, the interests of its owners and its operators, and the responsibilities and sound functioning of the marketplace.

Exhibit B – Ownership

A list of the registered or beneficial holders of securities of, partnership interests in, or other ownership interests in, the ATS. For each of the persons listed in the Exhibit, please provide the following:

1. Name.

2. Principal business or occupation and title.

3. Ownership interest.
4. Nature of the ownership interest, including a description of the type of security, partnership interest or other ownership interest.
5. Whether the person has control (as interpreted in subsection 1.3(2) of National Instrument 21-101 *Marketplace Operation*).

In the case of an ATS that is publicly traded, if the ATS is a corporation, please only provide a list of each shareholder that directly owns five percent or more of a class of a voting security of the ATS.

Exhibit C – Organization

1. A list of partners, officers, governors, and members of the board of directors and any standing committees of the board, or persons performing similar functions, who presently hold or have held their offices or positions during the previous year, indicating the following for each:
 1. Name.
 2. Principal business or occupation and title.
 3. Dates of commencement and expiry of present term of office or position.
 4. Type of business in which each is primarily engaged and current employer.
 5. Type of business in which each was primarily engaged in the preceding five years, if different from that set out in item 4.
 6. Whether the person is considered to be an independent director.
2. A list of the committees of the board, including their mandates.

Exhibit D – Affiliates

1. For each affiliated entity of the ATS provide the name, head office address and describe the principal business of the affiliate.
2. For each affiliated entity of the ATS
 - (i) to which the ATS has outsourced any of its key services or systems affecting the market or facility described in Exhibit E – Operations of the Marketplace, including order entry, trading, execution, routing and data, or
 - (ii) with which the ATS has any other material business relationship, including loans, cross-guarantees, etc.

provide the following information:

 1. Name and address of the affiliate.
 2. The name and title of the directors and officers, or persons performing similar functions, of the affiliate.
 3. A description of the nature and extent of the contractual and other agreements with the ATS and the roles and responsibilities of the affiliate under the arrangement.
 4. A copy of each material contract relating to any outsourced functions or other material relationship.
 5. Copies of constating documents (including corporate by-laws), shareholder agreements, partnership agreements and other similar documents.

Exhibit E – Operations of the Marketplace

Describe in detail the manner of operation of the market and its associated functions. This should include, but not be limited to, a description of the following:

1. The structure of the market (e.g., call market, auction market, dealer market).
2. Means of access to the market or facility and services, including a description of any co-location arrangements.
3. The hours of operation.
4. A description of the services offered by the marketplace including, but not limited to, order entry, co-location, trading, execution, routing and data.
5. A list of the types of orders offered, including, but not limited to, a description of the features and characteristics of orders.
6. Procedures regarding the entry, display and execution of orders. If indications of interest are used, please describe the information they include and list the types of recipients.
7. Description of how orders interact, including, but not limited to, the priority of execution for all order types.
8. Description of order routing procedures.
9. Description of order and trade reporting procedures.
10. Description of procedures for clearance and settlement of transactions.
11. The safeguards and procedures of the marketplace to protect trading information of marketplace participants.
12. Training provided to participants and a copy of any materials provided both with respect to systems of the marketplace, the requirements of the marketplace, and the rules of the regulation services providers, if applicable.
13. Steps taken to ensure that marketplace participants have knowledge of and comply with the requirements of the marketplace.

The filer must provide all policies, procedures and trading manuals related to the operation of the marketplace and, if applicable, the order router.

Exhibit F – Outsourcing

Where the ATS has outsourced the operation of key services or systems affecting the market or facility described in Exhibit E – Operations of the Marketplace to an arms-length third party, including any function associated with the routing, trading, execution, clearing and settlement, and co-location, provide the following information:

1. Name and address of person or company to which the function has been outsourced.
2. A description of the nature and extent of the contractual or other agreement with the ATS and the roles and responsibilities of the arms-length party under the arrangement.
3. A copy of each material contract relating to any outsourced function.

Exhibit G – Systems and Contingency Planning

For each of the systems that support order entry, order routing, execution, trade reporting, trade comparison, data feed, market surveillance, and trade clearing, describe:

1. Current and future capacity estimates.
2. Procedures for reviewing system capacity.
3. Procedures for reviewing system security.
4. Procedures to conduct stress tests.

5. A description of the filer's business continuity and disaster recovery plans, including any relevant documentation.
6. Procedures to test business continuity and disaster recovery plans.

Exhibit H – Custody of Assets

1. If the ATS proposes to hold funds or securities of a marketplace participant on a regular basis, a description of the controls that will be implemented to ensure the safety of the funds or securities.
2. If any other person or company, other than the ATS, will hold or safeguard funds or securities of a marketplace participant on a regular basis, provide the name of the person or company and a description of the controls that will be implemented to ensure the safety of the funds or securities.

Exhibit I – Securities

List the types of securities that are traded on the ATS, indicating the exchange(s) on which such securities are listed. If this is an initial filing, the types of securities the ATS expects to trade.

Exhibit J – Access to Services

1. A complete set of all forms, agreements or other materials pertaining to access to the services of the marketplace described in Exhibit E.4, including trading on the ATS.
2. Describe the classes of marketplace participants (i.e. dealer, institution, or retail).
3. Describe the ATS's criteria for access to the services of the marketplace.
4. Describe any differences in access to the services offered by the marketplace to different groups or classes of marketplace participants.
5. Describe conditions under which marketplace participants may be subject to suspension or termination with regard to access to the services of the ATS.
6. Describe any procedures that will be involved in the suspension or termination of a marketplace participant.
7. Describe the ATS's arrangements for permitting clients of marketplace participants to have access to the marketplace. Provide a copy of any agreements or documentation relating to these arrangements.

Exhibit K – Marketplace Participants

Provide an alphabetical list of all marketplace participants, including the following information:

1. Name.
2. Date of becoming a marketplace participant.
3. Describe the type of trading activities primarily engaged in by the marketplace participant (e.g., agency trading, proprietary trading, registered trading, market making).
4. The class of participation or other access.
5. Provide a list of all persons or entities that were denied or limited access to the marketplace, indicating for each:
 - (i) whether they were denied or limited access;
 - (ii) the date the marketplace took such action;
 - (iii) the effective date of such action; and
 - (iv) the nature and reason for any denial or limitation of access.

Exhibit L – Fees

A description of the fee model and all fees charged by the marketplace, or by a party to which services have been directly or indirectly outsourced, including, but not limited to, fees relating to connecting to the market or facility, access, data, regulation (if applicable), trading, routing, and co-location, how such fees are set and any fee rebates or discounts and how the rebates and discounts are set.

Exhibit M – Regulation

The ATS has contracted with regulation services provider _____ to perform market regulation for ATS and its subscribers. Provide a copy of the contract between the filer and the regulation services provider.

Exhibit N – Acknowledgement

The form of acknowledgement required by subsections 5.9(2) and 6.11(2) of National Instrument 21-101.

CERTIFICATE OF ALTERNATIVE TRADING SYSTEM

The undersigned certifies that the information given in this report is true and correct.

DATED at _____ this _____ day of _____ 20____

(Name of alternative trading system)

(Name of director, officer or partner – please type or print)

(Signature of director, officer or partner)

(Official capacity – please type or print)

FORM 21-101F3
QUARTERLY REPORT OF MARKETPLACE ACTIVITIES

A. General Marketplace Information

1. Marketplace Name:
2. Period covered by this report:
3. Identification
 - A. Full name of marketplace (if sole proprietor, last, first and middle name):
 - B. Name(s) under which business is conducted, if different from item A:
 - C. Marketplace main street address:
4. Attach as **Exhibit A** a current list of all marketplace participants at the end of the period covered by this report, identifying those marketplace participants that are using the marketplace's co-location services, if any. For each marketplace participant, indicate the number of trader IDs that may access the marketplace.
5. Attach as **Exhibit B** a list of all marketplace participants granted, denied or limited access to the marketplace during the period covered by this report, indicating for each marketplace participant: (a) whether they were granted, denied or limited access; (b) the date the marketplace took such action; (c) the effective date of such action; and (d) the nature of any denial or limitation of access.
6. A list of all amendments in the information in Form 21-101F1 or 21-101F2 that were filed with the Canadian securities regulatory authorities and implemented during the period covered by the report. The list must include a brief description of each amendment, the date filed and the date implemented.
7. A list of all amendments in the information in Form 21-101F1 or 21-101F2 that have been filed with the Canadian securities regulatory authorities but not implemented as of the end of the period covered by the report. The list must include a brief description of each amendment, the date filed and the reason why it was not implemented.
8. Systems – If any outages occurred at any time during the period for any system relating to trading activity, including trading, routing or data, provide the date, duration and reason for the outage.

B. Marketplace Activity Information**Section 1 – Marketplaces Trading Exchange-Listed Securities**

1. **General trading activity** – For each type of security traded on the marketplace, provide the details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 1**. The information should be provided for transactions executed at the opening of the market, during regular trading hours, and after hours during the quarter. Enter "None", "N/A", or "0" where appropriate.

Chart 1 – General trading activity for marketplaces trading exchange-listed securities

Category of Securities	Volume		Value		Number of Trades	
	Transparent	Non-transparent	Transparent	Non-transparent	Transparent	Non-transparent
Exchange-Traded Securities						
1. Equity (includes preferred shares)						

Category of Securities	Volume		Value		Number of Trades	
	Transparent	Non-transparent	Transparent	Non-transparent	Transparent	Non-transparent
2. Exchange-traded funds (ETFs)						
3. Debt securities						
4. Options						
Foreign Exchange-Traded Securities						
1. Equity (includes preferred shares)						
2. ETFs						
3. Debt securities						
4. Options						

2. **Crosses** – Provide the details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 2** below for each type of cross executed on the marketplace for trades executed at the opening of the market, during regular trading and after hours during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 2 – Crosses

Types of Crosses	% Volume	% Value	% Number of Trades
% of exchange-traded securities that are			
1. Intentional Crosses ¹			
2. Internal crosses			
3. Other crosses			

3. **Order information** – Provide the details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 3** below for each type of order in exchange traded securities executed on the marketplace for orders entered at the opening of the market, during regular trading and after hours during the quarter. Enter “none”, “N/A” or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 3 – Order information

Types of Orders	Number of Orders	% Orders Executed	% Orders Cancelled ²
1. Anonymous ³			
2. Fully transparent			
3. Pegged Orders			

¹ See definition of an Internal and Intentional Cross in Section 1.1 of the Universal Market Integrity Rules.

² By cancellations, we mean “pure” cancellations, i.e. cancellations that do not result in a new and amended order.

³ Orders executed under ID 001.

Types of Orders	Number of Orders	% Orders Executed	% Orders Cancelled ²
4. Fully hidden			
5. Separate dark facility of a transparent market			
6. Partially hidden (reserve)			
7. Total number of orders entered during the quarter			

4. **Trading by security** – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 4** below for the 10 most traded securities on the marketplace (based on the volume of securities traded) for trades executed at the opening of the market, during regular trading and after hours during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 4 – Most traded securities

Category of Securities	Volume	Value	Number of Trades
Exchange-Traded Securities			
1. Equity (includes preferred shares) [Name of Securities] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			
2. ETFs [Name of Securities] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			
3. Debt [Enter issuer, maturity and coupon] 1. 2. 3. 4.			

Category of Securities	Volume	Value	Number of Trades
5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			
Foreign Exchange-Traded Securities			
1. Equity (includes preferred shares) [Name of Securities] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			
2. ETFs [Name of Securities] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			
3. Debt [Name of Securities] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			

5. **Trading by marketplace participant** – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 5** below for the top 10 marketplace participants (based on the volume of securities traded). The information should be provided for the total trading volume, including for trades executed at the opening of the market, during regular trading and after hours during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate. Where a marketplace’s marketplace participants are dealers and non-dealers, the marketplace should complete a separate chart for each.

Chart 5 – Concentration of trading by marketplace participant

Marketplace Participant Name	Total Active Volume	Total Passive Volume
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		

6. **Routing activities** – Indicate the percentage of marketplace participants that used marketplace-owned or third-party or affiliated routing services during the reporting period. In addition, provide the information in **Chart 6** below.

Chart 6 – Routing of marketplace orders

Number of orders executed on the reporting marketplace	
Number of orders routed to away marketplaces (list all marketplaces where orders were routed)	
Number of orders that are marked and treated as Directed Action Orders (DAO)	

7. **Co-location** – Indicate the percentage of marketplace participants that are using the marketplace's co-location services, if any.

Section 2 – Fixed Income Marketplaces

1. **General trading activity** – Provide the details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 7** below for each type of fixed income security traded on the marketplace for transactions executed during regular trading hours. Enter "None", "N/A", or "0" where appropriate.

Chart 7 – Fixed income activity

Category of Securities	Value Traded	Number of Trades
Domestic Unlisted Debt Securities – Government		
1. Federal		
2. Federal Agency		
3. Provincial and Municipal		
Domestic Unlisted Debt Securities – Corporate		
Domestic Unlisted Debt Securities – Other		
Foreign Unlisted Debt Securities – Government		
Foreign Unlisted Debt Securities – Corporate		

Category of Securities	Value Traded	Number of Trades
Foreign Unlisted Debt Securities – Other		

2. **Trading by security** – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 8** below for the 10 most traded fixed income securities on the marketplace (based on the value of the volume traded) for trades executed during regular trading hours during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 8 – Most traded fixed income securities

Category of Securities	Value Traded	Number of Trades
Domestic Unlisted Debt Securities – Government		
1. Federal		
[Enter issuer, maturity, coupon]		
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		
2. Federal Agency		
[Enter issuer, maturity, coupon]		
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		
3. Provincial and Municipal		
[Enter issuer, maturity, coupon]		
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		

Category of Securities	Value Traded	Number of Trades
Domestic Unlisted Debt Securities – Corporate [Enter issuer, maturity, coupon] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
Domestic Unlisted Debt Securities – Other [Enter issuer, maturity, coupon] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
Foreign Unlisted Debt Securities – Government [Enter issuer, maturity, coupon] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
Foreign Unlisted Debt Securities – Corporate [Enter issuer, maturity, coupon] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8.		

Category of Securities	Value Traded	Number of Trades
9. 10.		
Foreign Unlisted Debt Securities – Other [Enter issuer, maturity, coupon] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		

3. **Trading by marketplace participant** – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 9** below for the top 10 marketplace participants for trades executed during regular trading hours during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate. If marketplace participants are dealers and non-dealer institutions, the marketplace should complete a separate chart for each.

Chart 9 – Concentration of trading by marketplace participant

Marketplace Participant Name	Value Traded
1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.	

Section 3 – Securities Lending Marketplaces

1. **General lending activity** – Please provide details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 10** below for each type of securities loaned on the marketplace. Enter “None”, “N/A” or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 10 – Lending activity

Category of Securities	Quantity of Securities Lent During the Quarter	Aggregate Value of Securities Lent During the Quarter
Domestic		
1. Corporate Equity Securities		
1.1. Common Shares		
1.2. Preferred Shares		
2. Non-Corporate Equity Securities (e.g. trust units, partnership units, etc.)(please specify)		

Category of Securities	Quantity of Securities Lent During the Quarter	Aggregate Value of Securities Lent During the Quarter
3. Government Debt Securities		
4. Corporate Debt Securities		
5. Other Fixed Income Securities (please specify)		
Foreign		
1. Corporate Equity Securities		
1.1. Common Shares		
1.2. Preferred Shares		
2. Non-Corporate Equity Securities (e.g. trust units, partnership units, etc.)(please specify)		
3. Government Debt Securities		
4. Corporate Debt Securities		
5. Other Fixed Income Securities (please specify)		

2. **Trading by marketplace participant** – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 11** and **Chart 12** below for the top 10 borrowers and lenders based on their aggregate value of securities borrowed or loaned, respectively, during the quarter.

Chart 11 – Concentration of activity by borrower

Borrower Name	Aggregate Value of Securities Borrowed During the Quarter
1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	
7.	
8.	
9.	
10.	

Chart 12 – Concentration of activity by lender

Lender Name	Aggregate Value of Securities Loaned During the Quarter
1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	
7.	
8.	
9.	
10.	

3. **Lending activity by security** – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 13** below for the 10 most loaned securities on the marketplace (based on the quantity of securities loaned during the quarter). Enter “None”, “N/A” or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 13 – Most loaned securities

Category of Securities	Quantity of Securities Lent During the Quarter	Aggregate Value of Securities Lent During the Quarter
Domestic		
1. Common Shares [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
2. Preferred Shares [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
3. Non-Corporate Equity Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
4. Government Debt Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3.		

Category of Securities	Quantity of Securities Lent During the Quarter	Aggregate Value of Securities Lent During the Quarter
4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
5. Corporate Debt Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
6. Other Fixed Income Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
Foreign		
1. Common Shares [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
2. Preferred Shares [Name of Security] 1. 2.		

Category of Securities	Quantity of Securities Lent During the Quarter	Aggregate Value of Securities Lent During the Quarter
3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
3. Non-Corporate Equity Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
4. Government Debt Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
5. Corporate Debt Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.		
6. Other Fixed Income Securities [Name of Security] 1. 2.		

Category of Securities	Quantity of Securities Lent During the Quarter	Aggregate Value of Securities Lent During the Quarter
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		

Section 4 – Derivatives Marketplaces in Quebec

1. **General trading activity** – For each category of product traded on the marketplace, provide the details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 14** below. For products other than options on ETFs and equity options, provide the details on a product-by-product basis in the appropriate category. Details for options on ETFs and equity options should be provided on an aggregate basis (one total for options on ETFs and one for options on equities). The information should be provided for transactions executed in the early session, during the regular session, and in the extended session during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 14 – General trading activity

Category of Product	Volume	Number of Trades	Open Interest (Number/End of Quarter)
Futures Products			
1(a) Interest rate – short term			
1(b) Interest rate – long term			
2. Index			
3. ETF			
4. Equity			
5. Currency			
6. Energy			
7. Others, please specify			
Options Products			
1(a) Interest rate -short term			
1(b) Interest rate – long term			
2. Index			
3. ETF			
4. Equity			
5. Currency			
6. Energy			
7. Others, please specify			

2. **Trades resulting from pre-negotiation discussions** – Provide the details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 15** below by product and for each type of trade resulting from pre-negotiation discussions. For products other than options on ETFs and equity options, provide the details on a product-by-product basis in the appropriate category. Details for options on ETFs and equity options should be provided on an aggregate basis (one total for options on ETFs and one for options on equities). The information should be provided for trades executed in the early session, during the regular session and in the extended session during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 15 – Trades resulting from pre-negotiation discussions

Type of Trade	% of Volume	% Number of Trades
Futures Products		
A. Cross		
B. Pre-arranged		
C. Block		
D. Exchange for physical		
E. Exchange for risk		
F. Riskless basis cross		
G. Others, please specify		
Options Products		
A. Cross		
B. Pre-arranged		
C. Block		
D. Others, please specify		

3. **Order information** – Provide the details (where appropriate) requested in the form set out in **Chart 16** below by product and for each type of order in exchange traded contracts executed on the marketplace. For products other than options on ETFs and equity options, provide the details on a product-by-product basis in the appropriate category. Details for options on ETFs and equity options should be provided on an aggregate basis (one total for options on ETFs and one for options on equities). The information should be provided for orders entered in the early session, during the regular session and in the extended session during the quarter. Enter “none”, “N/A” or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 16 – Order information

Type of Orders	% Volume	% Number of Trades
1. Anonymous		
2. Fully transparent		
3. Pegged orders		
4. Fully hidden		
5. Separate dark facility of a transparent market		
6. Partially hidden (reserve, for example, iceberg orders)		

4. **Trading by product** – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 17** below. For each product other than options on ETFs and equity options, list the most actively-traded contracts (by volume) on the marketplace that in the aggregate constitute at least 75% of the total volume for each product during the quarter. The list must include at least 3 contracts. For options on ETFs and equity options, list the 10 most actively traded classes by volume. Details for options on ETFs and equity options should be provided on an aggregate basis (one total for options on ETFs and one for options on equities). The information should be provided for trades executed in the early session, during the regular session and in the extended session during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 17 – Most traded contracts

Category of Product	Volume	Number of Trades	Open Interest (Number/End of Quarter)
Futures Products			
1. Name of products – 3 most-traded contracts (or more as applicable) 1. 2. 3.			
Options Products			
2. ETF [Classes] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			
3. Equity [Classes] 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.			
4. Other listed options (specify for each) – 3 most traded contracts (or more as applicable) 1. 2. 3.			

5. **Concentration of trading by marketplace participant** – Provide the details requested in the form set out in **Chart 18** below. For each product other than options on ETFs and equity options, list the top marketplace participants whose aggregate trading (by volume) constituted at least 75% of the total volume traded. The list must include at least 3 marketplace participants. For options on ETFs and equity options, provide the top 10 most active marketplace participants (by volume). The information should be provided on an aggregate basis (one total for options on ETFs and one for options on equities). The information should be provided for trades executed in the early session, during the regular session and in the extended session during the quarter. Enter “None”, “N/A”, or “0” where appropriate.

Chart 18 – Concentration of trading by marketplace participant

Product Name	Marketplace Participant Name	Volume
Futures		
Product Name (specify for each)	1. 2. 3. (more if necessary)	
Options		
ETF	1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.	
Equity	1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.	
Other options (specify for each)	1. 2. 3. (more if necessary)	

6. Co-location

Indicate the percentage of marketplace participants that are using the marketplace's co-location services, if any.

C. Certificate of Marketplace

The undersigned certifies that the information given in this report relating to the marketplace is true and correct.

DATED at _____ this _____ day of _____ 20____

(Name of Marketplace)

(Name of director, officer or partner – please type or print)

(Signature of director, officer or partner)

(Official capacity – please type or print)

FORM 21-101F5
INITIAL OPERATION REPORT FOR INFORMATION PROCESSOR

TYPE OF FILING:☐ **INITIAL FORM**☐ **AMENDMENT****GENERAL INFORMATION**

1. Full name of information processor:
2. Name(s) under which business is conducted, if different from item 1:
3. If this filing makes a name change on behalf of the information processor in respect of the name set out in item 1 or item 2, enter the previous name and the new name:

Previous name:

New name:
4. Head office

Address:

Telephone:

Facsimile:
5. Mailing address (if different):
6. Other offices

Address:

Telephone:

Facsimile:
7. Website address:
8. Contact employee

Name and title:

Telephone number:

Facsimile:

E-mail address:
9. Counsel

Firm name:

Contact name:

Telephone number:

Facsimile:

E-mail address:

10. List of all marketplaces, dealers or other parties for which the information processor is acting or for which it proposes to act as an information processor. For each marketplace, dealer or other party, provide a description of the function(s) which the information processor performs or proposes to perform.
11. List all types of securities for which information will be collected, processed, distributed or published by the information processor. For each such marketplace, dealer or other party, provide a list of all securities for which information with respect to quotations for, or transactions in, is or is proposed to be collected, processed, distributed or published.

Exhibits

File all Exhibits with the Initial Form. For each Exhibit, include the name of the information processor, the date of filing of the Exhibit and the date as of which the information is accurate (if different from the date of the filing). If any Exhibit required is inapplicable, a statement to that effect shall be furnished instead of such Exhibit.

If the information processor files an amendment to the information provided in its Initial Form, and the information relates to an Exhibit filed with the Initial Form or a subsequent amendment, the information processor must, in order to comply with sections 14.1 and 14.2 of National Instrument 21-101 provide a description of the change, the expected date of the implementation of the change, and file a complete and updated Exhibit. The information processor must provide a clean and a blacklined version showing changes from the previous filing.

Exhibit A – Corporate Governance

1. Legal status:
 - ☐ Corporation
 - ☐ Sole Proprietorship
 - ☐ Partnership
 - ☐ Other (specify):
2. Except where the information processor is a sole proprietorship, indicate the date and place where the information processor obtained its legal status (e.g., place of incorporation, place where partnership agreement was filed or where information processor was formed):
 1. Date (DD/MM/YYYY) of formation.
 2. Place of formation.
 3. Statute under which the information processor was organized.
3. Provide a copy of the constating documents (including corporate by-laws), shareholder agreements, partnership agreements and other similar documents, and all subsequent documents.
4. Provide the policies and procedures which promote independence of the information processor from the marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers and dealers that provide data.
5. Provide the policies and procedures which address the potential conflicts of interest between the interests of the information processor and its owners, partners, directors and officers.

Exhibit B – Ownership

List any person or company who owns 10 percent or more of the information processor's outstanding shares or who, either directly or indirectly, through agreement or otherwise, in any other manner, may control or direct the management or policies of the information processor. Provide the full name and address of each such person and attach a copy of the agreement or, if there is none written, describe the agreement or basis through which such person exercises or may exercise such control or direction.

Exhibit C – Organization

1. A list of the partners, directors, governors, and members of the board of directors and any standing committees of the board or persons performing similar functions who presently hold or have held their offices or positions during the

previous year identifying those individuals with overall responsibility for the integrity and timeliness of data reported to and displayed by the system (the "System") of the information processor, indicating the following for each:

1. Name.
2. Principal business or occupation and title.
3. Dates of commencement and expiry of present term of office or position.
4. Type of business in which each is primarily engaged and current employer.
5. Type of business in which each was primarily engaged in the preceding five years, if different from that set out in item 4.
6. Whether the person is considered to be an independent director.
7. A list of the committees of the board, including their mandates.
8. A narrative or graphic description of the organizational structure of the information processor.

Exhibit D – Staffing

A description of the personnel qualifications for each category of professional, non-professional and supervisory employee employed by the information processor. Detail whether the personnel are employed by the information processor or a third party, identifying the employees responsible for monitoring the timeliness and integrity of data reported to and displayed by the System.

Exhibit E – Affiliates

For each affiliated entity of the information processor, and for any person or company with whom the information processor has a contractual or other agreement relating to the operations of the information processor, including loans or cross-guarantees, provide the following information:

1. Name and address of person or company.
2. Form of organization (e.g., association, corporation, partnership, etc.).
3. Name of location and statute citation under which organized.
4. Date of incorporation in present form.
5. Description of nature and extent of affiliation and/or contractual or other agreement with the information processor.
6. Description of business or functions of the affiliates.
7. If a person or company has ceased to be an affiliated entity of the information processor during the previous year or ceased to have a contractual or other agreement relating to the operation of the information processor during the previous year, provide a brief statement of the reasons for termination of the relationship.

Exhibit F – Services

A description in narrative form of each service or function performed by the information processor. Include a description of all procedures utilized for the collection, processing, distribution, validation and publication of information with respect to orders and trades in securities.

Exhibit G – System and Operations

1. Describe the manner of operation of the System of the information processor that collects, processes, distributes and publishes information in accordance with National Instruments 21-101 and 23-101. This description should include the following:

1. The means of access to the System.
2. Procedures governing entry and display of quotations and orders in the System including data validation processes.
3. A description of any measures used to verify the timeliness and accuracy of information received and disseminated by the system, including the processes to resolve data integrity issues identified.
4. The hours of operation of the System.
5. Description of the training provided to users of the System and any materials provided to the users.
2. Include a list of all computer hardware utilized by the information processor to perform the services or functions listed in Exhibit F, indicating:
 1. Manufacturer, and manufacturer's equipment and identification number.
 2. Whether purchased or leased (if leased, duration of lease and any provisions for purchase or renewal).
 3. Where such equipment (exclusive of terminals and other access devices) is physically located.
3. Provide a description of the measures or procedures implemented by the information processor to provide for the security of any system employed to perform the functions of an information processor. This should include a general description of any physical and operational safeguards designed to prevent unauthorized access to the system.
4. Provide a description of all backup systems which are designed to prevent interruptions in the performance of any information providing functions as a result of technical malfunctions or otherwise in the system itself, in any permitted input or output system connection or as a result of any independent source.
5. Describe the business continuity and disaster recovery plans of the information processor, and provide any relevant documentation.
6. List each type of interruption which has lasted for more than two minutes and has occurred within the six (6) months preceding the date of the filing, including the date of each interruption, the cause and duration. Provide the total number of interruptions which have lasted two minutes or less.
7. Describe the procedures for reviewing system capacity, and indicate current and future capacity estimates.
8. Quantify in appropriate units of measure the limits on the information processor's capacity to receive, collect, process, store or display the data elements included within each function.
9. Identify the factors (mechanical, electronic or other) which account for the current limitations on the capacity to receive, collect, process, store or display the data elements included within each function described in section 8 above.
10. Describe the procedures for conducting stress tests.

Exhibit H – Outsourcing

Where the information processor has outsourced the operation of any aspect of the services listed in Exhibit F to an arms-length third party, including any function related to the collection, consolidation, and dissemination of data, provide the following information:

1. Name and address of person or company to whom the function has been outsourced.
2. A description of the nature and extent of the contractual or other agreement with the information processor, and the roles and responsibilities of the arms-length third party under the arrangement.
3. A copy of each material contract relating to any outsourced function.

Exhibit I – Financial Viability

1. Provide a business plan with pro forma financial statements and estimates of revenue.

2. Discuss the financial viability of the information processor in the context of having sufficient financial resources to properly perform its functions.

Exhibit J – Fees and Revenue Sharing

1. Provide a complete list of all fees and other charges imposed, or to be imposed, by or on behalf of the information processor for its information services. This would include all fees to provide data and fees to receive the data from the information processor.
2. Where arrangements exist to share revenue from the sale of data disseminated by the information processor with marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers and dealers that provide data to the information processor in accordance with National Instrument 21-101, a complete description of the arrangements and the basis for these arrangements.

Exhibit K – Reporting to the Information Processor

1. List all persons and entities that provide data to the information processor in accordance with the requirements of National Instrument 21-101.
2. Provide a complete set of all forms, agreements and other materials pertaining to the provision of data to the information processor.
3. A description of any specifications or criteria required of marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers or dealers who provide securities information to the information processor for collection, processing for distribution or publication. Identify those specifications or criteria which limit, are interpreted to limit or have the effect of limiting access to or use of any services provided by the information processor and state the reasons for imposing such specifications or criteria.
4. For each instance during the past year in which any person or entity has been prohibited or limited to provide data by the information processor, indicate the name of each such person or entity and the reason for the prohibition or limitation.

Exhibit L – Access to the Services of the Information Processor

1. A list of all persons and entities who presently subscribe or who have notified the information processor of their intention to subscribe to the services of the information processor.
2. The form of contract governing the terms by which persons may subscribe to the services of an information processor.
3. A description of any specifications or criteria which limit, are interpreted to limit or have the effect of limiting access to or use of any services provided by the information processor and state the reasons for imposing such specifications or criteria. This applies to limits relating to providing information to the information processor and the limits relating to accessing the consolidated feed distributed by the information processor.
4. For each instance during the past year in which any person has been prohibited or limited in respect of access to services offered by the information processor, indicate the name of each such person and the reason for the prohibition or limitation.

Exhibit M – Selection of Securities for which Information Must Be Reported to the Information Processor

Where the information processor is responsible for making a determination of the data which must be reported, including the securities for which information must be reported in accordance with National Instrument 21-101, describe the manner of selection and communication of these securities. This description should include the following:

1. The criteria used to determine the securities for which information must be reported and the data which must be reported to the information processor.
2. The process for selection of the securities, including a description of the parties consulted in the process and the frequency of the selection process.
3. The process to communicate the securities selected and data to be reported to the marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers and dealers providing the information as required by National Instrument 21-101. The description should include where this information is located.

CERTIFICATE OF INFORMATION PROCESSOR

The undersigned certifies that the information given in this report is true and correct.

DATED at _____ this _____ day of _____ 20 _____

(Name of information processor)

(Name of director, officer or partner – please type or print)

(Signature of director, officer or partner)

(Official capacity – please type or print)

**COMPANION POLICY 21-101 CP
TO NATIONAL INSTRUMENT 21-101 MARKETPLACE OPERATION**

PART 1 INTRODUCTION

- 1.1 Introduction** – Exchanges, quotation and trade reporting systems and ATSS are marketplaces that provide a market facility or venue on which securities can be traded. The areas of interest from a regulatory perspective are in many ways similar for each of these marketplaces since they may have similar trading activities. The regulatory regime for exchanges and quotation and trade reporting systems arises from the securities legislation of the various jurisdictions. Exchanges and quotation and trade reporting systems are recognized under orders from the Canadian securities regulatory authorities, with various terms and conditions of recognition. ATSS, which are not recognized as exchanges or quotation and trade reporting systems, are regulated under National Instrument 21-101 *Marketplace Operation* (the Instrument) and National Instrument 2123-101 *Trading Rules* (NI 23-101). The Instruments, which were adopted at a time when new types of markets were emerging, provide the regulatory framework that allows and regulates the operation of multiple marketplaces.

The purpose of this Companion Policy is to state the views of the Canadian securities regulatory authorities on various matters related to the Instrument, including:

- (a) a discussion of the general approach taken by the Canadian securities regulatory authorities in, and the general regulatory purpose for, the Instrument; and
- (b) the interpretation of various terms and provisions in the Instrument.

- 1.2 Definition of Exchange-Traded Security** – Section 1.1 of the Instrument defines an "exchange-traded security" as a security that is listed on a recognized exchange or is quoted on a recognized quotation and trade reporting system or is listed on an exchange or quoted on a quotation and trade reporting system that is recognized for the purposes of the Instrument and NI 23-101.

If a security trades on a recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system on a "when issued" basis, as defined in IIROC's Universal Market Integrity Rules, the security would be considered to be listed on that recognized exchange or quoted on that recognized quotation and trade reporting system and would therefore be an exchange-traded security.

If no "when issued" market has been posted by a recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system for a security, an ATS may not allow this security to be traded on a "when issued" basis on its marketplace.

A security that is inter-listed would be considered to be an exchange-traded security. A security that is listed on a foreign exchange or quoted on a foreign quotation and trade reporting system, but is not listed or quoted on a domestic exchange or quotation and trade reporting system, falls within the definition of "foreign exchange-traded security".

- 1.3 Definition of Foreign Exchange-Traded Security** – The definition of foreign exchange-traded security includes a reference to ordinary members of the International Organization of Securities Commissions (IOSCO). To determine the current list of ordinary members, reference should be made to the IOSCO website at www.iosco.org.
- 1.4 Definition of Regulation Services Provider** – The definition of regulation services provider is meant to capture a third party provider that provides regulation services to marketplaces. A recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system would not be a regulation services provider if it only conducts these regulatory services for its own marketplace or an affiliated marketplace.

PART 2 MARKETPLACE

2.1 Marketplace

- (1) The Instrument uses the term "marketplace" to encompass the different types of trading systems that match trades. A marketplace is an exchange, a quotation and trade reporting system or an ATS. Paragraphs (c) and (d) of the definition of "marketplace" describe marketplaces that the Canadian securities regulatory authorities consider to be ATSS. A dealer that internalizes its orders of exchange-traded securities and does not execute and print the trades on an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system in accordance with the rules of the exchange or the quotation and trade reporting system (including an exemption from those rules) is considered to be a marketplace pursuant to paragraph (d) of the definition of "marketplace" and an ATS.

- (2) Two of the characteristics of a "marketplace" are
 - (a) that it brings together orders for securities of multiple buyers and sellers; and
 - (b) that it uses established, non-discretionary methods under which the orders interact with each other.
- (3) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities consider that a person or company brings together orders for securities if it
 - (a) displays, or otherwise represents to marketplace participants, trading interests entered on the system; or
 - (b) receives orders centrally for processing and execution (regardless of the level of automation used).
- (4) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities are of the view that "established, nondiscretionary methods" include any methods that dictate the terms of trading among the multiple buyers and sellers entering orders on the system. Such methods include providing a trading facility or setting rules governing trading among marketplace participants. Common examples include a traditional exchange and a computer system, whether comprised of software, hardware, protocols, or any combination thereof, through which orders interact, or any other trading mechanism that provides a means or location for the bringing together and execution of orders. Rules imposing execution priorities, such as time and price priority rules, would be "established, non-discretionary methods."
- (5) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities do not consider the following systems to be marketplaces for purposes of the Instrument:
 - (a) A system operated by a person or company that only permits one seller to sell its securities, such as a system that permits issuers to sell their own securities to investors.
 - (b) A system that merely routes orders for execution to a facility where the orders are executed.
 - (c) A system that posts information about trading interests, without facilities for execution.

In the first two cases, the criteria of multiple buyers and sellers would not be met. In the last two cases, routing systems and bulletin boards do not establish non-discretionary methods under which parties entering orders interact with each other.

- (6) A person or company operating any of the systems described in subsection (5) should consider whether the person or company is required to be registered as a dealer under securities legislation.
- (7) Inter-dealer bond brokers that conduct traditional inter-dealer bond broker activity have a choice as to how to be regulated under the Instrument and NI 23-101. Each inter-dealer bond broker can choose to be subject to IIROC Rule 36 and IIROC Rule 2100, fall within the definition of inter-dealer bond broker in the Instrument and be subject to the transparency requirements of Part 8 of the Instrument. Alternatively, the inter-dealer bond broker can choose to be an ATS and comply with the provisions of the Instrument and NI 23-101 applicable to a marketplace and an ATS. An inter-dealer bond broker that chooses to be an ATS will not be subject to Rule 36 or IIROC Rule 2100, but will be subject to all other IIROC requirements applicable to a dealer.
- (8) Section 1.2 of the Instrument contains an interpretation of the definition of "marketplace". The Canadian securities regulatory authorities do not consider a system that only routes unmatched orders to a marketplace for execution to be a marketplace. If a dealer uses a system to match buy and sell orders or pair orders with contra-side orders outside of a marketplace and route the matched or paired orders to a marketplace as a cross, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities may consider the dealer to be operating a marketplace under paragraph (c) of the definition of "marketplace". The Canadian securities regulatory authorities encourage dealers that operate or plan to operate such a system to meet with the applicable securities regulatory authority to discuss the operation of the system and whether the dealer's system falls within the definition of "marketplace".

PART 3 CHARACTERISTICS OF EXCHANGES, QUOTATION AND TRADE REPORTING SYSTEMS AND ATSs

3.1 Exchange

- (1) Securities legislation of most jurisdictions does not define the term "exchange".
- (2) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities generally consider a marketplace, other than a quotation and trade reporting system, to be an exchange for purposes of securities legislation, if the marketplace

- (a) requires an issuer to enter into an agreement in order for the issuer's securities to trade on the marketplace, i.e., the marketplace provides a listing function;
 - (b) provides, directly, or through one or more marketplace participants, a guarantee of a two-sided market for a security on a continuous or reasonably continuous basis, i.e., the marketplace has one or more marketplace participants that guarantee that a bid and an ask will be posted for a security on a continuous or reasonably continuous basis. For example, this type of liquidity guarantee can be carried out on exchanges through traders acting as principal such as registered traders, specialists or market makers;
 - (c) sets requirements governing the conduct of marketplace participants, in addition to those requirements set by the marketplace in respect of the method of trading or algorithm used by those marketplace participants to execute trades on the system (see subsection (3)); or
 - (d) disciplines marketplace participants, in addition to discipline by exclusion from trading, i.e., the marketplace can levy fines or take enforcement action.
- (3) An ATS that requires a subscriber to agree to comply with the requirements of a regulation services provider as part of its contract with that subscriber is not setting "requirements governing the conduct of subscribers". In addition, marketplaces are not precluded from imposing credit conditions on subscribers or requiring subscribers to submit financial information to the marketplace.
- (4) The criteria in subsection 3.1(2) are not exclusive and there may be other instances in which the Canadian securities regulatory authorities will consider a marketplace to be an exchange.

3.2 Quotation and Trade Reporting System

- (1) Securities legislation in certain jurisdictions contains the concept of a quotation and trade reporting system. A quotation and trade reporting system is defined under securities legislation in those jurisdictions as a person or company, other than an exchange or registered dealer, that operates facilities that permit the dissemination of price quotations for the purchase and sale of securities and reports of completed transactions in securities for the exclusive use of registered dealers. A person or company that carries on business as a vendor of market data or a bulletin board with no execution facilities would not normally be considered to be a quotation and trade reporting system.
- (2) A quotation and trade reporting system is considered to have "quoted" a security if
- (a) the security has been subject to a listing or quoting process, and
 - (b) the issuer issuing the security or the dealer trading the security has entered into an agreement with the quotation and trade reporting system to list or quote the security.

3.3 Definition of an ATS

- (1) In order to be an ATS for the purposes of the Instrument, a marketplace cannot engage in certain activities or meet certain criteria such as
- (a) requiring listing agreements,
 - (b) having one or more marketplace participants that guarantee that a two-sided market will be posted for a security on a continuous or reasonably continuous basis,
 - (c) setting requirements governing the conduct of subscribers, in addition to those requirements set by the marketplace in respect of the method of trading or algorithm used by those subscribers to execute trades on the system, and
 - (d) disciplining subscribers.

A marketplace, other than a quotation and trade reporting system, that engages in any of these activities or meets these criteria would, in the view of the Canadian securities regulatory authorities, be an exchange and would have to be recognized as such in order to carry on business, unless exempted from this requirement by the securities regulatory authorities.

- (2) An ATS can establish trading algorithms that provide that a trade takes place if certain events occur. These algorithms are not considered to be "requirements governing the conduct of subscribers".

- (3) A marketplace that would otherwise meet the definition of an ATS in the Instrument may apply to the Canadian securities regulatory authorities for recognition as an exchange.

3.4 Requirements Applicable to ATSs

- (1) Part 6 of the Instrument applies only to an ATS that is not a recognized exchange or a member of a recognized exchange or an exchange recognized for the purposes of the Instrument and NI 23-101. If an ATS is recognized as an exchange, the provisions of the Instrument relating to marketplaces and recognized exchanges apply.
- (2) If the ATS is a member of an exchange, the rules, policies and other similar instruments of the exchange apply to the ATS.
- (3) Under paragraph 6.1(a) of the Instrument, an ATS that is not a member of a recognized exchange or an exchange recognized for the purposes of the Instrument and NI 23-101 must register as a dealer if it wishes to carry on business. Unless otherwise specified, an ATS registered as a dealer is subject to all of the requirements applicable to dealers under securities legislation, including the requirements imposed by the Instrument and NI 23-101. An ATS will be carrying on business in a local jurisdiction if it provides direct access to subscribers located in that jurisdiction.
- (4) If an ATS registered as a dealer in one jurisdiction in Canada provides access in another jurisdiction in Canada to subscribers who are not registered dealers under securities legislation, the ATS must be registered in that other jurisdiction. However, if all of the ATS's subscribers in the other jurisdiction are registered as dealers in that other jurisdiction, the securities regulatory authority in the other jurisdiction may consider granting the ATS an exemption from the requirement to register as a dealer under paragraph 6.1(a) and all other requirements in the Instrument and in NI 23-101 of the Instrument and from the registration requirements of securities legislation. In determining if the exemption is in the public interest, a securities regulatory authority will consider a number of factors, including whether the ATS is registered in another jurisdiction and whether the ATS deals only with registered dealers in that jurisdiction.
- (5) Paragraph 6.1(b) of the Instrument prohibits an ATS to which the provisions of the Instrument apply from carrying on business unless it is a member of a self-regulatory entity. Membership in a self-regulatory entity is required for purposes of membership in the Canadian Investor Protection Fund, capital requirements and clearing and settlement procedures. At this time, the IROC is the only entity that would come within the definition.
- (6) Any registration exemptions that may otherwise be applicable to a dealer under securities legislation are not available to an ATS, even though it is registered as a dealer (except as provided in the Instrument), because of the fact that it is also a marketplace and different considerations apply.
- (7) Subsection 6.7(1) of the Instrument requires an ATS to notify the securities regulatory authority if one of three thresholds is met or exceeded. Upon being informed that one of the thresholds is met or exceeded, the securities regulatory authority intends to review the ATS and its structure and operations in order to consider whether the person or company operating the ATS should be considered to be an exchange for purposes of securities legislation or if additional terms and conditions should be placed on the registration of the ATS. The securities regulatory authority intends to conduct this review because each of these thresholds may be indicative of an ATS having significant market presence in a type of security, such that it would be more appropriate that the ATS be regulated as an exchange. If more than one Canadian securities regulatory authority is conducting this review, the reviewing jurisdictions intend to coordinate their review. The volume thresholds referred to in subsection 6.7(1) of the Instrument are based on the type of security. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities consider a type of security to refer to a distinctive category of security such as equity securities, debt securities or options.
- (8) Any marketplace that is required to provide notice under section 6.7 of the Instrument will determine the calculation based on publicly available information.

PART 4 RECOGNITION AS AN EXCHANGE OR QUOTATION AND TRADE REPORTING SYSTEM

4.1 Recognition as an Exchange or Quotation and Trade Reporting System

- (1) In determining whether to recognize an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities must determine whether it is in the public interest to do so.
- (2) In determining whether it is in the public interest to recognize an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities will look at a number of factors, including
- (a) the manner in which the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system proposes to comply with the Instrument;

- (b) whether the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system has fair and meaningful representation on its governing body, in the context of the nature and structure of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system;
- (c) whether the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system has sufficient financial resources for the proper performance of its functions;
- (d) whether the rules, policies and other similar instruments of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system ensure that its business is conducted in an orderly manner so as to afford protection to investors;
- (e) whether the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system has policies and procedures to effectively identify and manage conflicts of interest arising from its operation or the services it provides;
- (f) whether the requirements of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system relating to access to its services are fair and reasonable; and
- (g) whether the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system's process for setting fees is fair, transparent and appropriate, and whether the fees are equitably allocated among the participants, issuers and other users of services, do not have the effect of creating barriers to access and at the same time ensure that the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system has sufficient financial resources for the proper performance of its functions.

4.2 Process

Although the basic requirements or criteria for recognition of an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system may be similar in various jurisdictions, the precise requirements and the process for seeking a recognition or an exemption from recognition in each jurisdiction is determined by that jurisdiction.

PART 5 ORDERS

5.1 Orders

- (1) The term "order" is defined in section 1.1 of the Instrument as a firm indication by a person or company, acting as either principal or agent, of a willingness to buy or sell a security. By virtue of this definition, a marketplace that displays good faith, non-firm indications of interest, including, but not limited to, indications of interest to buy or sell a particular security without either prices or quantities associated with those indications, is not displaying "orders". However, if those prices or quantities are implied and determinable, for example, by knowing the features of the marketplace, the indications of interest may be considered an order.
- (2) The terminology used is not determinative of whether an indication of interest constitutes an order. Instead, whether or not an indication is "firm" will depend on what actually takes place between the buyer and seller. At a minimum, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities will consider an indication to be firm if it can be executed without further discussion between the person or company entering the indication and the counterparty (i.e. the indication is "actionable"). The Canadian securities regulatory authorities would consider an indication of interest to be actionable if it includes sufficient information to enable it to be executed without communicating with the marketplace participant that entered the order. Such information may include the symbol of the security, side (buy or sell), size, and price. The information may be explicitly stated, or it may be implicit and determinable based on the features of the marketplace. Even if the person or company must give its subsequent agreement to an execution, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities will still consider the indication to be firm if this subsequent agreement is always, or almost always, granted so that the agreement is largely a formality. For instance, an indication where there is a clear or prevailing presumption that a trade will take place at the indicated or an implied price, based on understandings or past dealings, will be viewed as an order.
- (3) A firm indication of a willingness to buy or sell a security includes bid or offer quotations, market orders, limit orders and any other priced orders. For the purpose of sections 7.1, 7.3, 8.1 and 8.2 of the Instrument, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities do not consider special terms orders that are not immediately executable or that trade in special terms books, such as all-or-none, minimum fill or cash or delayed delivery, to be orders that must be provided to an information processor or, if there is no information processor, to an information vendor for consolidation.
- (4) The securities regulatory authority may consider granting an exemption from the pre-trade transparency requirements in sections 7.1, 7.3, 8.1 and/or 8.2 of the Instrument to a marketplace for orders that result from a request for quotes or facility that allows negotiation between two parties provided that

- (a) order details are shown only to the negotiating parties,
 - (b) other than as provided by paragraph (a), no actionable indication of interest or order is displayed by either party or the marketplace, and
 - (c) each order entered on the marketplace meets the size threshold set by a regulation services provider as provided in subsection 7.1(2) of the Instrument.
- (5) The determination of whether an order has been placed does not turn on the level of automation used. Orders can be given over the telephone, as well as electronically.

PART 6 MARKETPLACE INFORMATION AND FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

6.1 Forms Filed by Marketplaces

- (1) The definition of marketplace includes exchanges, quotation and trade reporting systems and ATSS. The legal entity that is recognized as an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system, or registered as a dealer in the case of an ATS, owns and operates the market or trading facility. In some cases, the entity may own and operate more than one trading facility. In such cases the marketplace may file separate forms in respect of each trading facility, or it may choose to file one form covering all of the different trading facilities. If the latter alternative is chosen, the marketplace must clearly identify the facility to which the information or changes apply.
- (2) The forms filed by a marketplace under the Instrument will be kept confidential. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities are of the view that the forms contain proprietary financial, commercial and technical information and that the interests of the filers in non-disclosure outweigh the desirability of adhering to the principle that the forms be available for public inspection.
- (3) While initial Forms 21-101F1 and 21-101F2 and amendments thereto are kept confidential, certain Canadian securities regulatory authorities may publish a summary of the information included in the forms filed by a marketplace, or information related to significant changes to the forms of a marketplace, where the Canadian securities regulatory authorities are of the view that a certain degree of transparency for certain aspects of a marketplace would allow investors and industry participants to be better informed as to how securities trade on the marketplace.
- (4) Under subsection 3.2(1) of the Instrument, a marketplace is required to file an amendment to the information provided in Form 21-101F1 or Form 21-101F2, as applicable, at least 45 days prior to implementing a significant change. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities consider a significant change to be a change that could significantly impact a marketplace, marketplace participants, investors, or the Canadian capital markets. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities would consider significant changes to include:
 - (a) changes in the structure of the marketplace, including procedures governing how orders are entered, displayed (if applicable), executed, how they interact, are cleared and settled;
 - (b) new or changes to the services provided by the marketplace, including the hours of operation
 - (c) new or changes to the means of access to the market or facility and its services;
 - (d) new or changes to order types;
 - (e) new or changes to types of securities traded on the marketplace;
 - (f) new or changes to types of securities listed on exchanges or quoted on quotation and trade reporting systems;
 - (g) new or changes to types of marketplace participants;
 - (h) changes to the systems and technology used by the marketplace that support order entry, order routing, execution, trade reporting, trade comparison, data feeds, co-location and, if applicable, market surveillance and trade clearing, including those affecting capacity;
 - (i) changes to the governance of the marketplace, including the structure of its board of directors and changes in the board committees and their mandates;
 - (j) changes in control over marketplaces;

- (k) changes in affiliates that provide services to or on behalf of the marketplace;
 - (l) changes in and new outsourcing arrangements for key marketplace services or systems;
 - (m) changes in and new custody arrangements; and
 - (n) changes in fees and the fee model of the marketplace.
- (5) Significant changes would not include changes to information in Form 21-101F1 or Form 21-101F2, that
- (a) would not have an impact on the marketplace's market structure or marketplace participants, investors, issuers or the capital markets; or
 - (b) are housekeeping or administrative changes such as
 - (i) changes in the routine processes, policies, practices, or administration of the marketplace,
 - (ii) changes due to standardization of terminology,
 - (iii) corrections of spelling or typographical errors,
 - (iv) necessary changes to conform to applicable regulatory or other legal requirements, and
 - (v) minor system or technology changes that would not significantly impact the system or its capacity.

Such changes would be filed in accordance with the requirements outlined in subsection 3.2(3) of the Instrument.

- (6) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities generally consider a change in a marketplace's fees or fee structure to be a significant change. However, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities recognize that in the current, competitive multiple marketplace environment, which may at times require that frequent changes be made to the fees or fee structure of marketplaces, marketplaces may need to implement fee changes within tight timeframes. To facilitate this process, subsection 3.2(2) of the Instrument provides that marketplaces may provide information describing the change in fees or fee structure in a shorter timeframe, at least seven business days before the expected implementation date of the change in fees or fee structure.
- (7) For the changes referred to in subsection 3.2(3) of the Instrument, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities may review these filings to ascertain the appropriateness of the categorization of such filings. The marketplace will be notified in writing if there is disagreement with respect to the categorization of the filing.
- (8) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities will make best efforts to review amendments to Forms 21-101F1 and 21-101F2 within the timelines specified in subsections 3.2(1) and (2) of the Instrument. However, where the changes are complex, raise regulatory concerns, or when additional information is required, the period for review may exceed these timeframes. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities will review changes to the information in Forms 21-101F1 and 21-101F2 in accordance with staff practices in each jurisdiction.
- (9) Section 3.3 of the Instrument requires a marketplace to file Form 21-101F3 by the following dates: April 30 (for the quarter ending March 31), July 30 (for the quarter ending June 30), October 30 (for the quarter ending September 30) and January 30 (for the quarter ending December 31).

6.2 Filing of Financial Statements

Part 4 of the Instrument sets out the financial reporting requirements applicable to marketplaces. Subsections 4.1(2) and 4.2(2) respectively require an ATS to file audited financial statements initially, together with Form 21-101F2, and on an annual basis thereafter. These financial statements may be in the same form as those filed with IIROC. The annual audited financial statements may be filed with the Canadian securities regulatory authorities at the same time as they are filed with IIROC.

PART 7 MARKETPLACE REQUIREMENTS

7.1 Access Requirements

- (1) Section 5.1 of the Instrument sets out access requirements that apply to a marketplace. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities note that the requirements regarding access for marketplace participants do not restrict the

marketplace from maintaining reasonable standards for access. The purpose of these access requirements is to ensure that rules, policies, procedures, and fees, as applicable, of the marketplace do not unreasonably create barriers to access to the services provided by the marketplace.

- (2) For the purposes of complying with the order protection requirements in Part 6 of NI 23-101, a marketplace should permit fair and efficient access to
- (a) a marketplace participant that directly accesses the marketplace,
 - (b) a person or company that is indirectly accessing the marketplace through a marketplace participant, or
 - (c) another marketplace routing an order to the marketplace.

The reference to “a person or company” in paragraph (b) includes a system or facility that is operated by a person or company.

- (3) The reference to “services” in section 5.1 of the Instrument means all services that may be offered to a person or company and includes all services relating to order entry, trading, execution, routing, data and includes co-location.
- (4) Marketplaces that send indications of interest to a selected smart order router or other system should send the information to other smart order routers or systems to meet the fair access requirements of the Instrument.
- (5) Marketplaces are responsible for ensuring that the fees they set are in compliance with section 5.1 of the Instrument. In assessing whether its fees unreasonably condition or limit access to its services, a marketplace should consider a number of factors, including
- (a) the value of the security traded,
 - (b) the amount of the fee relative to the value of the security traded,
 - (c) the amount of fees charged by other marketplaces to execute trades in the market,
 - (d) with respect to market data fees, the amount of market data fees charged relative to the market share of the marketplace, and,
 - (e) with respect to order-execution terms, including fees, whether the outcome of their application is consistent with the policy goals of order protection.

The Canadian securities regulatory authorities will consider these factors, among others, in determining whether the fees charged by a marketplace unreasonably condition or limit access to its services. With respect to trading fees, it is the view of the Canadian securities regulatory authorities that a trading fee equal to or greater than the minimum trading increment as defined in IROC’s Universal Market Integrity Rules, as amended, would unreasonably condition or limit access to a marketplace’s services as it would be inconsistent with the policy goals of order protection. Trading fees below the minimum trading increment may also unreasonably condition or limit access to a marketplace’s services when taking into account factors including those listed above.

7.2 Public Interest Rules – Section 5.3 of the Instrument sets out the requirements applicable to the rules, policies and similar instruments adopted by recognized exchanges and recognized quotation and trade reporting systems. These requirements acknowledge that recognized exchanges and quotation and trade reporting systems perform regulatory functions. The Instrument does not require the application of these requirements to an ATS’s trading requirements. This is because, unlike exchanges, ATSs are not permitted to perform regulatory functions, other than setting requirements regarding conduct in respect of the trading by subscribers on the marketplace, i.e. requirements related to the method of trading or algorithms used by their subscribers to execute trades in the system. However, it is the expectation of the Canadian securities regulatory authority that the requirement in section 5.7 of the Instrument that marketplaces take reasonable steps to ensure they operate in a manner that does not interfere with the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, applies to an ATS’s requirements. Such requirements may include those that deal with subscriber qualification, access to the marketplace, how orders are entered, interact, execute, clear and settle.

7.3 Compliance Rules – Section 5.4 of the Instrument requires a recognized exchange and recognized quotation and trade reporting system to have appropriate procedures to deal with violations of rules, policies or other similar instruments of the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system. This section does not preclude enforcement action by any other person or company, including the Canadian securities regulatory authorities or the regulation services provider.

7.4 Filing of Rules – Section 5.5 of the Instrument requires a recognized exchange and recognized quotation and trade reporting system to file all rules, policies and other similar instruments and amendments as required by the securities regulatory authority. Initially, all rules, policies and other similar instruments will be reviewed before implementation by the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system. Subsequent to recognition, the securities regulatory authority may develop and implement a protocol that will set out the procedures to be followed with respect to the review and approval of rules, policies and other similar instruments and amendments.

7.5 Review of Rules – The Canadian securities regulatory authorities review the rules, policies and similar instruments of a recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system in accordance with the recognition order and rule protocol issued by the jurisdiction in which the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system is recognized. The rules of recognized exchanges and quotation and trade reporting systems are included in their rulebooks, and the principles and requirements applicable to these rules are set out in section 5.3 of the Instrument. For an ATS, whose trading requirements, including any trading rules, policies or practices, are incorporated in Form 21-101F2, any changes would be filed in accordance with the filing requirements applicable to changes to information in Form 21-101F2 set out in subsections 3.2(1) and 3.2(3) of the Instrument and reviewed by the Canadian securities regulatory authorities in accordance with staff practices in each jurisdiction.

7.6 Fair and Orderly Markets

- (1) Section 5.7 of the Instrument establishes the requirement that a marketplace take reasonable steps to ensure it operates in a way that does not interfere with the maintenance of fair and orderly markets. This applies both to the operation of the marketplace itself and to the impact of the marketplace's operations on the Canadian market as a whole.
- (2) This section does not impose a responsibility on the marketplace to oversee the conduct of its marketplace participants, unless the marketplace is an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system that has assumed responsibility for monitoring the conduct of its marketplace participants directly rather than through a regulation services provider. However, marketplaces are expected in the normal course to monitor order entry and trading activity for compliance with the marketplace's own operational policies and procedures. They should also alert the regulation services provider if they become aware that disorderly or disruptive order entry or trading may be occurring, or of possible violations of applicable regulatory requirements.
- (3) Part of taking reasonable steps to ensure that a marketplace's operations do not interfere with fair and orderly markets necessitates ensuring that its operations support compliance with regulatory requirements including applicable rules of a regulation services provider. This does not mean that a marketplace must system-enforce all regulatory requirements. However, it should not operate in a manner that to the best of its knowledge would cause marketplace participants to breach regulatory requirements when trading on the marketplace.

7.7 Confidential Treatment of Trading Information

- (1) Subsection 5.10 (2) of the Instrument provides that a marketplace shall not carry on business as a marketplace unless it has implemented reasonable safeguards and procedures to protect a marketplace participant's trading information. These include
 - (a) limiting access to the trading information of marketplace participants, such as the identity of marketplace participants and their orders, to those employees of, or persons or companies retained by, the marketplace to operate the system or to be responsible for its compliance with securities legislation; and
 - (b) having in place procedures to ensure that employees of the marketplace cannot use such information for trading in their own accounts.
- (2) The procedures referred to in subsection (1) should be clear and unambiguous and presented to all employees and agents of the marketplace, whether or not they have direct responsibility for the operation of the marketplace.
- (3) Nothing in section 5.10 of the Instrument prohibits a marketplace from complying with National Instrument 54-101 *Communication with Beneficial Owners of Securities of a Reporting Issuer*. This statement is necessary because an investment dealer that operates a marketplace may be an intermediary for the purposes of National Instrument 54-101, and may be required to disclose information under that Instrument.

7.8 Management of Conflicts of Interest

- (1) Marketplaces are required under section 5.11 of the Instrument to maintain and ensure compliance with policies and procedures that identify and manage conflicts of interest arising from the operation of the marketplace or the services it

provides. These may include conflicts, actual or perceived, related to the commercial interest of the marketplace, the interests of its owners or its operators, referral arrangements and the responsibilities and sound functioning of the marketplace. For an exchange and quotation and trade reporting system, they may also include potential conflicts between the operation of the marketplace and its regulatory responsibilities.

- (2) The marketplace's policies should also take into account conflicts for owners that are marketplace participants. These may include inducements to send order flow to the marketplace to obtain a larger ownership position or to use the marketplace to trade against their clients' order flow. These policies should be disclosed as provided in paragraph 10.1(e) of the Instrument.

7.9 Outsourcing – Section 5.12 of the Instrument sets out the requirements that marketplaces that outsource any of their key services or systems to a service provider, which may include affiliates or associates of the marketplace, must meet. Generally, marketplaces are required to establish policies and procedures to evaluate and approve these outsourcing agreements. Such policies and procedures would include assessing the suitability of potential service providers and the ability of the marketplace to continue to comply with securities legislation in the event of the service provider's bankruptcy, insolvency or termination of business. Marketplaces are also required to monitor the ongoing performance of the service provider to which they outsourced key services, systems or facilities. The requirements under section 5.12 of the Instrument apply regardless of whether the outsourcing arrangements are with third-party service providers, or with affiliates of the marketplaces.

PART 8 RISK DISCLOSURE TO MARKETPLACE PARTICIPANTS

8.1 Risk disclosure to marketplace participants – Subsections 5.9(2) and 6.11(2) of the Instrument require a marketplace to obtain an acknowledgement from its marketplace participants. The acknowledgement may be obtained in a number of ways, including requesting the signature of the marketplace participant or requesting that the marketplace participant initial an initial box or check a check-off box. This may be done electronically. The acknowledgement must be specific to the information required to be disclosed under the relevant subsection and must confirm that the marketplace participant has received the required disclosure. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities are of the view that it is the responsibility of the marketplace to ensure that an acknowledgement is obtained from the marketplace participant in a timely manner.

8.2 [repealed]

PART 9 INFORMATION TRANSPARENCY REQUIREMENTS FOR EXCHANGE-TRADED SECURITIES

9.1 Information Transparency Requirements for Exchange-Traded Securities

- (1) Subsection 7.1(1) of the Instrument requires a marketplace that displays orders of exchange-traded securities to any person or company to provide accurate and timely information regarding those orders to an information processor as required by the information processor or, if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities consider that a marketplace that sends information about orders of exchange-traded securities, including indications of interest that meet the definition of an order, to a smart order router is "displaying" that information. The marketplace would be subject to the transparency requirements of subsection 7.1(1) of the Instrument. The transparency requirements of subsection 7.1(1) of the Instrument do not apply to a marketplace that displays orders of exchange-traded securities to its employees or to persons or companies retained by the marketplace to assist in the operation of the marketplace, as long as these orders meet a minimum size threshold set by the regulation services provider. In other words, the only orders that are exempt from the transparency requirements are those meeting the minimum size threshold. Section 7.2 requires a marketplace to provide accurate and timely information regarding trades of exchange-traded securities that it executes to an information processor as required by the information processor or, if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider. Some marketplaces, such as exchanges, may be regulation services providers and will establish standards for the information vendors they use to display order and trade information to ensure that the information displayed by the information vendors is timely, accurate and promotes market integrity. If the marketplace has entered into a contract with a regulation services provider under NI 23-101, the marketplace must provide information to the regulation services provider and an information vendor that meets the standards set by that regulation services provider.
- (2) In complying with sections 7.1 and 7.2 of the Instrument, a marketplace should not make the required order and trade information available to any other person or company on a more timely basis than it makes that information available to the information processor or information vendor. In addition, any information provided by a marketplace to an information processor or information vendor must include identification of the marketplace and should contain all relevant information including details as to volume, symbol, price and time of the order or trade.

- (3) [Repealed]
- (4) [Repealed]
- (5) It is expected that if there are multiple regulation service providers, the standards of the various regulation service providers must be consistent. In order to maintain market integrity for securities trading in different marketplaces, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities will, through their oversight of the regulation service providers, review and monitor the standards established by all regulation service providers so that business content, service level standards, and other relevant standards are substantially similar for all regulation service providers.

9.2 [Repealed]

PART 10 INFORMATION TRANSPARENCY REQUIREMENTS FOR UNLISTED DEBT SECURITIES

10.1 Information Transparency Requirements for Unlisted Debt Securities

- (1) The requirement to provide transparency of information regarding orders and trades of government debt securities in section 8.1 of the Instrument does not apply until January 1, 2015. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities will continue to review the transparency requirements, in order to determine if the transparency requirements summarized in subsections (2) and (3) below should be amended.
- (2) The requirements of the information processor for government debt securities are as follows:
 - (a) Marketplaces trading government debt securities and inter-dealer bond brokers are required to provide in real time quotation information displayed on the marketplace for all bids and offers with respect to unlisted debt securities designated by the information processor, including details as to type, issuer, coupon and maturity of security, best bid price, best ask price and total disclosed volume at such prices; and
 - (b) Marketplaces trading government debt securities and inter-dealer bond brokers are required to provide in real time details of trades of all government debt securities designated by the information processor, including details as to the type, issuer, series, coupon and maturity, price and time of the trade and the volume traded.
- (3) The requirements of the information processor for corporate debt securities are as follows:
 - (a) Marketplaces trading corporate debt securities, inter-dealer bond brokers and dealers trading corporate debt securities outside of a marketplace are required to provide details of trades of all corporate debt securities designated by the information processor, including details as to the type of counterparty, issuer, type of security, class, series, coupon and maturity, price and time of the trade and, subject to the caps set out below, the volume traded, no later than one hour from the time of the trade or such shorter period of time determined by the information processor. If the total par value of a trade of an investment grade corporate debt security is greater than \$2 million, the trade details provided to the information processor are to be reported as "\$2 million+". If the total par value of a trade of a non-investment grade corporate debt security is greater than \$200,000, the trade details provided to the information processor are to be reported as "\$200,000+".
 - (b) Although subsection 8.2(1) of the Instrument requires marketplaces to provide information regarding orders of corporate debt securities, the information processor has not required this information to be provided.
 - (c) A marketplace, an inter-dealer bond broker or a dealer will satisfy the requirements in subsections 8.2(1), 8.2(3), 8.2(4) and 8.2(5) of the Instrument by providing accurate and timely information to an information vendor that meets the standards set by the regulation services provider for the fixed income markets.
- (4) The marketplace upon which the trade is executed will not be shown, unless the marketplace determines that it wants its name to be shown.
- (5) The information processor is required to use transparent criteria and a transparent process to select government debt securities and designated corporate debt securities. The information processor is also required to make the criteria and the process publicly available.
- (6) An "investment grade corporate debt security" is a corporate debt security that is rated by one of the listed rating organizations at or above one of the following rating categories or a rating category that preceded or replaces a category listed below:

Rating Organization	Long Term Debt	Short Term
Fitch, Inc.	BBB	F3
Dominion Bond Rating Service Limited	BBB	R-2
Moody's Investors Service, Inc.	Baa	Prime-3
Standard & Poors Corporation	BBB	A-3

- (7) A "non-investment grade corporate debt security" is a corporate debt security that is not an investment grade corporate debt security.
- (8) The information processor will publish the list of designated government debt securities and designated corporate debt securities. The information processor will give reasonable notice of any change to the list.
- (9) The information processor may request changes to the transparency requirements by filing an amendment to Form 21-101F5 with the Canadian securities regulatory authorities pursuant to subsection 14.2(1) of the Instrument. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities will review the amendment to Form 21-101F5 to determine whether the proposed changes are contrary to the public interest, to ensure fairness and to ensure that there is an appropriate balance between the standards of transparency and market quality (defined in terms of market liquidity and efficiency) in each area of the market. The proposed changes to the transparency requirements will also be subject to consultation with market participants.
- 10.2 Availability of Information** – In complying with the requirements in sections 8.1 and 8.2 of the Instrument to provide accurate and timely order and trade information to an information processor or an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider, a marketplace, an inter-dealer bond broker or dealer should not make the required order and trade information available to any other person or company on a more timely basis than it makes that information available to the information processor or information vendor.
- 10.3 Consolidated Feed** – Section 8.3 of the Instrument requires the information processor to produce a consolidated feed in real-time showing the information provided to the information processor.

PART 11 MARKET INTEGRATION

11.1 [Repealed]

11.2 [Repealed]

11.3 [Repealed]

11.4 [Repealed]

11.5 **Market Integration** – Although the Canadian securities regulatory authorities have removed the concept of a market integrator, we continue to be of the view that market integration is important to our marketplaces. We expect to achieve market integration by focusing on compliance with fair access and best execution requirements. We will continue to monitor developments to ensure that the lack of a market integrator does not unduly affect the market.

PART 12 TRANSPARENCY OF MARKETPLACE OPERATIONS

12.1 Transparency of Marketplace Operations

- (1) Section 10.1 of the Instrument requires that marketplaces make publicly available certain information pertaining to their operations and services. While section 10.1 sets out the minimum disclosure requirements, marketplaces may wish to make publicly available other information, as appropriate. Where this information is included in a marketplace's rules, regulations, policies and procedures or practices that are publicly available, the marketplace need not duplicate this disclosure.
- (2) Paragraph 10.1(a) requires marketplaces to disclose publicly all fees, including listing, trading, co-location, data and routing fees charged by the marketplace, an affiliate or by a third party to which services have directly or indirectly been outsourced or which directly or indirectly provides those services. This means that a marketplace is expected to publish

and make readily available the schedule(s) of fees charged to any and all users of these services, including the basis for charging each fee (e.g., a per share basis for trading fees, a per subscriber basis for data fees, etc.) and would also include any fee rebate or discount and the basis for earning the rebate or discount. With respect to trading fees, it is not the intention of the Canadian securities regulatory authorities that a commission fee charged by a dealer for dealer services be disclosed in this context.

- (3) Paragraph 10.1(b) requires marketplaces to disclose information on how orders are entered, interact and execute. This would include a description of the priority of execution for all order types and the types of crosses that may be executed on the marketplace. A marketplace should also disclose whether it sends information regarding indications of interest or order information to a smart order router.
- (4) Paragraph 10.1(e) requires a marketplace to disclose its conflict of interest policies and procedures. For conflicts arising from the ownership of a marketplace by marketplace participants, the marketplace should include in its marketplace participant agreements a requirement that marketplace participants disclose that ownership to their clients at least quarterly. This is consistent with the marketplace participant's existing obligations to disclose conflicts of interest under National Instrument 31-103 *Registration Requirements, Exemptions and Ongoing Registrant Requirements*. A marketplace should disclose if a marketplace or affiliated entity of a marketplace intends to trade for its own account on the marketplace against or in competition with client orders.
- (5) Paragraph 10.1(f) requires marketplaces to disclose a description of any arrangements where the marketplace refers its participants to the services of a third-party provider where the marketplace receives some benefit (fee rebate, payment, etc.) if the marketplace participant uses the services of the third-party service provider, and has a potential conflict of interest.
- (6) Paragraph 10.1(g) requires marketplaces that offer routing services to disclose a description of how routing decisions are made. The subsection applies whether routing is done by a marketplace-owned smart order router, by an affiliate of a marketplace, or by a third-party to which routing was outsourced.
- (7) Paragraph 10.1(h) applies to marketplaces that disseminate indications of interest or any information in order to attract order flow. The Instrument requires that these marketplaces make publicly available information regarding their practices regarding the dissemination of information. This would include a description of the type of information included in the indication of interest displayed, and the types of recipients of such information. For example, a marketplace would describe whether the recipients of an indication of interest are the general public, all of its subscribers, particular categories of subscribers or smart order routers operated by their subscribers or by third party vendors.

PART 13 RECORDKEEPING REQUIREMENTS FOR MARKETPLACES

- 13.1 **Recordkeeping Requirements for Marketplaces** – Part 11 of the Instrument requires a marketplace to maintain certain records. Generally, under provisions of securities legislation, the securities regulatory authorities can require a marketplace to deliver to them any of the records required to be kept by them under securities legislation, including the records required to be maintained under Part 11.
- 13.2 **Synchronization of Clocks** – Subsections 11.5(1) and (2) of the Instrument require the synchronization of clocks with a regulation services provider that monitors the trading of the relevant securities on marketplaces, and by, as appropriate, inter-dealer bond brokers or dealers. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities are of the view that synchronization requires continual synchronization using an appropriate national time standard as chosen by a regulation services provider. Even if a marketplace has not retained a regulation services provider, its clocks should be synchronized with any regulation services provider monitoring trading in the particular securities traded on that marketplace. Each regulation services provider will monitor the information that it receives from all marketplaces, dealers and, if appropriate, inter-dealer bond brokers, to ensure that the clocks are appropriately synchronized. If there is more than one regulation services provider, in meeting their obligation to coordinate monitoring and enforcement under section 7.5 of NI 23-101, regulation services providers are required to agree on one standard against which synchronization will occur. In the event there is no regulation services provider, a recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system are also required to coordinate with other recognized exchanges or recognized quotation and trade reporting systems regarding the synchronization of clocks.

PART 14 MARKETPLACE SYSTEMS AND BUSINESS CONTINUITY PLANNING

- 14.1 **Systems Requirements** – This section applies to all the systems of a particular marketplace that are identified in the introduction to section 12.1 of the Instrument.
- (1) Paragraph 12.1(a) of the Instrument requires the marketplace to develop and maintain an adequate system of internal

control over the systems specified. As well, the marketplace is required to develop and maintain adequate general computer controls. These are the controls which are implemented to support information technology planning, acquisition, development and maintenance, computer operations, information systems support, and security. Recognized guides as to what constitutes adequate information technology controls include *'Information Technology Control Guidelines'* from the Canadian Institute of Chartered Accountants (CICA) and *'COBIT'* from the IT Governance Institute.

- (2) Paragraph 12.1(b) of the Instrument requires a marketplace to meet certain systems capacity, performance and disaster recovery standards. These standards are consistent with prudent business practice. The activities and tests required in this paragraph are to be carried out at least once a year. In practice, continuing changes in technology, risk management requirements and competitive pressures will often result in these activities being carried out or tested more frequently.
- (3) Subsection 12.2(1) of the Instrument requires a marketplace to engage a qualified party to conduct an annual independent assessment of the internal controls referred to in paragraph 12.1(a) of the Instrument. A qualified party is a person or company or a group of persons or companies with relevant experience in both information technology and in the evaluation of related internal controls in a complex information technology environment, such as external auditors or third party information system consultants. Before engaging a qualified party, a marketplace should discuss its choice with the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority.
- (4) Paragraph 12.1(c) of the Instrument requires the marketplace to notify the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority of any material systems failure. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities consider a failure, malfunction or delay to be "material" if the marketplace would in the normal course of operations escalate the matter to or inform its senior management ultimately accountable for technology. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities also expect that, as part of this notification, the marketplace will provide updates on the status of the failure, the resumption of service and the results of its internal review of the failure.
- (5) Under section 15.1 of the Instrument, a regulator or the securities regulatory authority may consider granting a marketplace an exemption from the requirements to engage a qualified party to conduct an annual independent systems review and prepare a report under subsection 12.2(1) of the Instrument provided that the marketplace prepare a control self-assessment and file this self-assessment with the regulator or in Québec, the securities regulatory authority. The scope of the self-assessment would be similar to the scope that would have applied if the marketplace underwent an independent systems review. Reporting of the self-assessment results and the timeframe for reporting would be consistent with that established for an independent systems review.

In determining if the exemption is in the public interest and the length of the exemption, the regulator or securities regulatory authority may consider a number of factors including: the market share of the marketplace, the timing of the last independent systems review, changes to systems or staff of the marketplace and whether the marketplace has experienced material systems failures, malfunction or delays.

14.2 Availability of Technology Specifications and Testing Facilities

- (1) Subsection 12.3(1) of the Instrument requires marketplaces to make their technology requirements regarding interfacing with or accessing the marketplace publicly available in their final form for at least three months. If there are material changes to these requirements after they are made publicly available and before operations begin, the revised requirements should be made publicly available for a new three month period prior to operations. The subsection also requires that an operating marketplace make its technology specifications publicly available for at least three months before implementing a material change to its technology requirements.
- (2) Subsection 12.3(2) of the Instrument requires marketplaces to provide testing facilities for interfacing with or accessing the marketplace for at least two months immediately prior to operations once the technology requirements have been made publicly available. Should the marketplace make its specifications publicly available for longer than three months, it may make the testing available during that period or thereafter as long as it is at least two months prior to operations. If the marketplace, once it has begun operations, proposes material changes to its technology systems, it is required to make testing facilities publicly available for at least two months before implementing the material systems change.
- (3) Subsection 12.3(4) of the Instrument provides that if a marketplace must make a change to its technology requirements regarding interfacing with or accessing the marketplace to immediately address a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems or equipment, it must immediately notify the regulator or, in Québec, the securities regulatory authority, and, if applicable, its regulation services provider. We expect the amended technology requirements to be made publicly available as soon as practicable, either while the changes are being made or immediately after.

14.3 Business Continuity Planning

Section 12.4 of the Instrument requires that marketplaces develop and maintain reasonable business continuity plans, including disaster recovery plans. Business continuity planning should encompass all policies and procedures to ensure uninterrupted provision of key services regardless of the cause of potential disruption. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities expect that, in order for a marketplace to have a reasonable business continuity plan, including a disaster recovery plan, it test it on a periodic basis, and at least annually and it should participate in industry-wide tests.

PART 15 CLEARING AND SETTLEMENT

15.1 Clearing and Settlement – Subsection 13.1(1) of the Instrument requires that all trades executed through a marketplace shall be reported and settled through a clearing agency. Subsections 13.1(2) and (3) of the Instrument require that an ATS and its subscriber enter into an agreement that specifies which entity will report and settle the trades of securities. If the subscriber is registered as a dealer under securities legislation, either the ATS, the subscriber or an agent for the subscriber that is a member of a clearing agency may report and settle trades. If the subscriber is not registered as a dealer under securities legislation, either the ATS or an agent for the subscriber that is a clearing member of a clearing agency may report and settle trades. The ATS is responsible for ensuring that an agreement with the subscriber is in place before any trade is executed for the subscriber. If the agreement is not in place at the time of the execution of the trade, the ATS is responsible for clearing and settling that trade if a default occurs.

PART 16 INFORMATION PROCESSOR

16.1 Information Processor

- (1) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities believe that it is important for those who trade to have access to accurate information on the prices at which trades in particular securities are taking place (i.e., last sale reports) and the prices at which others have expressed their willingness to buy or sell (i.e., orders).
- (2) An information processor is required under subsection 14.4(2) of the Instrument to provide timely, accurate, reliable and fair collection, processing, distribution and publication of information for orders for, and trades in, securities. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities expect that in meeting this requirement, an information processor will ensure that all marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers and dealers that are required to provide information are given access to the information processor on fair and reasonable terms. In addition, it is expected that an information processor will not give preference to the information of any marketplace, inter-dealer bond broker or dealer when collecting, processing, distributing or publishing that information.
- (3) An information processor is required under subsection 14.4(5) of the Instrument to provide prompt and accurate order and trade information, and to not unreasonably restrict fair access to the information. As part of the obligation relating to fair access, an information processor is expected to make the disseminated and published information available on terms that are reasonable and not discriminatory. For example, an information processor will not provide order and trade information to any single person or company or group of persons or companies on a more timely basis than is afforded to others, and will not show preference to any single person or company or group of persons or companies in relation to pricing.

16.2 Selection of an Information Processor

- (1) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities will review Form 21-101F5 to determine whether it is contrary to the public interest for the person or company who filed the form to act as an information processor. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities will look at a number of factors when reviewing the form filed, including,
 - (a) the performance capability, standards and procedures for the collection, processing, distribution, and publication of information with respect to orders for, and trades in, securities;
 - (b) whether all marketplaces may obtain access to the information processor on fair and reasonable terms;
 - (c) personnel qualifications;
 - (d) whether the information processor has sufficient financial resources for the proper performance of its functions;
 - (e) the existence of another entity performing the proposed function for the same type of security;

- (f) the systems report referred to in subsection 14.5(c) of the Instrument.
- (2) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities request that the forms and exhibits be filed in electronic format, where possible.
- (3) The forms filed by an information processor under the Instrument will be kept confidential. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities are of the view that they contain intimate financial, commercial and technical information and that the interests of the filers in non-disclosure outweigh the desirability of adhering to the principle that all forms be available for public inspection.

16.3 Change to Information – Under subsection 14.2(1) of the Instrument, an information processor is required to file an amendment to the information provided in Form 21-101F5 at least 45 days before implementing a significant change involving a matter set out in Form 21-101F5, in the manner set out in Form 21-101F5. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities would consider significant changes to include:

- (a) changes to the governance of the information processor, including the structure of its board of directors and changes in the board committees and their mandates;
- (b) changes in control over the information processor;
- (c) changes affecting the independence of the information processor, including independence from the marketplaces, inter-dealer bond brokers and dealers that provide their data to meet the requirements of the Instrument;
- (d) changes to the services or functions performed by the information processor;
- (e) changes to the data products offered by the information processor;
- (f) changes to the fees and fee structure related to the services provided by the information processor;
- (g) changes to the revenue sharing model for revenues from fees related to services provided by the information processor;
- (h) changes to the systems and technology used by the information processor, including those affecting its capacity;
- (i) new arrangements or changes to arrangements to outsource the operation of any aspect of the services of the information processor;
- (j) changes to the means of access to the services of the information processor; and
- (k) where the information processor is responsible for making a determination of the data which must be reported, including the securities for which information must be reported in accordance with the Instrument, changes in the criteria and process for selection and communication of these securities.

These would not include housekeeping or administrative changes to the information included in Form 21-101F5, such as changes in the routine processes, practice or administration of the information processor, changes due to standardization of terminology, or minor system or technology changes that do not significantly impact the system of the information processor or its capacity. Such changes would be filed in accordance with the requirements outlined in subsection 14.2(2) of the Instrument.

16.4 System Requirements – The guidance in section 14.1 of this Companion Policy applies to the systems requirements for an information processor.

This page intentionally left blank

NATIONAL INSTRUMENT 23-101 TRADING RULES (Blacklined to Version Published March 18, 2011)

PART 1 DEFINITION AND INTERPRETATION

1.1 Definition – In this Instrument

“automated functionality” means the ability to

- (a) immediately allow an incoming order that has been entered on the marketplace electronically to be marked as immediate-or-cancel;
- (b) immediately and automatically execute an order marked as immediate-or-cancel against the displayed volume;
- (c) immediately and automatically cancel any unexecuted portion of an order marked as immediate-or-cancel without routing the order elsewhere;
- (d) immediately and automatically transmit a response to the sender of an order marked as immediate-or-cancel indicating the action taken with respect to the order; and
- (e) immediately and automatically display information that updates the displayed orders on the marketplace to reflect any change to their material terms;

“best execution” means the most advantageous execution terms reasonably available under the circumstances;

“calculated-price order” means an order for the purchase or sale of an exchange-traded security, other than an option, that is entered on a marketplace and for which the price of the security

- (a) is not known at the time of order entry; and
- (b) is not based, directly or indirectly, on the quoted price of an exchange-traded security at the time the commitment to execute the order was made;

“closing-price order” means an order for the purchase or sale of an exchange-traded security, other than an option, that is

- (a) entered on a marketplace on a trading day; and
- (b) subject to the conditions that
 - (i) the order be executed at the closing sale price of that security on the marketplace for that trading day; and
 - (ii) the order be executed subsequent to the establishment of the closing price;

“directed-action order” means a limit order for the purchase or sale of an exchange-traded security, other than an option, that,

- (a) when entered on or routed to a marketplace is to be immediately
 - (i) executed against a protected order with any remainder to be booked or cancelled; or
 - (ii) placed in an order book;
- (b) is marked as a directed-action order; and
- (c) is entered or routed at the same time as one or more additional limit orders that are entered on or routed to one or more marketplaces, as necessary, to execute against any protected order with a better price than the order referred to in paragraph (a);

“NI 21-101” means National Instrument 21-101 Marketplace Operation;

“non-standard order” means an order for the purchase or sale of an exchange-traded security, other than an option, that is entered on a marketplace and is subject to non-standardized terms or conditions related to settlement that have not been set by the marketplace on which the security is listed or quoted; and

“protected bid” means a bid for an exchange-traded security, other than an option,

- (a) that is displayed on a marketplace that provides automated functionality; and
- (b) about which information is required to be provided pursuant to Part 7 of NI 21-101 to an information processor or, if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider;

“protected offer” means an offer for an exchange-traded security, other than an option,

- (a) that is displayed on a marketplace that provides automated functionality; and
- (b) about which information is required to be provided pursuant to Part 7 of NI 21-101 to an information processor or, if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider;

“protected order” means a protected bid or protected offer; and

“trade-through” means the execution of an order at a price that is,

- (a) in the case of a purchase, higher than any protected offer, or
- (b) in the case of a sale, lower than any protected bid.

1.2 Interpretation – NI 21-101 – Terms defined or interpreted in NI 21-101 and used in this Instrument have the respective meanings ascribed to them in NI 21-101.

PART 2 APPLICATION OF THIS INSTRUMENT

2.1 Application of this Instrument – A person or company is exempt from subsection 3.1(1) and Parts 4 and 5 if the person or company complies with similar requirements established by

- (a) a recognized exchange that monitors and enforces the requirements set under subsection 7.1(1) directly;
- (b) a recognized quotation and trade reporting system that monitors and enforces requirements set under subsection 7.3(1) directly; or
- (c) a regulation services provider.

PART 3 MANIPULATION AND FRAUD

3.1 Manipulation and Fraud

(1) A person or company shall not, directly or indirectly, engage in, or participate in any transaction or series of transactions, or method of trading relating to a trade in or acquisition of a security or any act, practice or course of conduct, if the person or company knows, or ought reasonably to know, that the transaction or series of transactions, or method of trading or act, practice or course of conduct

PART 1: results in or contributes to a misleading appearance of trading activity in, or an artificial price for, a security or a derivative of that security; or

PART 2: perpetrates a fraud on any person or company.

(2) In Alberta, British Columbia, Ontario, Québec and Saskatchewan, instead of subsection (1), the provisions of the *Securities Act* (Alberta), the *Securities Act* (British Columbia), the *Securities Act* (Ontario), the *Securities Act* and the *Derivatives Act* (Québec) and *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan), respectively, relating to manipulation and fraud apply.

PART 4 BEST EXECUTION

4.1 Application of this Part – This Part does not apply to a dealer that is carrying on business as an ATS in compliance with section 6.1 of NI 21-101.

4.2 Best Execution – A dealer and an adviser must make reasonable efforts to achieve best execution when acting for a client.

4.3 Order and Trade Information – To satisfy the requirements in section 4.2, a dealer or adviser shall make reasonable efforts to use facilities providing information regarding orders and trades.

PART 5 REGULATORY HALTS

5.1 Regulatory Halts – If a regulation services provider, a recognized exchange, recognized quotation and trade reporting system or an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system that has been recognized for the purposes of this Instrument and NI 21-101 makes a decision to prohibit trading in a particular security for a regulatory purpose, no person or company shall execute a trade for the purchase or sale of that security during the period in which the prohibition is in place.

PART 6 ORDER PROTECTION

6.1 Marketplace Requirements for Order Protection – (1) A marketplace shall establish, maintain and ensure compliance with written policies and procedures that are reasonably designed

- (a) to prevent trade-throughs on that marketplace other than the trade-throughs referred to in section 6.2; and
 - (b) to ensure that the marketplace, when executing a transaction that results in a trade-through referred to in section 6.2, is doing so in compliance with this Part.
- (2) A marketplace shall regularly review and monitor the effectiveness of the policies and procedures required under subsection (1) and shall promptly remedy any deficiencies in those policies and procedures.
- (3) At least 45 days before implementation, a marketplace shall file with the securities regulatory authority and, if applicable, its regulation services provider the policies and procedures, and any significant changes to those policies and procedures established under subsection (1).

6.2 List of Trade-throughs – For the purposes of paragraph 6.1(1)(a) the permitted trade-throughs are:

- (a) a trade-through that occurs when the marketplace has reasonably concluded that the marketplace displaying the protected order that was traded through was experiencing a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems or equipment or ability to disseminate marketplace data;
- (b) the execution of a directed-action order;
- (c) a trade-through by a marketplace that simultaneously routes a directed-action order to execute against the total displayed volume of any protected order that is traded through;
- (d) a trade-through if, immediately before the trade-through, the marketplace displaying the protected order that is traded through displays as its best price a protected order with a price that is equal or inferior to the price of the trade-through;
- (e) a trade-through that results when executing
 - (i) a non-standard order;
 - (ii) a calculated-price order; or
 - (iii) a closing-price order;
- (f) a trade-through that was executed at a time when the best protected bid for the security traded through was higher than the best protected offer.

6.3 Systems or Equipment Failure, Malfunction or Material Delay – (1) If a marketplace experiences a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems, equipment or its ability to disseminate marketplace data, the marketplace shall immediately notify

- (a) all other marketplaces;
- (b) all regulation services providers;

- (c) its marketplace participants; and
 - (d) any information processor or, if there is no information processor, any information vendor that disseminates its data under Part 7 of NI 21-101.
- (2) If executing a transaction described in paragraph 6.2(a), and a notification has not been sent under subsection (1), a marketplace that routes an order to another marketplace shall immediately notify
- (a) the marketplace that it reasonably concluded is experiencing a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems or equipment or its ability to disseminate marketplace data;
 - (b) all regulation services providers;
 - (c) its marketplace participants; and
 - (d) any information processor disseminating information under Part 7 of NI 21-101.
- (3) If a marketplace participant reasonably concludes that a marketplace is experiencing a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems or equipment or its ability to disseminate marketplace data, and routes an order to execute against a protected order on another marketplace displaying an inferior price, the marketplace participant must notify the following of the failure, malfunction or material delay
- (a) the marketplace that may be experiencing a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems or equipment or its ability to disseminate marketplace data; and
 - (b) all regulation services providers.

6.4 Marketplace Participant Requirements for Order Protection – (1) A marketplace participant must not enter a directed-action order unless the marketplace participant has established, and maintains and ensures compliance with, written policies and procedures that are reasonably designed

- (a) to prevent trade-throughs other than the trade-throughs listed below:
 - (i) a trade-through that occurs when the marketplace participant has reasonably concluded that the marketplace displaying the protected order that was traded through was experiencing a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems or equipment or ability to disseminate marketplace data;
 - (ii) a trade-through by a marketplace participant that simultaneously routes a directed-action order to execute against the total displayed volume of any protected order that is traded through;
 - (iii) a trade-through if, immediately before the trade-through, the marketplace displaying the protected order that is traded through displays as its best price a protected order with a price that is equal or inferior to the price of the trade-through transaction;
 - (iv) a trade-through that results when executing
 - (A) a non-standard order;
 - (B) a calculated-price order; or
 - (C) a closing-price order;
 - (v) a trade-through that was executed at a time when the best protected bid for the security traded through was higher than the best protected offer; and
 - (b) to ensure that when executing a trade-through listed in paragraphs (a)(i) to (a)(v), it is doing so in compliance with this Part.
- (2) A marketplace participant that enters a directed-action order shall regularly review and monitor the effectiveness of the policies and procedures required under subsection (1) and shall promptly remedy any deficiencies in those policies and procedures.

6.5 Locked or Crossed Orders – A marketplace participant or a marketplace that routes or reprices orders shall not intentionally

- (a) enter on a marketplace a protected order to buy a security at a price that is the same as or higher than the best protected offer; or
- (b) enter on a marketplace a protected order to sell a security at a price that is the same as or lower than the best protected bid.

6.6 Trading Hours – A marketplace shall set the hours of trading to be observed by marketplace participants.

6.7 Anti-Avoidance – No person or company shall send an order to an exchange, quotation and trade reporting system or alternative trading system that does not carry on business in Canada in order to avoid executing against better-priced orders on a marketplace.

6.8 Application of this Part – In Québec, this Part does not apply to standardized derivatives.

PART 7 MONITORING AND ENFORCEMENT OF REQUIREMENTS SET BY A RECOGNIZED EXCHANGE AND A RECOGNIZED QUOTATION AND TRADE REPORTING SYSTEM

7.1 Requirements for a Recognized Exchange

- (1) A recognized exchange shall set requirements governing the conduct of its members, including requirements that the members will conduct trading activities in compliance with this Instrument.
- (2) A recognized exchange shall monitor the conduct of its members and enforce the requirements set under subsection (1), either
 - (a) directly, or
 - (b) indirectly through a regulation services provider.

7.2 Agreement between a Recognized Exchange and a Regulation Services Provider – A recognized exchange that monitors the conduct of its members indirectly through a regulation services provider shall enter into a written agreement with the regulation services provider that provides

- (a) that the regulation services provider will monitor the conduct of the members of a recognized exchange;
- (b) that the regulation services provider will enforce the requirements set under subsection 7.1(1);
- (c) that the recognized exchange will transmit to the regulation services provider the information required by Part 11 of NI 21-101 and any other information reasonably required to effectively monitor:
 - (i) the conduct of and trading by marketplace participants on and across marketplaces, and
 - (ii) the conduct of the recognized exchange, as applicable; and
- (d) that the recognized exchange will comply with all orders or directions made by the regulation services provider.

7.3 Requirements for a Recognized Quotation and Trade Reporting System

- (1) A recognized quotation and trade reporting system shall set requirements governing the conduct of its users, including requirements that the users will conduct trading activities in compliance with this Instrument.
- (2) A recognized quotation and trade reporting system shall monitor the conduct of its users and enforce the requirements set under subsection (1) either
 - (a) directly; or
 - (b) indirectly through a regulation services provider.

7.4 Agreement between a Recognized Quotation and Trade Reporting System and a Regulation Services Provider – A recognized quotation and trade reporting system that monitors the conduct of its users indirectly through a regulation services provider shall enter into a written agreement with the regulation services provider that provides

- (a) that the regulation services provider will monitor the conduct of the users of a recognized quotation and trade reporting system;
- (b) that the regulation services provider will enforce the requirements set under subsection 7.3(1);
- (c) that the recognized quotation and trade reporting system will transmit to the regulation services provider the information required by Part 11 of NI 21-101 and any other information reasonably required to effectively monitor:
 - (i) the conduct of and trading by marketplace participants on and across marketplaces, and
 - (ii) the conduct of the recognized quotation and trade reporting system, as applicable; and
- (d) that the recognized quotation and trade reporting system will comply with all orders or directions made by the regulation services provider.

7.5 Co-ordination of Monitoring and Enforcement – A regulation services provider, recognized exchange, or recognized quotation and trade reporting system shall enter into a written agreement with all other regulation services providers, recognized exchanges, and recognized quotation and trade reporting systems to coordinate monitoring and enforcement of the requirements set under Parts 7 and 8.

PART 8 MONITORING AND ENFORCEMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR AN ATS

8.1 Pre-condition to Trading on an ATS – An ATS shall not execute a subscriber's order to buy or sell securities unless the ATS has executed and is subject to the written agreements required by sections 8.3 and 8.4.

8.2 Requirements Set by a Regulation Services Provider for an ATS

- (1) A regulation services provider shall set requirements governing an ATS and its subscribers, including requirements that the ATS and its subscribers will conduct trading activities in compliance with this Instrument.
- (2) A regulation services provider shall monitor the conduct of an ATS and its subscribers and shall enforce the requirements set under subsection (1).

8.3 Agreement between an ATS and a Regulation Services Provider – An ATS and a regulation services provider shall enter into a written agreement that provides

- a) that the ATS will conduct its trading activities in compliance with the requirements set under subsection 8.2(1);
- (b) that the regulation services provider will monitor the conduct of the ATS and its subscribers;
- (c) that the regulation services provider will enforce the requirements set under subsection 8.2(1);
- (d) that the ATS will transmit to the regulation services provider the information required by Part 11 of NI 21-101 and any other information reasonably required to effectively monitor:
 - (i) the conduct of and trading by marketplace participants on and across marketplaces, and
 - (ii) the conduct of the ATS; and
- (e) that the ATS will comply with all orders or directions made by the regulation services provider.

8.4 Agreement between an ATS and its Subscriber – An ATS and its subscriber shall enter into a written agreement that provides

- (a) that the subscriber will conduct its trading activities in compliance with the requirements set under subsection 8.2(1);
- (b) that the subscriber acknowledges that the regulation services provider will monitor the conduct of the subscriber and enforce the requirements set under subsection 8.2(1);

- (c) that the subscriber will comply with all orders or directions made by the regulation services provider in its capacity as a regulation services provider, including orders excluding the subscriber from trading on any marketplace.

8.5 [Repealed]

PART 9 MONITORING AND ENFORCEMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR AN INTER-DEALER BOND BROKER

9.1 Requirements Set by a Regulation Services Provider for an Inter-Dealer Bond Broker

(1) A regulation services provider shall set requirements governing an inter-dealer bond broker, including requirements that the inter-dealer bond broker will conduct trading activities in compliance with this Instrument.

(2) A regulation services provider shall monitor the conduct of an inter-dealer bond broker and shall enforce the requirements set under subsection (1).

9.2 Agreement between an Inter-Dealer Bond Broker and a Regulation Services Provider – An inter-dealer bond broker and a regulation services provider shall enter into a written agreement that provides

- (a) that the inter-dealer bond broker will conduct its trading activities in compliance with the requirements set under subsection 9.1(1);
- (b) that the regulation services provider will monitor the conduct of the inter-dealer bond broker;
- (c) that the regulation services provider will enforce the requirements set under subsection 9.1(1); and
- (d) that the inter-dealer bond broker will comply with all orders or directions made by the regulation services provider.

9.3 Exemption for an Inter-Dealer Bond Broker

(1) Sections 9.1 and 9.2 do not apply to an inter-dealer bond broker, if the inter-dealer bond broker complies with the requirements of IIROC Rule 2800 Code of Conduct for Corporation Dealer Member Firms Trading in Wholesale Domestic Debt Markets, as amended.

(2) [Repealed]

PART 10 MONITORING AND ENFORCEMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR A DEALER EXECUTING TRADES OF UNLISTED DEBT SECURITIES OUTSIDE OF A MARKETPLACE

10.1 Requirements Set by a Regulation Services Provider for a Dealer Executing Trades of Unlisted Debt Securities Outside of a Marketplace

(1) A regulation services provider shall set requirements governing a dealer executing trades of unlisted debt securities outside of a marketplace, including requirements that the dealer will conduct trading activities in compliance with this Instrument.

(2) A regulation services provider shall monitor the conduct of a dealer executing trades of unlisted debt securities outside of a marketplace and shall enforce the requirements set under subsection (1).

10.2 Agreement between a Dealer Executing Trades of Unlisted Debt Securities Outside of a Marketplace and a Regulation Services Provider – A dealer executing trades of unlisted debt securities outside of a marketplace shall enter into an agreement with a regulation services provider that provides

- (a) that the dealer will conduct its trading activities in compliance with the requirements set under subsection 10.1(1);
- (b) that the regulation services provider will monitor the conduct of the dealer;
- (c) that the regulation services provider will enforce the requirements set under subsection 10.1(1); and
- (d) that the dealer will comply with all orders or directions made by the regulation services provider.

10.3 [Repealed]

PART 11 AUDIT TRAIL REQUIREMENTS

11.1 Application of this Part

- (1) This Part does not apply to a dealer that is carrying on business as an ATS in compliance with section 6.1 of NI 21-101.
- (2) A dealer or inter-dealer bond broker is exempt from the requirements in section 11.2 if the dealer or inter-dealer bond broker complies with similar requirements, for any securities specified, established by a regulation services provider and approved by the applicable securities regulatory authority.

11.2 Audit Trail Requirements for Dealers and Inter-Dealer Bond Brokers

- (1) **Recording Requirements for Receipt or Origination of an Order** – Immediately following the receipt or origination of an order for equity, fixed income and other securities identified by a regulation services provider, a dealer and inter-dealer bond broker shall record in electronic form specific information relating to that order including,
- (a) the order identifier;
 - (b) the dealer or inter-dealer bond broker identifier;
 - (c) the type, issuer, class, series and symbol of the security;
 - (d) the face amount or unit price of the order, if applicable;
 - (e) the number of securities to which the order applies;
 - (f) the strike date and strike price, if applicable;
 - (g) whether the order is a buy or sell order;
 - (h) whether the order is a short sale order, if applicable;
 - (i) whether the order is a market order, limit order or other type of order, and if the order is not a market order, the price at which the order is to trade;
 - (j) the date and time the order is first originated or received by the dealer or inter-dealer bond broker;
 - (k) whether the account is a retail, wholesale, employee, proprietary or any other type of account;
 - (l) the client account number or client identifier;
 - (m) the date and time that the order expires;
 - (n) whether the order is an intentional cross;
 - (o) whether the order is a jitney and if so, the underlying broker identifier;
 - (p) any client instructions or consents respecting the handling or trading of the order, if applicable;
 - (q) the currency of the order;
 - (r) an insider marker;
 - (s) any other markers required by a regulation services provider;
 - (t) each unique client identifier assigned to a client accessing the marketplace using direct electronic access; and
 - (u) whether the order is a directed-action order.
- (2) **Recording Requirements for Transmission of an Order** – Immediately following the transmission of an order for securities to a dealer, inter-dealer bond broker or a marketplace, a dealer or inter-dealer bond broker transmitting the order shall add to the record of the order maintained in accordance with this section specific information relating to that order including,

- (a) the dealer or inter-dealer bond broker identifier assigned to the dealer or inter-dealer bond broker transmitting the order and the identifier assigned to the dealer, inter-dealer bond broker or marketplace to which the order is transmitted; and
- (b) the date and time the order is transmitted.
- (3) **Recording Requirements for Variation, Correction or Cancellation of an Order** – Immediately following the variation, correction or cancellation of an order for securities, a dealer or inter-dealer bond broker shall add to the record of the order maintained in accordance with this section specific information relating to that order including,
 - (a) the date and time the variation, correction or cancellation was originated or received;
 - (b) whether the order was varied, corrected or cancelled on the instructions of the client, the dealer or the inter-dealer bond broker;
 - (c) in the case of variation or correction, any of the information required by subsection (1) which has been changed; and
 - (d) the date and time the variation, correction or cancellation of the order is entered.
- (4) **Recording Requirements for Execution of an Order** – Immediately following the execution of an order for securities, the dealer or inter-dealer bond broker shall add to the record maintained in accordance with this section specific information relating to that order including,
 - (a) the identifier of the marketplace where the order was executed or the identifier of the dealer or inter-dealer bond broker executing the order if the order was not executed on a marketplace;
 - (b) the date and time of the execution of the order;
 - (c) whether the order was fully or partially executed;
 - (d) the number of securities bought or sold;
 - (e) whether the transaction was a cross;
 - (f) whether the dealer has executed the order as principal;
 - (g) the commission charged and all other transaction fees; and
 - (h) the price at which the order was executed, including mark-up or mark-down.
- (5) **[Repealed]**
- (6) **[Repealed]**
- (7) **Record Preservation Requirements** – A dealer and an inter-dealer bond broker shall keep all records in electronic form for a period of not less than seven years from the creation of the record referred to in this section, and for the first two years in a readily accessible location.

11.3 Transmission in Electronic Form – A dealer and inter-dealer bond broker shall transmit

- (a) to a regulation services provider the information required by the regulation services provider, within ten business days, in electronic form; and
- (b) to the securities regulatory authority the information required by the securities regulatory authority under securities legislation, within ten business days, in electronic form.

PART 12 EXEMPTION

12.1 Exemption

- (1) The regulator or the securities regulatory authority may grant an exemption from this Instrument, in whole or in part, subject to such conditions or restrictions as may be imposed in the exemption.
- (2) Despite subsection (1), in Ontario, only the regulator may grant such an exemption.

PART 13 EFFECTIVE DATE

13.1 Effective Date – This Instrument comes into force on December 1, 2001.

**COMPANION POLICY 23-101 CP
TO NATIONAL INSTRUMENT 23-101 TRADING RULES**

Table of Contents

<u>PART</u>	<u>TITLE</u>
PART 1	INTRODUCTION
1.1	Introduction
1.2	Just and Equitable Principles of Trade
PART 1.1	DEFINITIONS
1.1.1	Definition of best execution
1.1.2	Definition of automated functionality
1.1.3	Definition of protected order
1.1.4	Definition of calculated-price order
1.1.5	Definition of directed-action order
1.1.6	Definition of non-standard order
PART 2	APPLICATION OF THE INSTRUMENT
2.1	Application of the Instrument
PART 3	MANIPULATION AND FRAUD
3.1	Manipulation and Fraud
PART 4	BEST EXECUTION
4.1	Best Execution
PART 5	REGULATORY HALTS
5.1	Regulatory Halts
PART 6	ORDER PROTECTION
6.1	Marketplace Requirements for Order Protection
6.2	Marketplace Participant Requirements for Order Protection
6.3	List of Trade-throughs
6.4	Locked and Crossed Markets
6.5	Anti-Avoidance Provision
PART 7	MONITORING AND ENFORCEMENT
7.1	Monitoring and Enforcement Requirements Set By a Recognized Exchange or Recognized Quotation and Trade Reporting System
7.2	Monitoring and Enforcement Requirements for an ATS
7.3	Monitoring and Enforcement Requirements for an Inter-Dealer Bond Broker
7.4	Monitoring and Enforcement Requirements for a Dealer Executing Trades of Unlisted Debt Securities Outside of a Marketplace
7.5	Agreement between a Marketplace and a Regulation Services Provider
7.6	Coordination of Monitoring and Enforcement
PART 8	AUDIT TRAIL REQUIREMENTS
8.1	Audit Trail Requirements
8.2	Transmission of Information to a Regulation Services Provider
8.3	Electronic Form

**COMPANION POLICY 23-101 CP
TO NATIONAL INSTRUMENT 23-101 TRADING RULES**

PART 1 INTRODUCTION

1.1 Introduction – The purpose of this Companion Policy is to state the views of the Canadian securities regulatory authorities on various matters related to National Instrument 23-101 Trading Rules (the "Instrument"), including

- (a) a discussion of the general approach taken by the Canadian securities regulatory authorities in, and the general regulatory purpose for, the Instrument; and
- (b) the interpretation of various terms and provisions in the Instrument.

1.2 Just and Equitable Principles of Trade – While the Instrument deals with specific trading practices, as a general matter, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities expect marketplace participants to transact business openly and fairly, and in accordance with just and equitable principles of trade.

PART 1.1 DEFINITIONS

1.1.1 Definition of best execution – (1) In the Instrument, best execution is defined as the "most advantageous execution terms reasonably available under the circumstances". In seeking best execution, a dealer or adviser may consider a number of elements, including:

- a. price;
- b. speed of execution;
- c. certainty of execution; and
- d. the overall cost of the transaction.

These four broad elements encompass more specific considerations, such as order size, reliability of quotes, liquidity, market impact (i.e. the price movement that occurs when executing an order) and opportunity cost (i.e. the missed opportunity to obtain a better price when an order is not completed at the most advantageous time). The overall cost of the transaction is meant to include, where appropriate, all costs associated with accessing an order and/or executing a trade that are passed on to a client, including fees arising from trading on a particular marketplace, jitney fees (i.e. any fees charged by one dealer to another for providing trading access) and settlement costs. The commission fees charged by a dealer would also be a cost of the transaction.

(2) The elements to be considered in determining "the most advantageous execution terms reasonably available" (i.e. best execution) and the weight given to each will vary depending on the instructions and needs of the client, the particular security, the prevailing market conditions and whether the dealer or adviser is responsible for best execution under the circumstances. Please see a detailed discussion below in Part 4.

1.1.2 Definition of automated functionality – Section 1.1 of the Instrument includes a definition of "automated functionality" which is the ability to:

- (1) act on an incoming order;
- (2) respond to the sender of an order; and
- (3) update the order by disseminating information to an information processor or information vendor.

Automated functionality allows for an incoming order to execute immediately and automatically up to the displayed size and for any unexecuted portion of such incoming order to be cancelled immediately and automatically without being booked or routed elsewhere. Automated functionality involves no human discretion in determining the action taken with respect to an order after the time the order is received. A marketplace with this functionality should have appropriate systems and policies and procedures relating to the handling of immediate-or-cancel orders.

1.1.3 Definition of calculated-price order – The definition of "**calculated-price order**" refers to any order where the price is not known at the time of order entry and is not based, directly or indirectly, on the quoted price of an exchange-traded security at the time the commitment to executing the order was made. This includes the following orders:

- (a) a call market order – where the price of a trade is calculated by the trading system of a marketplace at a time designated by the marketplace;
- (b) an opening order – where each marketplace may establish its own formula for the determination of opening prices;
- (c) a closing order – where execution occurs at the closing price on a particular marketplace, but at the time of order entry, the price is not known;
- (d) a volume-weighted average price order – where the price of a trade is determined by a formula that measures average price on one or more marketplaces; and
- (e) a basis order – where the price is based on prices achieved in one or more derivative transactions on a marketplace. To qualify as a basis order, this order must be approved by a regulation services provider or an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system that oversees the conduct of its members or users respectively.

1.1.4 Definition of directed-action order – (1) An order marked as a directed-action order informs the receiving marketplace that the marketplace can act immediately to carry out the action specified by either the marketplace or marketplace participant who has sent the order and that the order protection obligation is being met by the sender. Such an order may be marked “DAO” by a marketplace or a marketplace participant. Senders can specify actions by adding markers that instruct a marketplace to:

- (a) execute the order and cancel the remainder using an immediate-or-cancel marker,
- (b) execute the order and book the remainder,
- (c) book the order as a passive order awaiting execution, and
- (d) avoid interaction with hidden liquidity using a bypass marker, as defined in IIROC’s Universal Market Integrity Rules.

The definition allows for the simultaneous routing of more than one directed-action order in order to execute against any better-priced protected orders. In addition, marketplaces or marketplace participants may send a single directed-action order to execute against the best protected bid or best protected offer. When it receives a directed-action order, a marketplace can carry out the sender’s instructions without checking for better-priced orders displayed by the other marketplaces and implementing the marketplace’s own policies and procedures to reasonably prevent trade-throughs.

(2) Regardless of whether the entry of a directed-action order is accompanied by the bypass marker, the sender must take out all better-priced visible orders before executing at an inferior price. For example, if a marketplace or marketplace participant combines a directed-action order with a bypass marker to avoid executing against hidden liquidity, the order has order protection obligations regarding the visible liquidity. If a directed-action order interacts with hidden liquidity, the requirement to take out all better-priced visible orders before executing at an inferior price remains.

1.1.5 Definition of non-standard order – The definition of “**non-standard order**” refers to an order for the purchase or sale of a security that is subject to terms or conditions relating to settlement that have not been set by the marketplace on which the security is listed or quoted. A marketplace participant, however, may not add a special settlement term or condition to an order solely for the purpose that the order becomes a non-standard order under the definition.

1.1.6 Definition of protected order – (1) A protected order is defined to be a “protected bid or protected offer”. A “protected bid” or “protected offer” is an order to buy or sell an exchange-traded security, other than an option, that is displayed on a marketplace that provides automated functionality and about which information is provided to an information processor or an information vendor, as applicable, pursuant to Part 7 of NI 21-101. The term “**displayed on a marketplace**” refers to the information about total disclosed volume on a marketplace. Volumes that are not disclosed or that are “reserve” or hidden volumes are not considered to be “displayed on a marketplace”. The order must be provided in a way that enables other marketplaces and marketplace participants to readily access the information and integrate it into their systems or order routers.

(2) Subsection 5.1(3) of 21-101CP does not consider orders that are not immediately executable or that have special terms as “orders” that are required to be provided to an information processor or information vendor under Part 7 of NI 21-101. As a result, these orders are not considered to be “protected orders” under the definition in the Instrument and do not receive order protection. However, those executing against these types of orders are required to execute against all better-priced orders first. In addition, when entering a “special terms order” on a marketplace, if it can be executed against existing orders despite the special term, then the order protection obligation applies.

PART 2 APPLICATION OF THE INSTRUMENT

2.1 Application of the Instrument – Section 2.1 of the Instrument provides an exemption from subsection 3.1(1) and Parts 4 and 5 of the Instrument if a person or company complies with similar requirements established by a recognized exchange that monitors and enforces the requirements set under subsection 7.1(1) of the Instrument directly, a recognized quotation and trade reporting system that monitors and enforces requirements set under subsection 7.3(1) of the Instrument directly or a regulation services provider. The requirements are filed by the recognized exchange, recognized quotation and trade reporting system or regulation services provider and approved by a securities regulatory authority. If a person or company is not in compliance with the requirements of the recognized exchange, recognized quotation and trade reporting system or the regulation services provider, then the exemption does not apply and that person or company is subject to subsection 3.1(1) and Parts 4 and 5 of the Instrument. The exemption from subsection 3.1(1) does not apply in Alberta, British Columbia, Ontario, Québec and Saskatchewan and the relevant provisions of securities legislation apply.

PART 3 MANIPULATION AND FRAUD

3.1 Manipulation and Fraud

(1) Subsection 3.1(1) of the Instrument prohibits the practices of manipulation and deceptive trading, as these may create misleading price and trade activity, which are detrimental to investors and the integrity of the market.

(2) Subsection 3.1(2) of the Instrument provides that despite subsection 3.1(1) of the Instrument, the provisions of the *Securities Act* (Alberta), the *Securities Act* (British Columbia), the *Securities Act* (Ontario), the *Securities Act* (Québec) and *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan), respectively, relating to manipulation and fraud apply in Alberta, British Columbia, Ontario, Québec and Saskatchewan. The jurisdictions listed have provisions in their legislation that deal with manipulation and fraud.

(3) For the purposes of subsection 3.1(1) of the Instrument, and without limiting the generality of those provisions, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities, depending on the circumstances, would normally consider the following to result in, contribute to or create a misleading appearance of trading activity in, or an artificial price for, a security:

- (a) Executing transactions in a security if the transactions do not involve a change in beneficial or economic ownership. This includes activities such as wash-trading.
- (b) Effecting transactions that have the effect of artificially raising, lowering or maintaining the price of the security. For example, making purchases of or offers to purchase securities at successively higher prices or making sales of or offers to sell a security at successively lower prices or entering an order or orders for the purchase or sale of a security to:
 - (i) establish a predetermined price or quotation,
 - (ii) effect a high or low closing price or closing quotation, or
 - (iii) maintain the trading price, ask price or bid price within a predetermined range.
- (c) Entering orders that could reasonably be expected to create an artificial appearance of investor participation in the market. For example, entering an order for the purchase or sale of a security with the knowledge that an order of substantially the same size, at substantially the same time, at substantially the same price for the sale or purchase, respectively, of that security has been or will be entered by or for the same or different persons.
- (d) Executing prearranged transactions that have the effect of creating a misleading appearance of active public trading or that have the effect of improperly excluding other marketplace participants from the transaction.
- (e) Effecting transactions if the purpose of the transactions is to defer payment for the securities traded.
- (f) Entering orders to purchase or sell securities without the ability and the intention to
 - (i) make the payment necessary to properly settle the transaction, in the case of a purchase; or
 - (ii) deliver the securities necessary to properly settle the transaction, in the case of a sale.

This includes activities known as free-riding, kiting or debit kiting, in which a person or company avoids having to make payment or deliver securities to settle a trade.

- (g) Engaging in any transaction, practice or scheme that unduly interferes with the normal forces of demand for or supply

of a security or that artificially restricts or reduces the public float of a security in a way that could reasonably be expected to result in an artificial price for the security.

(h) Engaging in manipulative trading activity designed to increase the value of a derivative position.

(i) Entering a series of orders for a security that are not intended to be executed.

(4) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities do not consider market stabilization activities carried out in connection with a distribution to be activities in breach of subsection 3.1(1) of the Instrument, if the market stabilization activities are carried out in compliance with the rules of the marketplace on which the securities trade or with provisions of securities legislation that permit market stabilization by a person or company in connection with a distribution.

(5) Section 3.1 of the Instrument applies to transactions both on and off a marketplace. In determining whether a transaction results in, contributes to or creates a misleading appearance of trading activity in, or an artificial price for a security, it may be relevant whether the transaction takes place on or off a marketplace. For example, a transfer of securities to a holding company for *bona fide* purposes that takes place off a marketplace would not normally violate section 3.1 even though it is a transfer with no change in beneficial ownership.

(6) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities are of the view that section 3.1 of the Instrument does not create a private right of action.

(7) In the view of the Canadian securities regulatory authorities, section 3.1 includes attempting to create a misleading appearance of trading activity in or an artificial price for, a security or attempting to perpetrate a fraud.

PART 4 BEST EXECUTION

4.1 Best Execution

(1) The best execution obligation in Part 4 of the Instrument does not apply to an ATS that is registered as a dealer provided that it is carrying on business as a marketplace and is not handling any client orders other than accepting them to allow them to execute on the system. However, the best execution obligation does otherwise apply to an ATS acting as an agent for a client.

(2) Section 4.2 of the Instrument requires a dealer or adviser to make reasonable efforts to achieve best execution (the most advantageous execution terms reasonably available under the circumstances) when acting for a client. The obligation applies to all securities.

(3) Although what constitutes “best execution” varies depending on the particular circumstances, to meet the “reasonable efforts” test, a dealer or adviser should be able to demonstrate that it has, and has abided by, its policies and procedures that (i) require it to follow the client’s instructions and the objectives set, and (ii) outline a process designed to achieve best execution. The policies and procedures should describe how the dealer or adviser evaluates whether best execution was obtained and should be regularly and rigorously reviewed. The policies outlining the obligations of the dealer or adviser will be dependent on the role it is playing in an execution. For example, in making reasonable efforts to achieve best execution, the dealer should consider the client’s instructions and a number of factors, including the client’s investment objectives and the dealer’s knowledge of markets and trading patterns. An adviser should consider a number of factors, including assessing a particular client’s requirements or portfolio objectives, selecting appropriate dealers and marketplaces and monitoring the results on a regular basis. In addition, if an adviser is directly accessing a marketplace, the factors to be considered by dealers may also be applicable.

(4) Where securities listed on a Canadian exchange or quoted on a Canadian quotation and trade reporting system are inter-listed either within Canada or on a foreign exchange or quotation and trade reporting system, in making reasonable efforts to achieve best execution, the dealer should assess whether it is appropriate to consider all marketplaces upon which the security is listed or quoted and where the security is traded, both within and outside of Canada.

(5) In order to meet best execution obligations where securities trade on multiple marketplaces in Canada, a dealer should consider information from all appropriate marketplaces (not just marketplaces where the dealer is a participant). This does not mean that a dealer must have access to real-time data feeds from each marketplace. However, its policies and procedures for seeking best execution should include the process for taking into account order and/or trade information from all appropriate marketplaces and the requirement to evaluate whether taking steps to access orders is appropriate under the circumstances. The steps to access orders may include making arrangements with another dealer who is a participant of a particular marketplace or routing an order to a particular marketplace.

(6) For foreign exchange-traded securities, if they are traded on a marketplace in Canada, dealers should include in their

best execution policies and procedures a regular assessment of whether it is appropriate to consider the marketplace as well as the foreign markets upon which the securities trade.

(7) Section 4.2 of the Instrument applies to registered advisers as well as registered dealers that carry out advisory functions but are exempt from registration as advisers.

(8) Section 4.3 of the Instrument requires that a dealer or adviser make reasonable efforts to use facilities providing information regarding orders and trades. These reasonable efforts refer to the use of the information displayed by the information processor or, if there is no information processor, an information vendor.

PART 5 REGULATORY HALTS

5.1 Regulatory Halts – Section 5.1 of the Instrument applies when a regulatory halt has been imposed by a regulation services provider, a recognized exchange, or a recognized quotation and trade reporting system. A regulatory halt, as referred to in section 5.1 of the Instrument, is one that is imposed to maintain a fair and orderly market, including halts related to a timely disclosure policy, or because there has been a violation of regulatory requirements. In the view of the Canadian securities regulatory authorities, an order may trade on a marketplace despite the fact that trading of the security has been suspended because the issuer of the security has ceased to meet minimum listing or quotation requirements, or has failed to pay to the recognized exchange, the recognized quotation and ~~trading~~trade reporting system or the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system recognized for the purposes of the Instrument and NI 21-101 any fees in respect of the listing or quotation of securities of the issuer. Similarly, an order may trade on a marketplace despite the fact that trading of the security has been delayed or halted because of technical problems affecting only the trading system of the recognized exchange, recognized quotation and ~~trading~~trade reporting system or exchange or quotation and trade reporting system recognized for the purposes of the Instrument and NI 21-101.

PART 6 ORDER PROTECTION

6.1 Marketplace Requirements for Order Protection

(1) Subsection 6.1(1) of the Instrument requires a marketplace to establish, maintain and ensure compliance with written policies and procedures that are reasonably designed to prevent trade-throughs by orders entered on that marketplace. A marketplace may implement this requirement in various ways. For example, the policies and procedures of a marketplace may reasonably prevent trade-throughs via the design of the marketplace's trade execution algorithms (by not allowing a trade-through to occur), or by voluntarily establishing direct linkages to other marketplaces. Marketplaces are not able to avoid their obligations by establishing policies and procedures that instead require marketplace participants to take steps to reasonably prevent trade-throughs.

(2) It is the responsibility of marketplaces to regularly review and monitor the effectiveness of their policies and procedures and take prompt steps to remedy any deficiencies in reasonably preventing trade-throughs and complying with subsection 6.1(2) of the Instrument. In general, it is expected that marketplaces maintain relevant information so that the effectiveness of its policies and procedures can be adequately evaluated by regulatory authorities. Relevant information would include information that describes:

- (a) steps taken by the marketplace to evaluate its policies and procedures;
- (b) any breaches or deficiencies found; and
- (c) the steps taken to resolve the breaches or deficiencies.

(3) As part of the policies and procedures required in subsection 6.1(1) of the Instrument, a marketplace is expected to include a discussion of their automated functionality and how they will handle potential delayed responses as a result of an equipment or systems failure or malfunction experienced by another marketplace. In addition, marketplaces should include a discussion of how they treat a directed-action order when received and how it will be used.

(4) Order protection applies whenever two or more marketplaces with protected orders are open for trading. Some marketplaces provide a trading session at a price established by that marketplace during its regular trading hours for marketplace participants who are required to benchmark to a certain closing price. In these circumstances, under paragraph 6.2(e), a marketplace would not be required to take steps to reasonably prevent trade-throughs of orders on another marketplace.

6.2 Marketplace Participant Requirements for Order Protection

(1) For a marketplace participant that wants to use a directed-action order, section 6.4 of the Instrument requires a marketplace participant to establish, maintain and ensure compliance with written policies and procedures that are reasonably designed to prevent trade-throughs. In general, it is expected that a marketplace participant that uses a directed-action order would maintain relevant information so that the effectiveness of its policies and procedures can be adequately evaluated by regulatory authorities. Relevant information would include information that describes:

- (a) steps taken by the marketplace participant to evaluate its policies and procedures;
- (b) any breaches or deficiencies found; and
- (c) the steps taken to resolve the breaches or deficiencies.

The policies and procedures should also outline when it is appropriate to use a directed-action order and how it will be used as set out in paragraph 6.4(a) of the Instrument.

(2) Order protection applies whenever two or more marketplaces with protected orders are open for trading. Some marketplaces provide a trading session at a price established by that marketplace during its regular trading hours for marketplace participants who are required to benchmark to a certain closing price. In these circumstances, under paragraph 6.4(a)(iv)(C) of the Instrument, a marketplace participant would not be required to take steps to reasonably prevent trade-throughs of orders between marketplaces.

6.3 List of Trade-throughs – Section 6.2 and paragraphs 6.4(a)(i) to (a)(v) of the Instrument set forth a list of “permitted” trade-throughs that are primarily designed to achieve workable order protection and to facilitate certain trading strategies and order types that are useful to investors.

- (a) (i) Paragraphs 6.2(a) and 6.4(a)(i) of the Instrument would apply where a marketplace or marketplace participant, as applicable, has reasonably concluded that a marketplace is experiencing a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems, equipment or ability to disseminate marketplace data. A material delay occurs when a marketplace repeatedly fails to respond immediately after receipt of an order. This is intended to provide marketplaces and marketplace participants with flexibility when dealing with a marketplace that is experiencing systems problems (either of a temporary nature or a longer term systems issue).
- (ii) Under subsection 6.3(1) of the Instrument, a marketplace that is experiencing systems issues is responsible for informing all other marketplaces, its marketplace participants, any information processor, or if there is no information processor, an information vendor disseminating its information under Part 7 of NI 21-101 and regulation services providers when a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems, equipment or ability to disseminate marketplace data occurs. However, if a marketplace fails repeatedly to provide an immediate response to orders received and no notification has been issued by that marketplace that it is experiencing systems issues, the routing marketplace or a marketplace participant may, pursuant to subsections 6.3(2) and 6.3(3) of the Instrument respectively, reasonably conclude that the marketplace is having systems issues and may therefore rely on paragraph 6.2(a) or 6.4(a)(i) of the Instrument respectively. This reliance must be done in accordance with policies and procedures that outline processes for dealing with potential delays in responses by a marketplace and documenting the basis of its conclusion. If, in response to the notification by the routing marketplace or a marketplace participant, the marketplace confirms that it is not actually experiencing systems issues, the routing marketplace or marketplace participant may no longer rely on paragraph 6.2(a) or paragraph 6.4(a)(i) of the Instrument respectively.
- (b) Paragraph 6.2(b) of the Instrument provides an exception from the obligation on marketplaces to use their policies and procedures to reasonably prevent trade-throughs when a directed-action order is received. Specifically, a marketplace that receives a directed-action order may immediately execute or book the order (or its remaining volume) and not implement the marketplace’s policies and procedures to reasonably prevent trade-throughs. However, the marketplace will need to describe its treatment of a directed-action order in its policies and procedures. Paragraphs 6.2(c) and 6.4(a)(iii) of the Instrument provide an exception where a marketplace or marketplace participant simultaneously routes directed-action orders to execute against the total displayed volume of any protected order traded through. This accounts for the possibility that orders that are routed simultaneously as directed-action orders are not executed simultaneously causing one or more trade-throughs to occur because an inferior-priced order is executed first.
- (c) Paragraphs 6.2(d) and 6.4(a)(ii) of the Instrument provide some relief due to moving or changing markets. Specifically, the exception allows for a trade-through to occur when immediately before executing the order that caused the trade-through, the marketplace on which the execution occurred had the best price but at the moment of execution, the market changes and another marketplace has the best price. The “changing markets” exception allows for the

execution of an order on a marketplace, within the best bid or offer on that marketplace but outside the best bid or offer displayed across marketplaces in certain circumstances. This could occur for example:

- (i) where orders are entered on a marketplace but by the time they are executed, the best bid or offer displayed across marketplaces changed; and
 - (ii) where a trade is agreed to off-marketplace and entered on a marketplace within the best bid and best offer across marketplaces, but by the time the order is executed on the marketplace (i.e. printed) the best bid or offer as displayed across marketplaces may have changed, thus causing a trade-through.
- (d) The basis for the inclusion of calculated-price orders, non-standard orders and closing-price orders in paragraphs 6.2(e) and 6.4(a)(iv) of the Instrument is that these orders have certain unique characteristics that distinguish them from other orders. The characteristics of the orders relate to price (calculated-price orders and closing-price orders) and non-standard settlement terms (non-standard orders) that are not set by an exchange or a quotation and trade reporting system.
- (e) Paragraphs 6.2(f) and 6.4(a)(v) of the Instrument include a transaction that occurred when there is a crossed market in the exchange-traded security. Without this allowance, no marketplace could execute transactions in a crossed market because it would constitute a trade-through. With order protection only applying to displayed orders or parts of orders, hidden or reserve orders may remain in the book after all displayed orders are executed. Consequently, crossed markets may occur. Intentionally crossing the market to take advantage of paragraphs 6.2(f) and 6.4(a)(v) of the Instrument would be a violation of section 6.5 of the Instrument.

6.4 Locked and Crossed Markets

- (1) Section 6.5 of the Instrument provides that a marketplace participant or a marketplace that routes or reprices orders shall not intentionally lock or cross a market by entering a protected order to buy a security at a price that is the same as or higher than the best protected offer or entering a protected order to sell a security at a price that is the same as or lower than the best protected bid. This provision is not intended to prohibit the use of marketable limit orders. Paragraphs 6.2(f) and 6.4(a)(v) of the Instrument allow for the resolution of crossed markets that occur unintentionally.

The Canadian securities regulatory authorities consider an order that is routed or repriced to be “entered” on a marketplace. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities do not consider the triggering of a previously-entered on-stop order to be an “entry” or “repricing” of that order.

- (2) Section 6.5 of the Instrument prohibits a marketplace participant or a marketplace that routes or reprices orders from intentionally locking or crossing a market. This would occur, for example, when a marketplace participant enters a locking or crossing order on a particular marketplace or marketplaces to avoid fees charged by a marketplace or to take advantage of rebates offered by a particular marketplace. This could also occur where a marketplace system is programmed to reprice orders without checking to see if the new price would lock the market or where the marketplace routes orders to another marketplace that results in a locked market.

There are situations where a locked or crossed market may occur unintentionally. For example:

- (a) when a marketplace participant routes multiple directed-action orders that are marked immediate-or-cancel to a variety of marketplaces and because of latency issues, a locked or crossed market results,
- (b) the locking or crossing order was displayed at a time when the marketplace displaying the locked or crossed order was experiencing a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems, equipment or ability to disseminate marketplace data,
- (c) the locking or crossing order was displayed at a time when a protected bid was higher than a protected offer;
- (d) the locking or crossing order was posted after all displayed liquidity was executed and a reserve order generated a new visible bid above the displayed offer or offer below the displayed bid.
- (e) the locking or crossing order was entered on a particular marketplace in order to comply with securities legislation requirements such as Rule 904 of Regulation S of the *Securities Act of 1933* that requires securities subject to resale restrictions in the United States to be sold in Canada on a “designated offshore securities market”,
- (f) the locking or crossing order was displayed due to “race conditions” when competing orders are entered on marketplaces at essentially the same time with neither party having knowledge of the other order at the time of entry,

- (g) the locking or crossing order was a result of the differences in processing times and latencies between the systems of the marketplace participant, marketplaces, information processor and information vendors,
 - (h) the locking or crossing order was a result of marketplaces having different mechanisms to “restart” trading following a halt in trading for either regulatory or business purposes, and
 - (i) the locking or crossing order was a result of the execution of an order during the opening or closing allocation process of one market, while trading is simultaneously occurring on a continuous basis on another market,
- (3) If a marketplace participant using a directed-action order chooses to book the order or the remainder of the order, then it is responsible for ensuring that the booked portion of the directed-action order does not lock or cross the market. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities would consider a directed-action order or remainder of directed-action order that is booked and that locks or crosses the market to be an intentional locking or crossing of the market and a violation of section 6.5 of the Instrument.

6.5 Anti-Avoidance Provision – Section 6.7 of the Instrument prohibits a person or company from sending an order to an exchange, quotation and trade reporting system or alternative trading system that does not carry on business in Canada in order to avoid executing against better-priced orders on a marketplace in Canada. The intention of this section is to prevent the routing of orders to foreign marketplaces only for the purpose of avoiding the order protection regime in Canada.

PART 7 MONITORING AND ENFORCEMENT

7.1 Monitoring and Enforcement of Requirements Set By a Recognized Exchange or Recognized Quotation and Trade Reporting System – Under section 7.1 of the Instrument, a recognized exchange will set its own requirements governing the conduct of its members. Under section 7.3 of the Instrument, a recognized quotation and trade reporting system will set its own requirements governing the conduct of its users. The recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system can monitor and enforce these requirements either directly or indirectly through a regulation services provider. A regulation services provider is a person or company that provides regulation services and is either a recognized exchange, recognized quotation and trade reporting system or a recognized self-regulatory entity. Sections 7.2 and 7.4 of the Instrument require the recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system that chooses to have the monitoring and enforcement performed by the regulation services provider to enter into an agreement with the regulation services provider in which the regulation services provider agrees to enforce the requirements of the recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system.

7.2 Monitoring and Enforcement Requirements for an ATS – Section 8.2 of the Instrument requires the regulation services provider to set requirements that govern an ATS and its subscribers. Before executing a trade for a subscriber, the ATS must enter into an agreement with a regulation services provider and an agreement with each subscriber. These agreements form the basis upon which a regulation services provider will monitor the trading activities of the ATS and its subscribers and enforce its requirements. The requirements set by a regulation services provider must include requirements that the ATS and its subscribers will conduct trading activities in compliance with the Instrument. The ATS and its subscribers are considered to be in compliance with the Instrument and are exempt from the application of most of its provisions if the ATS and the subscriber are in compliance with the requirements set by a regulation services provider.

7.3 Monitoring and Enforcement Requirements for an Inter-Dealer Bond Broker – Section 9.1 of the Instrument requires that a regulation services provider set requirements governing the conduct of an inter-dealer bond broker. Under section 9.2 of the Instrument, the inter-dealer bond broker must enter into an agreement with the regulation services provider providing that the regulation services provider monitor the activities of the inter-dealer bond broker and enforce the requirements set by the regulation services provider. However, section 9.3 of the Instrument provides inter-dealer bond brokers with an exemption from sections 9.1 and 9.2 of the Instrument if the inter-dealer bond broker complies with the requirements of IIROC Rule 2800 Code of Conduct for Corporation Dealer Member Firms Trading in Wholesale Domestic Debt Markets, as amended, as if that policy was drafted to apply to the inter-dealer bond broker.

7.4 Monitoring and Enforcement Requirements for a Dealer Executing Trades of Unlisted Debt Securities Outside of a Marketplace – Section 10.1 of the Instrument requires that a regulation services provider set requirements governing the conduct of a dealer executing trades of unlisted debt securities outside of a marketplace. Under section 10.2 of the Instrument, the dealer must also enter into an agreement with the regulation services provider providing that the regulation services provider monitor the activities of the dealer and enforce the requirements set by the regulation services provider.

7.5 Agreement between a Marketplace and a Regulation Services Provider

The purpose of subsections 7.2(c) and 7.4(c) of the Instrument is to facilitate the monitoring of trading by marketplace participants on and across multiple marketplaces by a regulation services provider. These sections of the Instrument also facilitate monitoring of the conduct of a recognized exchange and recognized quotation and trade reporting system for particular

purposes. This may result in regulation services providers monitoring marketplaces that have retained them and reporting to a recognized exchange, recognized quotation and trade reporting system or securities regulatory authority if a marketplace is not meeting regulatory requirements or the terms of its own rules or policies and procedures. While the scope of this monitoring may change as the market evolves, we expect it to include, at a minimum, monitoring clock synchronization, the inclusion of specific designations, symbols and identifiers, order protection requirements and audit trail requirements.

7.6 Coordination of Monitoring and Enforcement

(1) Section 7.5 of the Instrument requires regulation services providers, recognized exchanges and recognized quotation and trade reporting systems to enter into a written agreement whereby they coordinate the enforcement of the requirements set under Parts 7 and 8. This coordination is required in order to achieve cross-marketplace monitoring.

(2) If a recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system has not retained a regulation services provider, it is still required to coordinate with any regulation services provider and other exchanges or quotation and trade reporting systems that trade the same securities in order to ensure effective cross-marketplace monitoring.

(3) Currently, only IIROC is the regulation services provider for both exchange-traded securities, other than options and in Québec, other than standardized derivatives, and unlisted debt securities. If more than one regulation services provider regulates marketplaces trading a particular type of security, these regulation services providers must coordinate monitoring and enforcement of the requirements set.

PART 8 AUDIT TRAIL REQUIREMENTS

8.1 Audit Trail Requirements – Section 11.2 of the Instrument imposes obligations on dealers and inter-dealer bond brokers to record in electronic form and to report certain items of information with respect to orders and trades. Information to be recorded includes any markers required by a regulation services provider (such as a significant shareholder marker). The purpose of the obligations set out in Part 11 is to enable the entity performing the monitoring and surveillance functions to construct an audit trail of order, quotation and transaction data which will enhance its surveillance and examination capabilities.

8.2 Transmission of Information to a Regulation Services Provider – Section 11.3 of the Instrument requires that a dealer and an inter-dealer bond broker provide to the regulation services provider information required by the regulation services provider, within ten business days, in electronic form. This requirement is triggered only when the regulation services provider sets requirements to transmit information.

8.3 Electronic Form – Subsection 11.3 of the Instrument requires any information required to be transmitted to the regulation services provider and securities regulatory authority in electronic form. Dealers and inter-dealer bond brokers are required to provide information in a form that is accessible to the securities regulatory authorities and the regulation services provider (for example, in SELECTR format).

NATIONAL INSTRUMENT 23-101 TRADING RULES

Table of Contents

PART TITLE

PART 1 DEFINITION AND INTERPRETATION

- 1.1 Definition
- 1.2 Interpretation – NI 21-101

PART 2 APPLICATION OF THIS INSTRUMENT

- 2.1 Application of this Instrument

PART 3 MANIPULATION AND FRAUD

- 3.1 Manipulation and Fraud

PART 4 BEST EXECUTION

- 4.1 Application of this Part
- 4.2 Best Execution
- 4.3 Order and Trade Information

PART 5 REGULATORY HALTS

- 5.1 Regulatory Halts

PART 6 ORDER PROTECTION

- 6.1 Marketplace Requirements for Order Protection
- 6.2 List of Trade-throughs
- 6.3 Systems or Equipment Failure, Malfunction or Material Delay
- 6.4 Marketplace Participant Requirements for Order Protection
- 6.5 Locked or Crossed Orders
- 6.6 Trading Hours
- 6.7 Anti-Avoidance
- 6.8 Application of this Part

PART 7 MONITORING AND ENFORCEMENT OF REQUIREMENTS SET BY A RECOGNIZED EXCHANGE AND A RECOGNIZED QUOTATION AND TRADE REPORTING SYSTEM

- 7.1 Requirements for a Recognized Exchange
- 7.2 Agreement between a Recognized Exchange and a Regulation Services Provider
- 7.3 Requirements for a Recognized Quotation and Trade Reporting System
- 7.4 Agreement between a Recognized Quotation and Trade Reporting System and a Regulation Services Provider
- 7.5 Co-ordination of Monitoring and Enforcement

PART 8 MONITORING AND ENFORCEMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR AN ATS

- 8.1 Pre-condition to Trading on an ATS
- 8.2 Requirements Set by a Regulation Services Provider for an ATS
- 8.3 Agreement between an ATS and a Regulation Services Provider
- 8.4 Agreement between an ATS and its Subscriber
- 8.5 [Repealed]

PART 9 MONITORING AND ENFORCEMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR AN INTER-DEALER BOND BROKER

- 9.1 Requirements Set by a Regulation Services Provider for an Inter-Dealer Bond Broker
- 9.2 Agreement between an Inter-Dealer Bond Broker and a Regulation Services Provider
- 9.3 Exemption for an Inter-Dealer Bond Broker

PART 10 MONITORING AND ENFORCEMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR A DEALER EXECUTING TRADES OF UNLISTED DEBT SECURITIES OUTSIDE OF A MARKETPLACE

- 10.1 Requirements Set by a Regulation Services Provider for a Dealer Executing Trades of Unlisted Debt Securities Outside of a Marketplace
- 10.2 Agreement between a Dealer Executing Trades of Unlisted Debt Securities Outside of a Marketplace and a Regulation Services Provider
- 10.3 [Repealed]

PART 11 AUDIT TRAIL REQUIREMENTS

- 11.1 Application of this Part
- 11.2 Audit Trail Requirements for Dealers and Inter-Dealer Bond Brokers
- 11.3 Transmission in Electronic Form

PART 12 EXEMPTION

- 12.1 Exemption

PART 13 EFFECTIVE DATE

- 13.1 Effective Date

NATIONAL INSTRUMENT 23-101 TRADING RULES
PART 1 DEFINITION AND INTERPRETATION**1.1 Definition – In this Instrument**

“automated functionality” means the ability to

- (a) immediately allow an incoming order that has been entered on the marketplace electronically to be marked as immediate-or-cancel;
- (b) immediately and automatically execute an order marked as immediate-or-cancel against the displayed volume;
- (c) immediately and automatically cancel any unexecuted portion of an order marked as immediate-or-cancel without routing the order elsewhere;
- (d) immediately and automatically transmit a response to the sender of an order marked as immediate-or-cancel indicating the action taken with respect to the order; and
- (e) immediately and automatically display information that updates the displayed orders on the marketplace to reflect any change to their material terms;

“best execution” means the most advantageous execution terms reasonably available under the circumstances;

“calculated-price order” means an order for the purchase or sale of an exchange-traded security, other than an option, that is entered on a marketplace and for which the price of the security

- (a) is not known at the time of order entry; and
- (b) is not based, directly or indirectly, on the quoted price of an exchange-traded security at the time the commitment to execute the order was made;

“closing-price order” means an order for the purchase or sale of an exchange-traded security, other than an option, that is

- (a) entered on a marketplace on a trading day; and
- (b) subject to the conditions that
 - (i) the order be executed at the closing sale price of that security on the marketplace for that trading day; and
 - (ii) the order be executed subsequent to the establishment of the closing price;

“directed-action order” means a limit order for the purchase or sale of an exchange-traded security, other than an option, that,

- (a) when entered on or routed to a marketplace is to be immediately
 - (i) executed against a protected order with any remainder to be booked or cancelled; or
 - (ii) placed in an order book;
- (b) is marked as a directed-action order; and
- (c) is entered or routed at the same time as one or more additional limit orders that are entered on or routed to one or more marketplaces, as necessary, to execute against any protected order with a better price than the order referred to in paragraph (a);

“NI 21-101” means National Instrument 21-101 *Marketplace Operation*;

“non-standard order” means an order for the purchase or sale of an exchange-traded security, other than an option, that is entered on a marketplace and is subject to non-standardized terms or conditions related to settlement that have not been set by the marketplace on which the security is listed or quoted; and

“protected bid” means a bid for an exchange-traded security, other than an option,

- (a) that is displayed on a marketplace that provides automated functionality; and
- (b) about which information is required to be provided pursuant to Part 7 of NI 21-101 to an information processor or, if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider;

“protected offer” means an offer for an exchange-traded security, other than an option,

- (a) that is displayed on a marketplace that provides automated functionality; and
- (b) about which information is required to be provided pursuant to Part 7 of NI 21-101 to an information processor or, if there is no information processor, to an information vendor that meets the standards set by a regulation services provider;

“protected order” means a protected bid or protected offer; and

“trade-through” means the execution of an order at a price that is,

- (a) in the case of a purchase, higher than any protected offer, or
- (b) in the case of a sale, lower than any protected bid.

1.2 Interpretation – NI 21-101 – Terms defined or interpreted in NI 21-101 and used in this Instrument have the respective meanings ascribed to them in NI 21-101.

PART 2 APPLICATION OF THIS INSTRUMENT

2.1 Application of this Instrument – A person or company is exempt from subsection 3.1(1) and Parts 4 and 5 if the person or company complies with similar requirements established by

- (a) a recognized exchange that monitors and enforces the requirements set under subsection 7.1(1) directly;
- (b) a recognized quotation and trade reporting system that monitors and enforces requirements set under subsection 7.3(1) directly; or
- (c) a regulation services provider.

PART 3 MANIPULATION AND FRAUD

3.1 Manipulation and Fraud

(1) A person or company shall not, directly or indirectly, engage in, or participate in any transaction or series of transactions, or method of trading relating to a trade in or acquisition of a security or any act, practice or course of conduct, if the person or company knows, or ought reasonably to know, that the transaction or series of transactions, or method of trading or act, practice or course of conduct

- (a) results in or contributes to a misleading appearance of trading activity in, or an artificial price for, a security or a derivative of that security; or
- (b) perpetrates a fraud on any person or company.

(2) In Alberta, British Columbia, Ontario, Québec and Saskatchewan, instead of subsection (1), the provisions of the *Securities Act* (Alberta), the *Securities Act* (British Columbia), the *Securities Act* (Ontario), the *Securities Act* and the *Derivatives Act* (Québec) and *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan), respectively, relating to manipulation and fraud apply.

PART 4 BEST EXECUTION

4.1 Application of this Part – This Part does not apply to a dealer that is carrying on business as an ATS in compliance with section 6.1 of NI 21-101.

4.2 Best Execution – A dealer and an adviser must make reasonable efforts to achieve best execution when acting for a client.

4.3 Order and Trade Information – To satisfy the requirements in section 4.2, a dealer or adviser shall make reasonable efforts to use facilities providing information regarding orders and trades.

PART 5 REGULATORY HALTS

5.1 Regulatory Halts – If a regulation services provider, a recognized exchange, recognized quotation and trade reporting system or an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system that has been recognized for the purposes of this Instrument and NI 21-101 makes a decision to prohibit trading in a particular security for a regulatory purpose, no person or company shall execute a trade for the purchase or sale of that security during the period in which the prohibition is in place.

PART 6 ORDER PROTECTION

6.1 Marketplace Requirements for Order Protection – (1) A marketplace shall establish, maintain and ensure compliance with written policies and procedures that are reasonably designed

- (a) to prevent trade-throughs on that marketplace other than the trade-throughs referred to in section 6.2; and
 - (b) to ensure that the marketplace, when executing a transaction that results in a trade-through referred to in section 6.2, is doing so in compliance with this Part.
- (2) A marketplace shall regularly review and monitor the effectiveness of the policies and procedures required under subsection (1) and shall promptly remedy any deficiencies in those policies and procedures.
- (3) At least 45 days before implementation, a marketplace shall file with the securities regulatory authority and, if applicable, its regulation services provider the policies and procedures, and any significant changes to those policies and procedures established under subsection (1).

6.2 List of Trade-throughs – For the purposes of paragraph 6.1(1)(a) the permitted trade-throughs are:

- (a) a trade-through that occurs when the marketplace has reasonably concluded that the marketplace displaying the protected order that was traded through was experiencing a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems or equipment or ability to disseminate marketplace data;
- (b) the execution of a directed-action order;
- (c) a trade-through by a marketplace that simultaneously routes a directed-action order to execute against the total displayed volume of any protected order that is traded through;
- (d) a trade-through if, immediately before the trade-through, the marketplace displaying the protected order that is traded through displays as its best price a protected order with a price that is equal or inferior to the price of the trade-through;
- (e) a trade-through that results when executing
 - (i) a non-standard order;
 - (ii) a calculated-price order; or
 - (iii) a closing-price order;
- (f) a trade-through that was executed at a time when the best protected bid for the security traded through was higher than the best protected offer.

6.3 Systems or Equipment Failure, Malfunction or Material Delay – (1) If a marketplace experiences a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems, equipment or its ability to disseminate marketplace data, the marketplace shall immediately notify

- (a) all other marketplaces;
- (b) all regulation services providers;

- (c) its marketplace participants; and
 - (d) any information processor or, if there is no information processor, any information vendor that disseminates its data under Part 7 of NI 21-101.
- (2) If executing a transaction described in paragraph 6.2(a), and a notification has not been sent under subsection (1), a marketplace that routes an order to another marketplace shall immediately notify
- (a) the marketplace that it reasonably concluded is experiencing a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems or equipment or its ability to disseminate marketplace data;
 - (b) all regulation services providers;
 - (c) its marketplace participants; and
 - (d) any information processor disseminating information under Part 7 of NI 21-101.
- (3) If a marketplace participant reasonably concludes that a marketplace is experiencing a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems or equipment or its ability to disseminate marketplace data, and routes an order to execute against a protected order on another marketplace displaying an inferior price, the marketplace participant must notify the following of the failure, malfunction or material delay
- (a) the marketplace that may be experiencing a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems or equipment or its ability to disseminate marketplace data; and
 - (b) all regulation services providers.

6.4 Marketplace Participant Requirements for Order Protection – (1) A marketplace participant must not enter a directed-action order unless the marketplace participant has established, and maintains and ensures compliance with, written policies and procedures that are reasonably designed

- (a) to prevent trade-throughs other than the trade-throughs listed below:
 - (i) a trade-through that occurs when the marketplace participant has reasonably concluded that the marketplace displaying the protected order that was traded through was experiencing a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems or equipment or ability to disseminate marketplace data;
 - (ii) a trade-through by a marketplace participant that simultaneously routes a directed-action order to execute against the total displayed volume of any protected order that is traded through;
 - (iii) a trade-through if, immediately before the trade-through, the marketplace displaying the protected order that is traded through displays as its best price a protected order with a price that is equal or inferior to the price of the trade-through transaction;
 - (iv) a trade-through that results when executing
 - (A) a non-standard order;
 - (B) a calculated-price order; or
 - (C) a closing-price order;
 - (v) a trade-through that was executed at a time when the best protected bid for the security traded through was higher than the best protected offer; and
 - (b) to ensure that when executing a trade-through listed in paragraphs (a)(i) to (a)(v), it is doing so in compliance with this Part.
- (2) A marketplace participant that enters a directed-action order shall regularly review and monitor the effectiveness of the policies and procedures required under subsection (1) and shall promptly remedy any deficiencies in those policies and procedures.

6.5 Locked or Crossed Orders – A marketplace participant or a marketplace that routes or reprices orders shall not intentionally

- (a) enter on a marketplace a protected order to buy a security at a price that is the same as or higher than the best protected offer; or
- (b) enter on a marketplace a protected order to sell a security at a price that is the same as or lower than the best protected bid.

6.6 Trading Hours – A marketplace shall set the hours of trading to be observed by marketplace participants.

6.7 Anti-Avoidance – No person or company shall send an order to an exchange, quotation and trade reporting system or alternative trading system that does not carry on business in Canada in order to avoid executing against better-priced orders on a marketplace.

6.8 Application of this Part – In Québec, this Part does not apply to standardized derivatives.

PART 7 MONITORING AND ENFORCEMENT OF REQUIREMENTS SET BY A RECOGNIZED EXCHANGE AND A RECOGNIZED QUOTATION AND TRADE REPORTING SYSTEM

7.1 Requirements for a Recognized Exchange

(1) A recognized exchange shall set requirements governing the conduct of its members, including requirements that the members will conduct trading activities in compliance with this Instrument.

(2) A recognized exchange shall monitor the conduct of its members and enforce the requirements set under subsection (1), either

- (a) directly, or
- (b) indirectly through a regulation services provider.

7.2 Agreement between a Recognized Exchange and a Regulation Services Provider – A recognized exchange that monitors the conduct of its members indirectly through a regulation services provider shall enter into a written agreement with the regulation services provider that provides

- (a) that the regulation services provider will monitor the conduct of the members of a recognized exchange;
- (b) that the regulation services provider will enforce the requirements set under subsection 7.1(1);
- (c) that the recognized exchange will transmit to the regulation services provider the information required by Part 11 of NI 21-101 and any other information reasonably required to effectively monitor:
 - (i) the conduct of and trading by marketplace participants on and across marketplaces, and
 - (ii) the conduct of the recognized exchange, as applicable; and
- (d) that the recognized exchange will comply with all orders or directions made by the regulation services provider.

7.3 Requirements for a Recognized Quotation and Trade Reporting System

(1) A recognized quotation and trade reporting system shall set requirements governing the conduct of its users, including requirements that the users will conduct trading activities in compliance with this Instrument.

(2) A recognized quotation and trade reporting system shall monitor the conduct of its users and enforce the requirements set under subsection (1) either

- (a) directly; or
- (b) indirectly through a regulation services provider.

7.4 Agreement between a Recognized Quotation and Trade Reporting System and a Regulation Services Provider – A recognized quotation and trade reporting system that monitors the conduct of its users indirectly through a regulation

services provider shall enter into a written agreement with the regulation services provider that provides

- (a) that the regulation services provider will monitor the conduct of the users of a recognized quotation and trade reporting system;
- (b) that the regulation services provider will enforce the requirements set under subsection 7.3(1);
- (c) that the recognized quotation and trade reporting system will transmit to the regulation services provider the information required by Part 11 of NI 21-101 and any other information reasonably required to effectively monitor:
 - (i) the conduct of and trading by marketplace participants on and across marketplaces, and
 - (ii) the conduct of the recognized quotation and trade reporting system, as applicable; and
- (d) that the recognized quotation and trade reporting system will comply with all orders or directions made by the regulation services provider.

7.5 Co-ordination of Monitoring and Enforcement – A regulation services provider, recognized exchange, or recognized quotation and trade reporting system shall enter into a written agreement with all other regulation services providers, recognized exchanges, and recognized quotation and trade reporting systems to coordinate monitoring and enforcement of the requirements set under Parts 7 and 8.

PART 8 MONITORING AND ENFORCEMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR AN ATS

8.1 Pre-condition to Trading on an ATS – An ATS shall not execute a subscriber's order to buy or sell securities unless the ATS has executed and is subject to the written agreements required by sections 8.3 and 8.4.

8.2 Requirements Set by a Regulation Services Provider for an ATS

- (1) A regulation services provider shall set requirements governing an ATS and its subscribers, including requirements that the ATS and its subscribers will conduct trading activities in compliance with this Instrument.
- (2) A regulation services provider shall monitor the conduct of an ATS and its subscribers and shall enforce the requirements set under subsection (1).

8.3 Agreement between an ATS and a Regulation Services Provider – An ATS and a regulation services provider shall enter into a written agreement that provides

- (a) that the ATS will conduct its trading activities in compliance with the requirements set under subsection 8.2(1);
- (b) that the regulation services provider will monitor the conduct of the ATS and its subscribers;
- (c) that the regulation services provider will enforce the requirements set under subsection 8.2(1);
- (d) that the ATS will transmit to the regulation services provider the information required by Part 11 of NI 21-101 and any other information reasonably required to effectively monitor:
 - (i) the conduct of and trading by marketplace participants on and across marketplaces, and
 - (ii) the conduct of the ATS; and
- (e) that the ATS will comply with all orders or directions made by the regulation services provider.

8.4 Agreement between an ATS and its Subscriber – An ATS and its subscriber shall enter into a written agreement that provides

- (a) that the subscriber will conduct its trading activities in compliance with the requirements set under subsection 8.2(1);
- (b) that the subscriber acknowledges that the regulation services provider will monitor the conduct of the subscriber and enforce the requirements set under subsection 8.2(1);
- (c) that the subscriber will comply with all orders or directions made by the regulation services provider in its capacity as a regulation services provider, including orders excluding the subscriber from trading on any marketplace.

8.5 [Repealed]**PART 9 MONITORING AND ENFORCEMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR AN INTER-DEALER BOND BROKER****9.1 Requirements Set by a Regulation Services Provider for an Inter-Dealer Bond Broker**

- (1) A regulation services provider shall set requirements governing an inter-dealer bond broker, including requirements that the inter-dealer bond broker will conduct trading activities in compliance with this Instrument.
- (2) A regulation services provider shall monitor the conduct of an inter-dealer bond broker and shall enforce the requirements set under subsection (1).

9.2 Agreement between an Inter-Dealer Bond Broker and a Regulation Services Provider – An inter-dealer bond broker and a regulation services provider shall enter into a written agreement that provides

- (a) that the inter-dealer bond broker will conduct its trading activities in compliance with the requirements set under subsection 9.1(1);
- (b) that the regulation services provider will monitor the conduct of the inter-dealer bond broker;
- (c) that the regulation services provider will enforce the requirements set under subsection 9.1(1); and
- (d) that the inter-dealer bond broker will comply with all orders or directions made by the regulation services provider.

9.3 Exemption for an Inter-Dealer Bond Broker

- (1) Sections 9.1 and 9.2 do not apply to an inter-dealer bond broker, if the inter-dealer bond broker complies with the requirements of IIROC Rule 2800 Code of Conduct for Corporation Dealer Member Firms Trading in Wholesale Domestic Debt Markets, as amended.

(2) [Repealed]**PART 10 MONITORING AND ENFORCEMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR A DEALER EXECUTING TRADES OF UNLISTED DEBT SECURITIES OUTSIDE OF A MARKETPLACE****10.1 Requirements Set by a Regulation Services Provider for a Dealer Executing Trades of Unlisted Debt Securities Outside of a Marketplace**

- (1) A regulation services provider shall set requirements governing a dealer executing trades of unlisted debt securities outside of a marketplace, including requirements that the dealer will conduct trading activities in compliance with this Instrument.
- (2) A regulation services provider shall monitor the conduct of a dealer executing trades of unlisted debt securities outside of a marketplace and shall enforce the requirements set under subsection (1).

10.2 Agreement between a Dealer Executing Trades of Unlisted Debt Securities Outside of a Marketplace and a Regulation Services Provider – A dealer executing trades of unlisted debt securities outside of a marketplace shall enter into an agreement with a regulation services provider that provides

- (a) that the dealer will conduct its trading activities in compliance with the requirements set under subsection 10.1(1);
- (b) that the regulation services provider will monitor the conduct of the dealer;
- (c) that the regulation services provider will enforce the requirements set under subsection 10.1(1); and
- (d) that the dealer will comply with all orders or directions made by the regulation services provider.

10.3 [Repealed]

PART 11 AUDIT TRAIL REQUIREMENTS**11.1 Application of this Part**

- (1) This Part does not apply to a dealer that is carrying on business as an ATS in compliance with section 6.1 of NI 21-101.
- (2) A dealer or inter-dealer bond broker is exempt from the requirements in section 11.2 if the dealer or inter-dealer bond broker complies with similar requirements, for any securities specified, established by a regulation services provider and approved by the applicable securities regulatory authority.

11.2 Audit Trail Requirements for Dealers and Inter-Dealer Bond Brokers

- (1) **Recording Requirements for Receipt or Origination of an Order** – Immediately following the receipt or origination of an order for equity, fixed income and other securities identified by a regulation services provider, a dealer and inter-dealer bond broker shall record in electronic form specific information relating to that order including,
- (a) the order identifier;
 - (b) the dealer or inter-dealer bond broker identifier;
 - (c) the type, issuer, class, series and symbol of the security;
 - (d) the face amount or unit price of the order, if applicable;
 - (e) the number of securities to which the order applies;
 - (f) the strike date and strike price, if applicable;
 - (g) whether the order is a buy or sell order;
 - (h) whether the order is a short sale order, if applicable;
 - (i) whether the order is a market order, limit order or other type of order, and if the order is not a market order, the price at which the order is to trade;
 - (j) the date and time the order is first originated or received by the dealer or inter-dealer bond broker;
 - (k) whether the account is a retail, wholesale, employee, proprietary or any other type of account;
 - (l) the client account number or client identifier;
 - (m) the date and time that the order expires;
 - (n) whether the order is an intentional cross;
 - (o) whether the order is a jitney and if so, the underlying broker identifier;
 - (p) any client instructions or consents respecting the handling or trading of the order, if applicable;
 - (q) the currency of the order;
 - (r) an insider marker;
 - (s) any other markers required by a regulation services provider;
 - (t) each unique client identifier assigned to a client accessing the marketplace using direct electronic access; and
 - (u) whether the order is a directed-action order.
- (2) **Recording Requirements for Transmission of an Order** – Immediately following the transmission of an order for securities to a dealer, inter-dealer bond broker or a marketplace, a dealer or inter-dealer bond broker transmitting the order shall add to the record of the order maintained in accordance with this section specific information relating to that order including,

- (a) the dealer or inter-dealer bond broker identifier assigned to the dealer or inter-dealer bond broker transmitting the order and the identifier assigned to the dealer, inter-dealer bond broker or marketplace to which the order is transmitted; and
- (b) the date and time the order is transmitted.
- (3) **Recording Requirements for Variation, Correction or Cancellation of an Order** – Immediately following the variation, correction or cancellation of an order for securities, a dealer or inter-dealer bond broker shall add to the record of the order maintained in accordance with this section specific information relating to that order including,
 - (a) the date and time the variation, correction or cancellation was originated or received;
 - (b) whether the order was varied, corrected or cancelled on the instructions of the client, the dealer or the inter-dealer bond broker;
 - (c) in the case of variation or correction, any of the information required by subsection (1) which has been changed; and
 - (d) the date and time the variation, correction or cancellation of the order is entered.
- (4) **Recording Requirements for Execution of an Order** – Immediately following the execution of an order for securities, the dealer or inter-dealer bond broker shall add to the record maintained in accordance with this section specific information relating to that order including,
 - (a) the identifier of the marketplace where the order was executed or the identifier of the dealer or inter-dealer bond broker executing the order if the order was not executed on a marketplace;
 - (b) the date and time of the execution of the order;
 - (c) whether the order was fully or partially executed;
 - (d) the number of securities bought or sold;
 - (e) whether the transaction was a cross;
 - (f) whether the dealer has executed the order as principal;
 - (g) the commission charged and all other transaction fees; and
 - (h) the price at which the order was executed, including mark-up or mark-down.
- (5) **[Repealed]**
- (6) **[Repealed]**
- (7) **Record Preservation Requirements** – A dealer and an inter-dealer bond broker shall keep all records in electronic form for a period of not less than seven years from the creation of the record referred to in this section, and for the first two years in a readily accessible location.

11.3 Transmission in Electronic Form – A dealer and inter-dealer bond broker shall transmit

- (a) to a regulation services provider the information required by the regulation services provider, within ten business days, in electronic form; and
- (b) to the securities regulatory authority the information required by the securities regulatory authority under securities legislation, within ten business days, in electronic form.

PART 12 EXEMPTION

12.1 Exemption

- (1) The regulator or the securities regulatory authority may grant an exemption from this Instrument, in whole or in part, subject to such conditions or restrictions as may be imposed in the exemption.
- (2) Despite subsection (1), in Ontario, only the regulator may grant such an exemption.

PART 13 EFFECTIVE DATE

13.1 Effective Date – This Instrument comes into force on December 1, 2001.

**COMPANION POLICY 23-101 CP
TO NATIONAL INSTRUMENT 23-101 TRADING RULES**

Table of Contents

<u>PART</u>	<u>TITLE</u>
PART 1	INTRODUCTION
1.1	Introduction
1.2	Just and Equitable Principles of Trade
PART 1.1	DEFINITIONS
1.1.1	Definition of best execution
1.1.2	Definition of automated functionality
1.1.3	Definition of protected order
1.1.4	Definition of calculated-price order
1.1.5	Definition of directed-action order
1.1.6	Definition of non-standard order
PART 2	APPLICATION OF THE INSTRUMENT
2.1	Application of the Instrument
PART 3	MANIPULATION AND FRAUD
3.1	Manipulation and Fraud
PART 4	BEST EXECUTION
4.1	Best Execution
PART 5	REGULATORY HALTS
5.1	Regulatory Halts
PART 6	ORDER PROTECTION
6.1	Marketplace Requirements for Order Protection
6.2	Marketplace Participant Requirements for Order Protection
6.3	List of Trade-throughs
6.4	Locked and Crossed Markets
6.5	Anti-Avoidance Provision
PART 7	MONITORING AND ENFORCEMENT
7.1	Monitoring and Enforcement Requirements Set By a Recognized Exchange or Recognized Quotation and Trade Reporting System
7.2	Monitoring and Enforcement Requirements for an ATS
7.3	Monitoring and Enforcement Requirements for an Inter-Dealer Bond Broker
7.4	Monitoring and Enforcement Requirements for a Dealer Executing Trades of Unlisted Debt Securities Outside of a Marketplace
7.5	Agreement between a Marketplace and a Regulation Services Provider
7.6	Coordination of Monitoring and Enforcement
PART 8	AUDIT TRAIL REQUIREMENTS
8.1	Audit Trail Requirements
8.2	Transmission of Information to a Regulation Services Provider
8.3	Electronic Form

**COMPANION POLICY 23-101 CP
TO NATIONAL INSTRUMENT 23-101 TRADING RULES**

PART 1 INTRODUCTION

1.1 Introduction – The purpose of this Companion Policy is to state the views of the Canadian securities regulatory authorities on various matters related to National Instrument 23-101 *Trading Rules* (the "Instrument"), including

- (a) a discussion of the general approach taken by the Canadian securities regulatory authorities in, and the general regulatory purpose for, the Instrument; and
- (b) the interpretation of various terms and provisions in the Instrument.

1.2 Just and Equitable Principles of Trade – While the Instrument deals with specific trading practices, as a general matter, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities expect marketplace participants to transact business openly and fairly, and in accordance with just and equitable principles of trade.

PART 1.1 DEFINITIONS

1.1.1 Definition of best execution – (1) In the Instrument, best execution is defined as the "most advantageous execution terms reasonably available under the circumstances". In seeking best execution, a dealer or adviser may consider a number of elements, including:

- a. price;
- b. speed of execution;
- c. certainty of execution; and
- d. the overall cost of the transaction.

These four broad elements encompass more specific considerations, such as order size, reliability of quotes, liquidity, market impact (i.e. the price movement that occurs when executing an order) and opportunity cost (i.e. the missed opportunity to obtain a better price when an order is not completed at the most advantageous time). The overall cost of the transaction is meant to include, where appropriate, all costs associated with accessing an order and/or executing a trade that are passed on to a client, including fees arising from trading on a particular marketplace, jitney fees (i.e. any fees charged by one dealer to another for providing trading access) and settlement costs. The commission fees charged by a dealer would also be a cost of the transaction.

(2) The elements to be considered in determining "the most advantageous execution terms reasonably available" (i.e. best execution) and the weight given to each will vary depending on the instructions and needs of the client, the particular security, the prevailing market conditions and whether the dealer or adviser is responsible for best execution under the circumstances. Please see a detailed discussion below in Part 4.

1.1.2 Definition of automated functionality – Section 1.1 of the Instrument includes a definition of "automated functionality" which is the ability to:

- (1) act on an incoming order;
- (2) respond to the sender of an order; and
- (3) update the order by disseminating information to an information processor or information vendor.

Automated functionality allows for an incoming order to execute immediately and automatically up to the displayed size and for any unexecuted portion of such incoming order to be cancelled immediately and automatically without being booked or routed elsewhere. Automated functionality involves no human discretion in determining the action taken with respect to an order after the time the order is received. A marketplace with this functionality should have appropriate systems and policies and procedures relating to the handling of immediate-or-cancel orders.

1.1.3 Definition of calculated-price order – The definition of "**calculated-price order**" refers to any order where the price is not known at the time of order entry and is not based, directly or indirectly, on the quoted price of an exchange-traded security at the time the commitment to executing the order was made. This includes the following orders:

- (a) a call market order – where the price of a trade is calculated by the trading system of a marketplace at a time designated by the marketplace;
- (b) an opening order – where each marketplace may establish its own formula for the determination of opening prices;
- (c) a closing order – where execution occurs at the closing price on a particular marketplace, but at the time of order entry, the price is not known;
- (d) a volume-weighted average price order – where the price of a trade is determined by a formula that measures average price on one or more marketplaces; and
- (e) a basis order – where the price is based on prices achieved in one or more derivative transactions on a marketplace. To qualify as a basis order, this order must be approved by a regulation services provider or an exchange or quotation and trade reporting system that oversees the conduct of its members or users respectively.

1.1.4 Definition of directed-action order – (1) An order marked as a directed-action order informs the receiving marketplace that the marketplace can act immediately to carry out the action specified by either the marketplace or marketplace participant who has sent the order and that the order protection obligation is being met by the sender. Such an order may be marked “DAO” by a marketplace or a marketplace participant. Senders can specify actions by adding markers that instruct a marketplace to:

- (a) execute the order and cancel the remainder using an immediate-or-cancel marker,
- (b) execute the order and book the remainder,
- (c) book the order as a passive order awaiting execution, and
- (d) avoid interaction with hidden liquidity using a bypass marker, as defined in IROC’s Universal Market Integrity Rules.

The definition allows for the simultaneous routing of more than one directed-action order in order to execute against any better-priced protected orders. In addition, marketplaces or marketplace participants may send a single directed-action order to execute against the best protected bid or best protected offer. When it receives a directed-action order, a marketplace can carry out the sender’s instructions without checking for better-priced orders displayed by the other marketplaces and implementing the marketplace’s own policies and procedures to reasonably prevent trade-throughs.

(2) Regardless of whether the entry of a directed-action order is accompanied by the bypass marker, the sender must take out all better-priced visible orders before executing at an inferior price. For example, if a marketplace or marketplace participant combines a directed-action order with a bypass marker to avoid executing against hidden liquidity, the order has order protection obligations regarding the visible liquidity. If a directed-action order interacts with hidden liquidity, the requirement to take out all better-priced visible orders before executing at an inferior price remains.

1.1.5 Definition of non-standard order – The definition of “non-standard order” refers to an order for the purchase or sale of a security that is subject to terms or conditions relating to settlement that have not been set by the marketplace on which the security is listed or quoted. A marketplace participant, however, may not add a special settlement term or condition to an order solely for the purpose that the order becomes a non-standard order under the definition.

1.1.6 Definition of protected order – (1) A protected order is defined to be a “protected bid or protected offer”. A “protected bid” or “protected offer” is an order to buy or sell an exchange-traded security, other than an option, that is displayed on a marketplace that provides automated functionality and about which information is provided to an information processor or an information vendor, as applicable, pursuant to Part 7 of NI 21-101. The term “**displayed on a marketplace**” refers to the information about total disclosed volume on a marketplace. Volumes that are not disclosed or that are “reserve” or hidden volumes are not considered to be “displayed on a marketplace”. The order must be provided in a way that enables other marketplaces and marketplace participants to readily access the information and integrate it into their systems or order routers.

(2) Subsection 5.1(3) of 21-101CP does not consider orders that are not immediately executable or that have special terms as “orders” that are required to be provided to an information processor or information vendor under Part 7 of NI 21-101. As a result, these orders are not considered to be “protected orders” under the definition in the Instrument and do not receive order protection. However, those executing against these types of orders are required to execute against all better-priced orders first. In addition, when entering a “special terms order” on a marketplace, if it can be executed against existing orders despite the special term, then the order protection obligation applies.

PART 2 APPLICATION OF THE INSTRUMENT

2.1 Application of the Instrument – Section 2.1 of the Instrument provides an exemption from subsection 3.1(1) and Parts 4 and 5 of the Instrument if a person or company complies with similar requirements established by a recognized exchange that monitors and enforces the requirements set under subsection 7.1(1) of the Instrument directly, a recognized quotation and trade reporting system that monitors and enforces requirements set under subsection 7.3(1) of the Instrument directly or a regulation services provider. The requirements are filed by the recognized exchange, recognized quotation and trade reporting system or regulation services provider and approved by a securities regulatory authority. If a person or company is not in compliance with the requirements of the recognized exchange, recognized quotation and trade reporting system or the regulation services provider, then the exemption does not apply and that person or company is subject to subsection 3.1(1) and Parts 4 and 5 of the Instrument. The exemption from subsection 3.1(1) does not apply in Alberta, British Columbia, Ontario, Québec and Saskatchewan and the relevant provisions of securities legislation apply.

PART 3 MANIPULATION AND FRAUD

3.1 Manipulation and Fraud

(1) Subsection 3.1(1) of the Instrument prohibits the practices of manipulation and deceptive trading, as these may create misleading price and trade activity, which are detrimental to investors and the integrity of the market.

(2) Subsection 3.1(2) of the Instrument provides that despite subsection 3.1(1) of the Instrument, the provisions of the *Securities Act* (Alberta), the *Securities Act* (British Columbia), the *Securities Act* (Ontario), the *Securities Act* (Québec) and *The Securities Act, 1988* (Saskatchewan), respectively, relating to manipulation and fraud apply in Alberta, British Columbia, Ontario, Québec and Saskatchewan. The jurisdictions listed have provisions in their legislation that deal with manipulation and fraud.

(3) For the purposes of subsection 3.1(1) of the Instrument, and without limiting the generality of those provisions, the Canadian securities regulatory authorities, depending on the circumstances, would normally consider the following to result in, contribute to or create a misleading appearance of trading activity in, or an artificial price for, a security:

- (a) Executing transactions in a security if the transactions do not involve a change in beneficial or economic ownership. This includes activities such as wash-trading.
- (b) Effecting transactions that have the effect of artificially raising, lowering or maintaining the price of the security. For example, making purchases of or offers to purchase securities at successively higher prices or making sales of or offers to sell a security at successively lower prices or entering an order or orders for the purchase or sale of a security to:
 - (i) establish a predetermined price or quotation,
 - (ii) effect a high or low closing price or closing quotation, or
 - (iii) maintain the trading price, ask price or bid price within a predetermined range.
- (c) Entering orders that could reasonably be expected to create an artificial appearance of investor participation in the market. For example, entering an order for the purchase or sale of a security with the knowledge that an order of substantially the same size, at substantially the same time, at substantially the same price for the sale or purchase, respectively, of that security has been or will be entered by or for the same or different persons.
- (d) Executing prearranged transactions that have the effect of creating a misleading appearance of active public trading or that have the effect of improperly excluding other marketplace participants from the transaction.
- (e) Effecting transactions if the purpose of the transactions is to defer payment for the securities traded.
- (f) Entering orders to purchase or sell securities without the ability and the intention to
 - (i) make the payment necessary to properly settle the transaction, in the case of a purchase; or
 - (ii) deliver the securities necessary to properly settle the transaction, in the case of a sale.

This includes activities known as free-riding, kiting or debit kiting, in which a person or company avoids having to make payment or deliver securities to settle a trade.

- (g) Engaging in any transaction, practice or scheme that unduly interferes with the normal forces of demand for or supply of a security or that artificially restricts or reduces the public float of a security in a way that could reasonably be expected to result in an artificial price for the security.
- (h) Engaging in manipulative trading activity designed to increase the value of a derivative position.
- (i) Entering a series of orders for a security that are not intended to be executed.
- (4) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities do not consider market stabilization activities carried out in connection with a distribution to be activities in breach of subsection 3.1(1) of the Instrument, if the market stabilization activities are carried out in compliance with the rules of the marketplace on which the securities trade or with provisions of securities legislation that permit market stabilization by a person or company in connection with a distribution.
- (5) Section 3.1 of the Instrument applies to transactions both on and off a marketplace. In determining whether a transaction results in, contributes to or creates a misleading appearance of trading activity in, or an artificial price for a security, it may be relevant whether the transaction takes place on or off a marketplace. For example, a transfer of securities to a holding company for *bona fide* purposes that takes place off a marketplace would not normally violate section 3.1 even though it is a transfer with no change in beneficial ownership.
- (6) The Canadian securities regulatory authorities are of the view that section 3.1 of the Instrument does not create a private right of action.
- (7) In the view of the Canadian securities regulatory authorities, section 3.1 includes attempting to create a misleading appearance of trading activity in or an artificial price for, a security or attempting to perpetrate a fraud.

PART 4 BEST EXECUTION

4.1 Best Execution

- (1) The best execution obligation in Part 4 of the Instrument does not apply to an ATS that is registered as a dealer provided that it is carrying on business as a marketplace and is not handling any client orders other than accepting them to allow them to execute on the system. However, the best execution obligation does otherwise apply to an ATS acting as an agent for a client.
- (2) Section 4.2 of the Instrument requires a dealer or adviser to make reasonable efforts to achieve best execution (the most advantageous execution terms reasonably available under the circumstances) when acting for a client. The obligation applies to all securities.
- (3) Although what constitutes “best execution” varies depending on the particular circumstances, to meet the “reasonable efforts” test, a dealer or adviser should be able to demonstrate that it has, and has abided by, its policies and procedures that (i) require it to follow the client’s instructions and the objectives set, and (ii) outline a process designed to achieve best execution. The policies and procedures should describe how the dealer or adviser evaluates whether best execution was obtained and should be regularly and rigorously reviewed. The policies outlining the obligations of the dealer or adviser will be dependent on the role it is playing in an execution. For example, in making reasonable efforts to achieve best execution, the dealer should consider the client’s instructions and a number of factors, including the client’s investment objectives and the dealer’s knowledge of markets and trading patterns. An adviser should consider a number of factors, including assessing a particular client’s requirements or portfolio objectives, selecting appropriate dealers and marketplaces and monitoring the results on a regular basis. In addition, if an adviser is directly accessing a marketplace, the factors to be considered by dealers may also be applicable.
- (4) Where securities listed on a Canadian exchange or quoted on a Canadian quotation and trade reporting system are inter-listed either within Canada or on a foreign exchange or quotation and trade reporting system, in making reasonable efforts to achieve best execution, the dealer should assess whether it is appropriate to consider all marketplaces upon which the security is listed or quoted and where the security is traded, both within and outside of Canada.
- (5) In order to meet best execution obligations where securities trade on multiple marketplaces in Canada, a dealer should consider information from all appropriate marketplaces (not just marketplaces where the dealer is a participant). This does not mean that a dealer must have access to real-time data feeds from each marketplace. However, its policies and procedures for seeking best execution should include the process for taking into account order and/or trade information from all appropriate marketplaces and the requirement to evaluate whether taking steps to access orders is appropriate under the circumstances. The steps to access orders may include making arrangements with another dealer who is a participant of a particular marketplace or routing an order to a particular marketplace.

(6) For foreign exchange-traded securities, if they are traded on a marketplace in Canada, dealers should include in their best execution policies and procedures a regular assessment of whether it is appropriate to consider the marketplace as well as the foreign markets upon which the securities trade.

(7) Section 4.2 of the Instrument applies to registered advisers as well as registered dealers that carry out advisory functions but are exempt from registration as advisers.

(8) Section 4.3 of the Instrument requires that a dealer or adviser make reasonable efforts to use facilities providing information regarding orders and trades. These reasonable efforts refer to the use of the information displayed by the information processor or, if there is no information processor, an information vendor.

PART 5 REGULATORY HALTS

5.1 Regulatory Halts – Section 5.1 of the Instrument applies when a regulatory halt has been imposed by a regulation services provider, a recognized exchange, or a recognized quotation and trade reporting system. A regulatory halt, as referred to in section 5.1 of the Instrument, is one that is imposed to maintain a fair and orderly market, including halts related to a timely disclosure policy, or because there has been a violation of regulatory requirements. In the view of the Canadian securities regulatory authorities, an order may trade on a marketplace despite the fact that trading of the security has been suspended because the issuer of the security has ceased to meet minimum listing or quotation requirements, or has failed to pay to the recognized exchange, the recognized quotation and trade reporting system or the exchange or quotation and trade reporting system recognized for the purposes of the Instrument and NI 21-101 any fees in respect of the listing or quotation of securities of the issuer. Similarly, an order may trade on a marketplace despite the fact that trading of the security has been delayed or halted because of technical problems affecting only the trading system of the recognized exchange, recognized quotation and trade reporting system or exchange or quotation and trade reporting system recognized for the purposes of the Instrument and NI 21-101.

PART 6 ORDER PROTECTION

6.1 Marketplace Requirements for Order Protection

(1) Subsection 6.1(1) of the Instrument requires a marketplace to establish, maintain and ensure compliance with written policies and procedures that are reasonably designed to prevent trade-throughs by orders entered on that marketplace. A marketplace may implement this requirement in various ways. For example, the policies and procedures of a marketplace may reasonably prevent trade-throughs via the design of the marketplace's trade execution algorithms (by not allowing a trade-through to occur), or by voluntarily establishing direct linkages to other marketplaces. Marketplaces are not able to avoid their obligations by establishing policies and procedures that instead require marketplace participants to take steps to reasonably prevent trade-throughs.

(2) It is the responsibility of marketplaces to regularly review and monitor the effectiveness of their policies and procedures and take prompt steps to remedy any deficiencies in reasonably preventing trade-throughs and complying with subsection 6.1(2) of the Instrument. In general, it is expected that marketplaces maintain relevant information so that the effectiveness of its policies and procedures can be adequately evaluated by regulatory authorities. Relevant information would include information that describes:

- (a) steps taken by the marketplace to evaluate its policies and procedures;
- (b) any breaches or deficiencies found; and
- (c) the steps taken to resolve the breaches or deficiencies.

(3) As part of the policies and procedures required in subsection 6.1(1) of the Instrument, a marketplace is expected to include a discussion of their automated functionality and how they will handle potential delayed responses as a result of an equipment or systems failure or malfunction experienced by another marketplace. In addition, marketplaces should include a discussion of how they treat a directed-action order when received and how it will be used.

(4) Order protection applies whenever two or more marketplaces with protected orders are open for trading. Some marketplaces provide a trading session at a price established by that marketplace during its regular trading hours for marketplace participants who are required to benchmark to a certain closing price. In these circumstances, under paragraph 6.2(e), a marketplace would not be required to take steps to reasonably prevent trade-throughs of orders on another marketplace.

6.2 Marketplace Participant Requirements for Order Protection

(1) For a marketplace participant that wants to use a directed-action order, section 6.4 of the Instrument requires a marketplace participant to establish, maintain and ensure compliance with written policies and procedures that are reasonably designed to prevent trade-throughs. In general, it is expected that a marketplace participant that uses a directed-action order would maintain relevant information so that the effectiveness of its policies and procedures can be adequately evaluated by regulatory authorities. Relevant information would include information that describes:

- (a) steps taken by the marketplace participant to evaluate its policies and procedures;
- (b) any breaches or deficiencies found; and
- (c) the steps taken to resolve the breaches or deficiencies.

The policies and procedures should also outline when it is appropriate to use a directed-action order and how it will be used as set out in paragraph 6.4(a) of the Instrument.

(2) Order protection applies whenever two or more marketplaces with protected orders are open for trading. Some marketplaces provide a trading session at a price established by that marketplace during its regular trading hours for marketplace participants who are required to benchmark to a certain closing price. In these circumstances, under paragraph 6.4(a)(iv)(C) of the Instrument, a marketplace participant would not be required to take steps to reasonably prevent trade-throughs of orders between marketplaces.

6.3 List of Trade-throughs – Section 6.2 and paragraphs 6.4(a)(i) to (a)(v) of the Instrument set forth a list of “permitted” trade-throughs that are primarily designed to achieve workable order protection and to facilitate certain trading strategies and order types that are useful to investors.

- (a) (i) Paragraphs 6.2(a) and 6.4(a)(i) of the Instrument would apply where a marketplace or marketplace participant, as applicable, has reasonably concluded that a marketplace is experiencing a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems, equipment or ability to disseminate marketplace data. A material delay occurs when a marketplace repeatedly fails to respond immediately after receipt of an order. This is intended to provide marketplaces and marketplace participants with flexibility when dealing with a marketplace that is experiencing systems problems (either of a temporary nature or a longer term systems issue).
- (ii) Under subsection 6.3(1) of the Instrument, a marketplace that is experiencing systems issues is responsible for informing all other marketplaces, its marketplace participants, any information processor, or if there is no information processor, an information vendor disseminating its information under Part 7 of NI 21-101 and regulation services providers when a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems, equipment or ability to disseminate marketplace data occurs. However, if a marketplace fails repeatedly to provide an immediate response to orders received and no notification has been issued by that marketplace that it is experiencing systems issues, the routing marketplace or a marketplace participant may, pursuant to subsections 6.3(2) and 6.3(3) of the Instrument respectively, reasonably conclude that the marketplace is having systems issues and may therefore rely on paragraph 6.2(a) or 6.4(a)(i) of the Instrument respectively. This reliance must be done in accordance with policies and procedures that outline processes for dealing with potential delays in responses by a marketplace and documenting the basis of its conclusion. If, in response to the notification by the routing marketplace or a marketplace participant, the marketplace confirms that it is not actually experiencing systems issues, the routing marketplace or marketplace participant may no longer rely on paragraph 6.2(a) or paragraph 6.4(a)(i) of the Instrument respectively.
- (b) Paragraph 6.2(b) of the Instrument provides an exception from the obligation on marketplaces to use their policies and procedures to reasonably prevent trade-throughs when a directed-action order is received. Specifically, a marketplace that receives a directed-action order may immediately execute or book the order (or its remaining volume) and not implement the marketplace’s policies and procedures to reasonably prevent trade-throughs. However, the marketplace will need to describe its treatment of a directed-action order in its policies and procedures. Paragraphs 6.2(c) and 6.4(a)(iii) of the Instrument provide an exception where a marketplace or marketplace participant simultaneously routes directed-action orders to execute against the total displayed volume of any protected order traded through. This accounts for the possibility that orders that are routed simultaneously as directed-action orders are not executed simultaneously causing one or more trade-throughs to occur because an inferior-priced order is executed first.
- (c) Paragraphs 6.2(d) and 6.4(a)(ii) of the Instrument provide some relief due to moving or changing markets. Specifically, the exception allows for a trade-through to occur when immediately before executing the order that caused the trade-through, the marketplace on which the execution occurred had the best price but at the moment of execution, the market changes and another marketplace has the best price. The “changing markets” exception allows for the

execution of an order on a marketplace, within the best bid or offer on that marketplace but outside the best bid or offer displayed across marketplaces in certain circumstances. This could occur for example:

- (i) where orders are entered on a marketplace but by the time they are executed, the best bid or offer displayed across marketplaces changed; and
 - (ii) where a trade is agreed to off-marketplace and entered on a marketplace within the best bid and best offer across marketplaces, but by the time the order is executed on the marketplace (i.e. printed) the best bid or offer as displayed across marketplaces may have changed, thus causing a trade-through.
- (d) The basis for the inclusion of calculated-price orders, non-standard orders and closing-price orders in paragraphs 6.2(e) and 6.4(a)(iv) of the Instrument is that these orders have certain unique characteristics that distinguish them from other orders. The characteristics of the orders relate to price (calculated-price orders and closing-price orders) and non-standard settlement terms (non-standard orders) that are not set by an exchange or a quotation and trade reporting system.
- (e) Paragraphs 6.2(f) and 6.4(a)(v) of the Instrument include a transaction that occurred when there is a crossed market in the exchange-traded security. Without this allowance, no marketplace could execute transactions in a crossed market because it would constitute a trade-through. With order protection only applying to displayed orders or parts of orders, hidden or reserve orders may remain in the book after all displayed orders are executed. Consequently, crossed markets may occur. Intentionally crossing the market to take advantage of paragraphs 6.2(f) and 6.4(a)(v) of the Instrument would be a violation of section 6.5 of the Instrument.

6.4 Locked and Crossed Markets

- (1) Section 6.5 of the Instrument provides that a marketplace participant or a marketplace that routes or reprices orders shall not intentionally lock or cross a market by entering a protected order to buy a security at a price that is the same as or higher than the best protected offer or entering a protected order to sell a security at a price that is the same as or lower than the best protected bid. This provision is not intended to prohibit the use of marketable limit orders. Paragraphs 6.2(f) and 6.4(a)(v) of the Instrument allow for the resolution of crossed markets that occur unintentionally.

The Canadian securities regulatory authorities consider an order that is routed or repriced to be “entered” on a marketplace. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities do not consider the triggering of a previously-entered on-stop order to be an “entry” or “repricing” of that order.

- (2) Section 6.5 of the Instrument prohibits a marketplace participant or a marketplace that routes or reprices orders from intentionally locking or crossing a market. This would occur, for example, when a marketplace participant enters a locking or crossing order on a particular marketplace or marketplaces to avoid fees charged by a marketplace or to take advantage of rebates offered by a particular marketplace. This could also occur where a marketplace system is programmed to reprice orders without checking to see if the new price would lock the market or where the marketplace routes orders to another marketplace that results in a locked market.

There are situations where a locked or crossed market may occur unintentionally. For example:

- (a) when a marketplace participant routes multiple directed-action orders that are marked immediate-or-cancel to a variety of marketplaces and because of latency issues, a locked or crossed market results,
- (b) the locking or crossing order was displayed at a time when the marketplace displaying the locked or crossed order was experiencing a failure, malfunction or material delay of its systems, equipment or ability to disseminate marketplace data,
- (c) the locking or crossing order was displayed at a time when a protected bid was higher than a protected offer;
- (d) the locking or crossing order was posted after all displayed liquidity was executed and a reserve order generated a new visible bid above the displayed offer or offer below the displayed bid.
- (e) the locking or crossing order was entered on a particular marketplace in order to comply with securities legislation requirements such as Rule 904 of Regulation S of the *Securities Act of 1933* that requires securities subject to resale restrictions in the United States to be sold in Canada on a “designated offshore securities market”,
- (f) the locking or crossing order was displayed due to “race conditions” when competing orders are entered on marketplaces at essentially the same time with neither party having knowledge of the other order at the time of entry,

- (g) the locking or crossing order was a result of the differences in processing times and latencies between the systems of the marketplace participant, marketplaces, information processor and information vendors,
 - (h) the locking or crossing order was a result of marketplaces having different mechanisms to “restart” trading following a halt in trading for either regulatory or business purposes, and
 - (i) the locking or crossing order was a result of the execution of an order during the opening or closing allocation process of one market, while trading is simultaneously occurring on a continuous basis on another market,
- (3) If a marketplace participant using a directed-action order chooses to book the order or the remainder of the order, then it is responsible for ensuring that the booked portion of the directed-action order does not lock or cross the market. The Canadian securities regulatory authorities would consider a directed-action order or remainder of directed-action order that is booked and that locks or crosses the market to be an intentional locking or crossing of the market and a violation of section 6.5 of the Instrument.

6.5 Anti-Avoidance Provision – Section 6.7 of the Instrument prohibits a person or company from sending an order to an exchange, quotation and trade reporting system or alternative trading system that does not carry on business in Canada in order to avoid executing against better-priced orders on a marketplace in Canada. The intention of this section is to prevent the routing of orders to foreign marketplaces only for the purpose of avoiding the order protection regime in Canada.

PART 7 MONITORING AND ENFORCEMENT

7.1 Monitoring and Enforcement of Requirements Set By a Recognized Exchange or Recognized Quotation and Trade Reporting System – Under section 7.1 of the Instrument, a recognized exchange will set its own requirements governing the conduct of its members. Under section 7.3 of the Instrument, a recognized quotation and trade reporting system will set its own requirements governing the conduct of its users. The recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system can monitor and enforce these requirements either directly or indirectly through a regulation services provider. A regulation services provider is a person or company that provides regulation services and is either a recognized exchange, recognized quotation and trade reporting system or a recognized self-regulatory entity. Sections 7.2 and 7.4 of the Instrument require the recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system that chooses to have the monitoring and enforcement performed by the regulation services provider to enter into an agreement with the regulation services provider in which the regulation services provider agrees to enforce the requirements of the recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system.

7.2 Monitoring and Enforcement Requirements for an ATS – Section 8.2 of the Instrument requires the regulation services provider to set requirements that govern an ATS and its subscribers. Before executing a trade for a subscriber, the ATS must enter into an agreement with a regulation services provider and an agreement with each subscriber. These agreements form the basis upon which a regulation services provider will monitor the trading activities of the ATS and its subscribers and enforce its requirements. The requirements set by a regulation services provider must include requirements that the ATS and its subscribers will conduct trading activities in compliance with the Instrument. The ATS and its subscribers are considered to be in compliance with the Instrument and are exempt from the application of most of its provisions if the ATS and the subscriber are in compliance with the requirements set by a regulation services provider.

7.3 Monitoring and Enforcement Requirements for an Inter-Dealer Bond Broker – Section 9.1 of the Instrument requires that a regulation services provider set requirements governing the conduct of an inter-dealer bond broker. Under section 9.2 of the Instrument, the inter-dealer bond broker must enter into an agreement with the regulation services provider providing that the regulation services provider monitor the activities of the inter-dealer bond broker and enforce the requirements set by the regulation services provider. However, section 9.3 of the Instrument provides inter-dealer bond brokers with an exemption from sections 9.1 and 9.2 of the Instrument if the inter-dealer bond broker complies with the requirements of IIROC Rule 2800 Code of Conduct for Corporation Dealer Member Firms Trading in Wholesale Domestic Debt Markets, as amended, as if that policy was drafted to apply to the inter-dealer bond broker.

7.4 Monitoring and Enforcement Requirements for a Dealer Executing Trades of Unlisted Debt Securities Outside of a Marketplace – Section 10.1 of the Instrument requires that a regulation services provider set requirements governing the conduct of a dealer executing trades of unlisted debt securities outside of a marketplace. Under section 10.2 of the Instrument, the dealer must also enter into an agreement with the regulation services provider providing that the regulation services provider monitor the activities of the dealer and enforce the requirements set by the regulation services provider.

7.5 Agreement between a Marketplace and a Regulation Services Provider

The purpose of subsections 7.2(c) and 7.4(c) of the Instrument is to facilitate the monitoring of trading by marketplace participants on and across multiple marketplaces by a regulation services provider. These sections of the Instrument also facilitate monitoring of the conduct of a recognized exchange and recognized quotation and trade reporting system for particular

purposes. This may result in regulation services providers monitoring marketplaces that have retained them and reporting to a recognized exchange, recognized quotation and trade reporting system or securities regulatory authority if a marketplace is not meeting regulatory requirements or the terms of its own rules or policies and procedures. While the scope of this monitoring may change as the market evolves, we expect it to include, at a minimum, monitoring clock synchronization, the inclusion of specific designations, symbols and identifiers, order protection requirements and audit trail requirements.

7.6 Coordination of Monitoring and Enforcement

(1) Section 7.5 of the Instrument requires regulation services providers, recognized exchanges and recognized quotation and trade reporting systems to enter into a written agreement whereby they coordinate the enforcement of the requirements set under Parts 7 and 8. This coordination is required in order to achieve cross-marketplace monitoring.

(2) If a recognized exchange or recognized quotation and trade reporting system has not retained a regulation services provider, it is still required to coordinate with any regulation services provider and other exchanges or quotation and trade reporting systems that trade the same securities in order to ensure effective cross-marketplace monitoring.

(3) Currently, only IIROC is the regulation services provider for both exchange-traded securities, other than options and in Québec, other than standardized derivatives, and unlisted debt securities. If more than one regulation services provider regulates marketplaces trading a particular type of security, these regulation services providers must coordinate monitoring and enforcement of the requirements set.

PART 8 AUDIT TRAIL REQUIREMENTS

8.1 Audit Trail Requirements – Section 11.2 of the Instrument imposes obligations on dealers and inter-dealer bond brokers to record in electronic form and to report certain items of information with respect to orders and trades. Information to be recorded includes any markers required by a regulation services provider (such as a significant shareholder marker). The purpose of the obligations set out in Part 11 is to enable the entity performing the monitoring and surveillance functions to construct an audit trail of order, quotation and transaction data which will enhance its surveillance and examination capabilities.

8.2 Transmission of Information to a Regulation Services Provider – Section 11.3 of the Instrument requires that a dealer and an inter-dealer bond broker provide to the regulation services provider information required by the regulation services provider, within ten business days, in electronic form. This requirement is triggered only when the regulation services provider sets requirements to transmit information.

8.3 Electronic Form – Subsection 11.3 of the Instrument requires any information required to be transmitted to the regulation services provider and securities regulatory authority in electronic form. Dealers and inter-dealer bond brokers are required to provide information in a form that is accessible to the securities regulatory authorities and the regulation services provider (for example, in SELECTR format).